DOCUMENT RESUME

ED 154 986 SE 023 989

AUTHOR Hershey, John T.; And Others
TITLE A Curriculum Activities Guide to Water Pollution and Environmental Studies: Activities. Appendices, Volume 1 and Volume 2.
INSTITUTION Tilton School, N.H.
SPONS AGENCY Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, D.C. Office of Water Programs.; Ford Foundation, New York, N.Y.
PUB DATE 72
GRANT 1TT1-WP-41-01
NOTE 490p.; For related document, see ED 045 380; Contains occasional light and broken type
AVAILABLE FROM Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C. 20402 ($2.25)

EDRS PRICE MF-$1.00 HC-$26.11 Plus Postage.
DESCRIPTORS *Curriculum Guides; Ecology; *Environmental Education; *Instructional Materials; Natural Resources; Outdoor Education; Pollution; *Secondary Education; *Water Resources

ABSTRACT

This activity oriented guide is divided into four sections dealing with the Hydrologic Cycle; Human Activities; Ecological Perspectives; and Social and Political Factors. Each activity contains seven parts: (1) an introduction; (2) questions about the activity; (3) necessary equipment; (4) procedures; (5) results obtained by using the study; (6) limitations and problems encountered with the activity; and (7) an annotated bibliography. The appendices include a discussion of water quality parameters, aids to implementation, suggestions regarding limitations, suggestions for evaluation, a bibliography, a water pollution and environmental glossary, and comments about laboratory and field safety. (CS)

****
* Reproductions supplied by EDRS are the best that can be made *
* from the original document. *
****

ED154986

A CURRICULUM ACTIVITIES GUIDE TO

WATER POLLUTION AND ENVIRONMENTAL STUDIES

APPENDICES

VOLUME 1

U S DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH, EDUCATION & WELFARE
NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF EDUCATION

THIS DOCUMENT HAS BEEN REPRODUCED EXACTLY AS RECEIVED FROM THE PERSON OR ORGANIZATION ORIGINATING IT. POINTS OF VIEW OR OPINIONS STATED DO NOT NECESSARILY REPRESENT OFFICIAL NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF EDUCATION POSITION OR POLICY

"PERMISSION TO REPRODUCE THIS MATERIAL HAS BEEN GRANTED BY

Bernard Lukco

TO THE EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES INFORMATION CENTER (ERIC) AND USERS OF THE ERIC SYSTEM"

SE 023 989

A CURRICULUM ACTIVITIES GUIDE

TO

WATER POLLUTION

and

ENVIRONMENTAL STUDIES:

ACTIVITIES

U. S. ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY

OFFICE OF WATER PROGRAMS

MANPOWER DEVELOPMENT STAFF

TRAINING GRANTS BRANCH

1972

For sale by the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C., 20402 - Price $2.25

This guide was prepared by the Tilton Water Pollution Program, financed by Grant No. 1TT1-WP-41-01 and supplemental grants from Training Grants Branch, Office of Water Programs, Environmental Protection Agency and by a grant from the Ford Foundation. The work of editing and compiling the guide was done by:

John T. Hershey
Head, Science Department
Germantown Academy
Fort Washington, Pennsylvania

Albert L. Powers
Head, Science Department
Brewster Academy
Wolfeboro, New Hampshire

Stephen P. McLoy
Teacher of Political Theory
Tilton School
Tilton, New Hampshire

Alan D. Sexton
Teacher of Science
George School
Newtown, Pennsylvania

Information on revisions and additionally planned volumes of the guide may be obtained from:

Training Grants Branch
Office of Water Programs
U. S. Environmental Protection Agency
Washington, D. C. 20460

Preface

There is great desire on the part of students today to be directly involved in their society and its problems. This guide is designed to bring students and their educational process into direct contact with their society and their community. This requires that learning occur in all areas of the society, not just those special places called classrooms. As one student remarked, "You actually learn by going out and doing what you are learning in theory, which is something I never did before." Stepping outside the classroom or expanding the classroom to encompass the life space of the student is an important aspect of this program. For it is only there and then that the theory of disjointed, "irrelevant" facts begin to assume meaning. For this reason, the guide is primarily activity-oriented.

The activities contained in this guide utilize a process of inquiry which will lead the student to acquire knowledge and skills needed to understand and solve the problems of his environment. The activities are designed to arouse his interest and curiosity through direct observation and investigation. Since there is no planned sequence or order, each user of the guide (student or teacher) will develop his own path of inquiry. The activities themselves are only meant as a starting point, a guide; it is expected that in practice the users will expand upon them both in depth and breadth.

Volumes I and II are concerned with only one aspect of the environmental problem, water pollution. However, the investigation of water pollution itself is not limited to a specific academic field of inquiry. If water pollution or any of our environmental problems are to be solved they must be understood in all their manifestations. This means that any study of the problems must be interdisciplinary in nature and must take into account the social and political aspects as well.

The students and teachers who developed this program encountered numerous frustrations and achieved many successes. There were burned fingers and cut feet, leaky hip boots, shivering bodies and colds, philosophic "differences," midnight arguments, and some pretty firm convictions. Pervading all this, however, was the shared knowledge that something was happening. People were involved - students and teachers together, developing relationships which created changes in attitude. And those attitudes caused changes in behavior which have persisted beyond expectation.

Since the initial work in the summer of 1969, teachers and students have traveled hundreds of miles to lead training conferences, workshops, and at least nine more major training programs. They have testified in Congress, conducted research work, taught classes, and formed a national teacher-training and curriculum development organization, The Institute for Environmental Education, headquartered in Cleveland, Ohio. The sequel

publications to these volumes, on the construction of equipment described in Volume II, land studies, consumerism, community health, transportation, a hand guide on introducing environmental studies into the school and other community organizations, etc., are in preparation now. These are all results of teachers and students studying and working together on environmental community problems.

Joseph H. Chadbourne, President
Institute for Environmental Education

Acknowledgments

There were many people who contributed to the completion of this guide. Special thanks go to Joseph Chadbourne, President of the Institute for Environmental Education, who conceived the original idea and secured the backing of the Ford Foundation and of the Department of the Interior, and to Alan McGowan, Scientific Administrator, Center for the Biology of Natural Systems, Washington University, St. Louis, Mo., who directed the workshops funded by these grants during the summers of 1969 and 1970.

We are grateful to Robert Snider, Director of Training Grants, Office of Water Quality, Environmental Protection Agency, who identified and encouraged the germination of this work at the University School, Cleveland, O., in 1967. We also express our warm appreciation to Bernard Lukco, Environmental Protection Agency, who continued the direction given by Mr. Snider and tirelessly aided the directors throughout the 2-year effort. We are also indebted to Dr. Herbert W. Jackson, Chief Biologist, and F. J. Ludzack, Chemist, both of the Taft Center in Cincinnati, O., who provided checks on the technical accuracy of the aquatic biology, chemistry and bacteriology sections of the guide. E. Girtsavage and D. Smith from the New England Basins Office of the Department of the Interior made available to us a great deal of information from their training program.

Many thanks are due to the Millipore Co., Bedford, Mass., and to the LaMotte Chemical Co., Chestertown, Md., for their generosity in supplying equipment to the workshops, films, and technical advice on many occasions.

This guide was organized and edited by the team of John Hershey, Stephen McLoy, Albert Powers, and Alan Sexton. They remained long into the summer months of 1970 to compile the contributions of numberous writers: Philip Murphy, Robert Touchette, and William Schlesinger for the chapter on Hydrologic Cycle; Raymond Whitehouse on Human Activities; Alan Sexton and Robert Graham on Ecological Perspectives; John Hershey for Social and Political Factors; and Albert Powers, Alan Sexton, Philip Murphy, Richard Fabian, and Rodney Page for Appendix 1. These men assembled the written experiences of the 1969 and 1970 participants; they then rewrote and produced this guide. Those weeks were tolerable only because of Susan Bayley's secretarial assistance and light heart.

Preparation and correction of the camera copy was done by Kay Bela, Training Grants Branch, Environmental Protection Agency.

A final note of gratitude is extended to the members of the many schools who are now using the activities and sending suggestions, corrections and new activities to the Institute for Environmental Education.

Good luck and have fun.

John T. Hershey
Project KARE

PROGRAM PARTICIPANTS

1970 Participants

*Abington Friends
Jenkintown, Pa. 19046
Mrs. Maria Peters

*Academy Sacred Heart
Bloomfield Hills, Mich. 48013
Susan Tindall

*Academy Sacred Heart
St. Charles, Mo. 63301
Sister Dorothy Clark
Margaret Schuler

All Saints' Episcopal
Vicksburg, Miss. 39180
Mr. Richard Palermo
Sydney Rabey

*Assumption Preparatory
Worcester, Mass. 01606
Father Henry Roy
Paul Del Signore

Athol High
Athol, Mass. 01331
Mrs. Esther Shepardson
Verne Goldsher

Atlantic Junior High
Quincy, Mass. 02171
Mr. Brooks Maloof
Paul Levine

Attleboro High
Attleboro, Mass. 02703
Mr. Matthew McConeghy
Paul Johansen

Belmont High
Belmont, N. H. 03220
Mrs. Suzanne S. Roberts
Lance Trendell

Brandon Hall
Dunwoody, Ga. 30338
Mr. George Hickman
Jack Mount

Brattleboro Union
Brattleboro, Vt. 05301
Mr. Charles Butterfield
Mary Rivers

Brewster Academy
Wolfeboro, N. H. 03894
Mr. Al Powers

**Buckley Country Day
Roslyn, N. Y. 11576
John Carey

**Burgundy Farm Country Day
Alexandria, Va. 22303
Adam Rosenthal

*Cabin John J. H. S.
Rockville, Md. 20835
Mr. Ronald Smetanick
Kim Coburn
Tory Dunn

**Cohasset High
Cohasset, Mass. 02025
Jon Sargent

*Douglass High
Baltimore, Md. 21217
Miss Jessie Perkins
Paula Partee

*Duchesne Academy
Omaha, Neb. 68131
Sister Elaine Abels
Mary Kelly

Edwin O. Smith
Storrs, Conn. 06268
Mr. Egbert Inman
Barry Rosen

*Forman
Litchfield, Conn. 06759
Mr. Robert Wade
Chris Colt

*Garrison Forest
Garrison, Md. 21055
Miss Winifred McDowell

*George
Newton, Pa. 18940
Mr. Alan Sexton
Tim Tanaka
David Kriebel
Jonathan Gormley

*Germantown Academy
Fort Washington, Pa. 19034
Mr. John Hershey
Ellen Harbison
Anne Barrett

*Glenelg Country Day
Glenelg, Md. 21043
Mr. Andy Hauck

Greenfield Junior High
Greenfield, Mass. 01301
Mr. Courtney N. Woodcock
Ron Korzon

Grymes Memorial
Orange, Va. 22960
Mrs. Helene B. Lindblade
J. H. Higginbotham

Hancock
Franklin, N. H. 03235
Mr. William Cameron

Hanover Jr.-Sr. High
Hanover, N. H. 03755
Mr. Ronald Bailey
David Converse

Kennedy Junior High
Peabody, Mass. 01960
Mrs. Lorraine Gauthier
Steve Tessler

Longmeadow High
Longmeadow, Mass. 01106
Mr. Wilfred Blanchard
Deighton Emmons

**Madeira
Greenway, Va. 22067
Emily Carey

Mascenic Regional
New Ipswich, N. H. 03071
Mr. Thomas J. McIntyre
Linda Rousseau

Mohawk Trail Regional
Shelburne Falls, Mass. 01370
Mr. Nathan Hale
Jeni New
Beth Burrows

Monadnock Regional
Keene, N. H. 03431
Mr. Douglas M. Leslie
Dana Sparhawk

*Mt. Hermon
Mt. Hermon, Mass. 01354
Mr. Richard Leavitt
David Hawley

**Nashua High
Nashua, N. H. 03060
Robert Foudriat

Northfield
East Northfield, Mass. 01360
Miss Alice Kells
Isabel Elmer

*Nottingham Academy
Buffalo, N. Y. 14216
Sister Marjorie McGrath
Melissa Weiksnar

**Parish Hill
Chaplin, Conn. 06235
Steve Curry

*Quincy Central Jr. High
Quincy, Mass. 02169
Mr. Raymond Whitehouse
Miss Marjorie Bollen
Mr. William McWeeny
Diane Dunn
Paul Welch
George Barbaro

Quincy High
Quincy, Mass. 02169
Mrs. Jeannette Mohnkern

T. L. Hanna High
Anderson, S. C. 29621
Mrs. Sara Huey
Steve Thorne

*Tilton
Tilton, N. H. 03276
Mr. Steve McLoy
William Lawrence
Steve Reisberg
William Keegan

*Vermont Academy
Saxtons River, Vt. 05154
Mr. Peter Sargent
Gunther Mench

**Webster College
St. Louis, Mo. 63119
Benjamin Kohl

West Jr. High
Brockton, Mass. 02401
Mr. Gerald Beals
Jonathan Ehrmann

**Western Jr. High
Bethesda, Md. 20016
Nancy Wallace

Original Participants Who Did Not Attend 1970 Sessions

Belchertown Jr.-Sr. High
Belchertown, Mass. 01007
Mrs. Claire Curry
Andy LeDuc

*Burncoat Senior High
Worcester, Mass.
Mr. Albert J. Bouffard
James Proia

Crosby Jr. High
Pittsfield, Mass. 01201
Mr. Henry Barber
David LaBrode

Forest Park Jr. High
Springfield, Mass. 01108
Mr. Joseph S. Novicki
John Salo
Scott Berger
Billy Santaniello

Kiley Jr. High
Springfield, Mass. 00128
Mr. Martin Manoogian
Randy Locklin
Gerald Baird

Manchester Jr.-Sr. High
Manchester, Mass. 01944
Mr. Arthur Edwards
Scott Whittemore

Marlboro High
Marlboro, Mass. 01752
Mr. Edward J. Clancy
Rebecca Morales

Northampton High
Northampton, Mass. 01060
Mr. Walter Brown
Mark Sullivan

Pioneer Valley Regional
Greenfield, Mass. 01301
Mr. William Giles
Rita Johnson

*Providence Country Day
Bristol, R. I. 02809
Mr. Spofford Woodruff

Somers High
Somers, Conn. 06071
Mr. Edward Hendry
Russ Butkus

Tantasqua Regional
Sturbridge, Mass. 01566
Mr. Paul O'Brien
David Blake

Springfield Technical
Longmeadow, Mass. 01106
Mr. Robert Dooley
Gerard Deslauriers

Ware High
Ware, Mass. 01082
Mr. James Shea
Mike McQuaid

West Springfield
West Springfield, Mass. 01089
Mr. Ronald Czelusniak
John Swiencicki

Westfield Jr. High
Westfield, Mass. 01085
Mr. John Romashko

Weston Sr. High
Weston, Mass. 02193
Mr. Joseph Jordan
Charles Gillespie

* 1969 Schools Under Ford Foundation Grant
** Schools Not Covered By Grants

TABLE OF CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION 1

Chapter

I. HYDROLOGIC CYCLE 5

A. Surface Runoff 9
B. Infiltration and Percolation 12
C. Transpiration 16
D. Soil Evaporation and Transpiration 21
E. Evapotranspiration 25
F. Infiltration: Its Effect on Water Quality 27
G. Ground Water Seepage 30
H. Transpiration and Plant Uptake 32
I. Erosion: The Effects of Water on Soil 35
J. Diffusion: Demonstration of Water's Solvent and Diffusion Properties 38
K. Ground Water: An Examination of the Source of Water in Streams 40
L. Precipitation: Measurement and Evaluation 43
M. The Water Budget of a Small Watershed 47

II. HUMAN ACTIVITIES 50

A. Farming and Water Quality 52
B. Community Survey 58
C. Drinking Water 66
D. Pollution and Recovery 70
E. Destructive Effects of Water Pollution 74
F. Sewage Treatment 78
G. Biochemical Oxygen Demand in Sewage 83
H. Effect of Oil on Aquatic Life in Recreational Waters . . 87
I. The Effects of Damming or Impounding Water 90
J. Community Water Supplies 94
K. Investigating Lead Concentrations in Automobile Exhausts 97

III. ECOLOGICAL PERSPECTIVES 100

A. Aquatic System 102
B. Stream Deterioration Due to Effluents 106
C. Stream Variation 110
D. Diurnal Study 113

E. Population Diversity Index 121
F. Bioassay 126
G. Plankton Growth in Relation to Light 129
H. Water Quality Comparisons by Diversity Index 133
I. Algal Blooms and CO_2 137
J. Bottom Core Sampling 140

IV. SOCIAL AND POLITICAL FACTORS 144

A. How to Talk Back to Statistics 146
B. State and Local Government Organizations 149
C. State Government Model 156
D. Anti-pollution Laws 159
E. An Elementary Investigation of Local Water Anti-pollution Programs by Interviewing Government Officials 163
F. Publication of a Science Journal 169
G. Orientation Program For the Study of Water Pollution . . 171
H. An Anti-pollution Club 180
I. How to Win Friends From Sceptics, Critics, and Doubtful School Administrators Without Really Trying 187
J. Moviemaking 193
K. Making Film Loops 198
L. Nonreturnable Containers 201
M. Anti-pollution Art 204
N. Modelmaking 207
O. Student Planning of a Pollution Assembly 210
P. Role Playing 214

INTRODUCTION

In 1967, a small band of teachers and students began studying one community's water problems and serving one public pollution agency. Now there are large bands of teachers and students, located in many communities, studying many environmental problems and serving many public agencies. Over those years, a philosophy developed and some of the studies were written into Volumes I and II of this guide. This Introduction contains the essentials of that philosophy and a brief "tour" through the two volumes.

The philosophy is that students, teachers, and community members can work together as co-learners as they investigate real problems of the real world. This necessitates a re-examination of many traditions -- teacher role, textbook, classroom, student responsibility, Carnegie Unit, the school day, the learning process, curriculum, etc. -- and a subsequent development of more effective educational processes.

The following are the elements of our philosophy as they relate to students, teachers and the educational institutions:

1. Students possess the ability to determine, in cooperation with each other and with teachers, their educational program and the particular means they will utilize in problem investigation. An outgrowth of this process will be continuing self-learning.

2. As the students progress they will develop a holistic approach, which will cause them to synthesize methods of problem investigation and to develop an awareness of the interrelatedness of the various components of systems.

3. The perception of the need for acquired skills will become evident to the students as they become more and more aware of the complexity of natural systems.

4. The responsive awareness will stimulate the students to recognize their responsibilities from a long range point of view. The students will perceive and assume a significant role in society.

5. In particular, the students develop a mature sense of interpersonal relationships which allows them to listen to others and to work effectively as members of teams.

6. Teachers will move from an authoritarian stance to a position where they are able to enjoy learning with students and where they will be able to offer advice and guidance when it is sought by the students.

7. Changes will take place in the present institutions and will be in response to the many positive outcomes generated by the implementation of the above.

Environmental studies programs should be interdisciplinary and should be planned by students, teachers and community members. The participants do not study about environmental quality: they investigate real environmental situations. Multiple references are used rather than a single text.

Participants in environmental studies programs examine their life styles and the ways in which these influence environmental quality. They then work toward the improvement of poor quality environmental factors and work for the maintenance of high quality factors.

In dealing with the manmade and natural environments the primary goal is the development of attitudes and understandings rather than strictly the exposure to information. In formal and nonformal learning situations those involved reach the stage where they are actively seeking answers to questions which they have raised. Constant evaluation and feedback help to develop a process approach, which is not working toward the development of a curriculum or a course of studies. Persons of all age levels are potential participants.

The guide is divided into two volumes: Volume I provides process education activities and Volume II provides seven technical and operational back-up appendices for these activities.

Three levels of activities are provided: those which increase awareness; those which allow students and teachers to take actions related to particular concerns; and those which are on-going problem investigations.

Awareness activities occur at the beginning of each chapter, and they usually require little or no equipment. Awareness activities allow students and teachers to make observations and draw conclusions about real things in their environment. These activities are followed by transitional activities which deal with individualized real concerns that have grown out of awareness activities. The transitional activities prepare the students and teachers for problem investigation activities. Transitional studies allow groups to focus on problems which are more easily defined and which are successfully dealt with within the existing school time structure. This sort of preparation allows the teachers

and students to prepare for more complex problem investigations which may not be fully resolved during a formal course of study. The success of the investigation, of course, lies in the process pursued to successfully carry out the investigation and constructively inform the community of the status of the problem.

Volume II contains seven appendices which support the studies. In time, teachers and students should be able to generate activities in their community using Volume I as a guide. At this point, Volume I could be placed in a reserve status. On the other hand, Volume II has a lasting value for several reasons. Appendix 1 consolidates the technical aspects of water quality. As you leaf through Appendix 1 you will find water chemistry, biological references, both flora and fauna, computer programs, and equipment references. Appendix 2, Implementation, outlines techniques for dealing with problems of cost, scheduling, and motivation. Appendix 3, Limitations, deals with problems of time and transportation, methods and equipment, and dealing with others. Evaluation is the subject of Appendix 4; behavioral objectives, both affective and cognitive, are dealt with. Several references are included. Appendix 5, contains a comprehensive annotated bibliography which supplements the specific references in each activity. An asterisk coding system indicates possible multi-copy acquisitions for a community (school) reference center. Delineations are made according to elementary and secondary education emphasis. The last two appendices provide a comprehensive glossary and safety rules, respectively. These may be reproduced in quantity.

Each of the activities is written according to a format which includes the seven parts. The introduction, which briefly describes the activity, suggests the age or grade range for which the activity is best suited. Here you will also find any special equipment or requirements necessary to complete the activity.

The students and teachers are presented with questions which will lead them into activities. This approach was chosen because it allows students to respond as individuals; because it diminishes the authority-figure role of the teacher; and because it implies that there are few-if-any ultimates which can be applied to real world situations. After being led into the investigations the students and teachers will be attempting to answer questions which relate to unsolved problems of society at large. The attempt has been made to develop an approach that will help individuals to work together to improve society. Four categories of questions are used to involve the co-learners in activities.

The questions which <u>lead to</u> the activities are intended to direct thinking toward a general area of investigation. Those <u>to initiate</u> require action if they are to be investigated and help to get the action started. Questions <u>to continue</u> help to give the problem more definition and to allow branching-off points. Those which are used <u>to evaluate</u> help the co-learners to assess the successes and failures and to suggest areas of further investigation.

Sections III and IV of the activities deal with equipment and procedures respectively. The equipment necessary to complete the activity is listed as well as are outlines of events which will probably take place. If branch points are likely, as is often the case, they are indicated. The teacher should try not to steer the activity in one set direction, but rather be ready and willing to allow students to pursue these branch points even if it means that the goal of the original activity is lost for the time being.

The next section on past studies highlights results obtained by using the activity. The activities which have survived the test of practical application should reinforce the teacher's efforts to use them again. Also helpful in this section are descriptions of how the students were evaluated and what outgrowths stemmed from the activity.

A section on limitations has been included for the benefit of the user. Here, the various problems likely to be encountered are listed. Limitations such as costs, extra preparation time, and transportation should be well understood before the activity is used. If any of these limitations appear to create obstacles which in your particular case might inhibit the implementations of the activity you may find some helpful suggestions in Appendix 2.

The last section of each activity contains an annotated bibliography of references which are especially helpful in that activity. Organizations from which you may obtain continuing or new information are also noted here.

Chapter 1 Hydrologic Cycle

Water, one of man's most valuable resourses, moves continually through a cycle from the atmosphere to the earth, over and through the earth, and to the atmosphere.[1] Water quality changes as water moves through the cycle; therefore, an understanding of the cycle enhances an understanding of water pollution and its prevention. Climatology, geology, geography, and petrology, areas of study related to the hydrologic cycle, also aid in this study.

The hydrologic cycle, illustrated in Figure 1-1, shows many repositories for water and the processes which convey the water from one point to another.

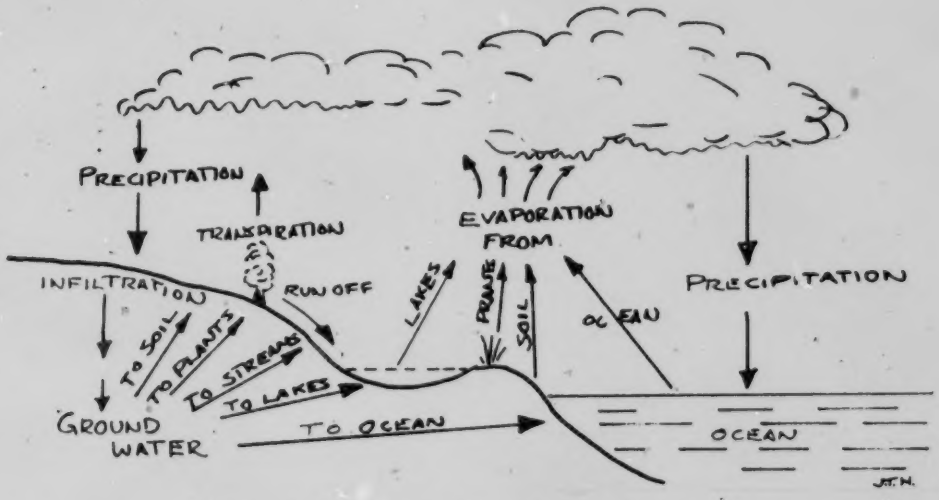


Figure 1-1 Hydrologic Cycle Schematic
(From Climate and Man 1941 Yearbook of Agriculture)

The flow of water is made up of many smaller cycles. Rain water can run off into streams and rivers finding its way to the ocean or it can infiltrate the soil or further downward to become ground water, or part of the water table. Water can find its way back to the surface in many ways: it can seep into lakes and streams which are deep enough to extend into the water table; it can surface through springs or wells; it can flow from faults where the underlying strata become exposed, or it can be tapped by the roots of plants.

---

[1]Grover and Harrington, Stream Flow Measurements, Records and Their Uses (New York City: Dover Publications, 1966), p.1.

Hydrologic Cycle

Transpiration, the giving up of water vapor to the atmosphere by plants, and evaporation from land and water bodies also returns water vapor to the atmosphere. The cycle continues when pure water condenses and becomes precipitation.

The cycle is a global cycle, but it can be studied in small regions by measuring inputs and outputs of water from these areas.

As water flows through the various pathways of the hydrologic cycle, its quality is often affected. It may pick up nutrients or pollutants in the form of dissolved solids as it passes through the soil or underlying rocks of a region. While it is in vapor form, water may become contaminated with foreign materials. Evaporation and transpiration are purification processes which release water vapor back to the air.

Man affects the hydrologic cycle at many points. Man's pollution of the air adds to the chemical composition of the rain water. Runoff from fields and gardens often carries nutrients and pollutants from fertilizers, pesticides, and animal wastes. Effluents which man adds to rivers and other waterways have a direct effect on the hydrologic cycle. When the flow of water through a system is studied it is also convenient and necessary to study the flow of nutrients and pollutants which accompany the water.

In this section, the activities focus on parameters of the hydrologic cycle and lead to investigations which allow students to evaluate the total system within a given region. Such evaluations are referred to as calculating a total budget for a locale. Such activities show that the inputs minus the outputs of water containing nutrients and pollutants are equal to the change of storage within the system.

Activities are designed on two levels. The basic level is designed to give the student an understanding of the water flow through an area of the cycle. The advanced level gives an understanding of the nutrients and pollutant-flow which accompany the water. Generally, suggestions for maintaining and continuing activity are concerned with the physical and biological characteristics within the system and lead to man's effect on the system.

Inherent in the following activities is the need for the delineation of a location for study. Any study region is possible if its boundaries are carefully defined. Boundaries include the air above and a specific depth in the ground below unless a smaller region is chosen. A conceptual diagram of the hydrologic cycle of an area of study is outlined in Figure 1-2.

Hydrologic Cycle

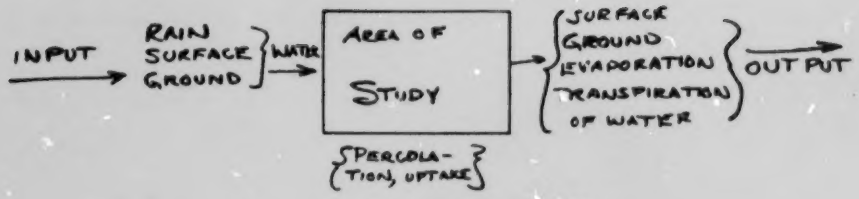


Figure 1-2 Hydrologic Cycle of Study Area

There are few limitations associated with the activities of this section. Most can be carried out by a teacher in any situation. They are capable of being performed on driveways, lawns, and football fields, or in country watersheds. The activities do not encompass all aspects of the water cycle.

The following skeleton questions serve to outline the scope of the section:

1. How much precipitation falls on a particular area? Is it pure water?

2. What happens to the precipitation that falls on soil? Where does it go? How does it change?

3. What role do plants have in the hydrologic cycle?

4. What is the source of water in streams? Does this water naturally contain any nutrients?

5. What is the water and nutrient budget for your study area?

The following resources will be found useful throughout the entire section. Resources of particular interest are listed at the close of each activity.

Bibliography

Bruce, J. P., and R. H. Clark, Introduction to Hydrometerolgy, Pergamon Press, New York City, 1966.

Chorley, Richard J., (ed.), Water, Earth and Man, Methuen and Co., Ltd., London, 1969. This book is available in the United States from Barnes & Noble, Inc.

Life Science Library, Water, Time, Inc., New York City, 1966.

Hydrologic Cycle

Thomas, H. E., The Yearbook of Agriculture, 1955: Water, U. S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C., 1955.

Ward, R. C., Principles of Hydrology, McGraw-Hill Publishing Co., New York City, 1967.

Hydrologic Cycle

A. Surface Runoff

I. Introduction

The purpose of this activity is to examine surface runoff and its relation to the hydrologic cycle. The activity can be performed by a wide range of grade levels and in many types of study sites.

II. Questions

1. To lead into the activity, ask students: What happens to the precipitation that falls onto the ground?

2. To initiate the activity, ask students:

   a. Is it possible to collect precipitation after it strikes the ground?

   b. Will some of this precipitation be on the surface?

   c. What is the effect of various surface slopes?

3. To continue the activity, ask students:

   a. What is the chemical composition of surface runoff water?

   b. What is the effect of intensity of precipitation?

   c. What is the effect of soil moisture?

4. To evaluate the student, consider:

   a. With the limitations involved, did the student's method eliminate as many external variables as possible?

   b. How accurate were the measuring techniques?

   c. Did his simulated rain approach a natural condition?

   d. Did the student relate this exercise to the hydrologic cycle and the water quality?

   e. Did the student realize that runoff is only one "fate" of precipitated water which strikes the ground?

III. Equipment

1. Shovel
2. Standard size watertight dustpan or some similar water collecting device
3. Several Number 10 cans at least one of which is marked off in liters and another with holes in the bottom for simulated rainfall
4. A 1000 ml. beaker
5. Meter stick or ruler
6. Brunton compass or clinometer (homemade device for measuring slope is also possible)
7. Funnel and filter paper
8. Flask

IV. Procedure

1. Basic Level

   a. Select a site with a variety of slopes.

   b. Determine an area of 20 $cm.^2$ and excavate a shallow trench on the downhill edge for the runoff collecting device (dustpan, tray, etc.).

   c. Measure angle of the slope with the Brunton compass or clinometer.

   d. Pour one liter of water into a Number 10 can with holes while holding can over the delineated area.

   e. Filter surface runoff collected and measure the volume to get percent of runoff.

   f. Wait 5 minutes and repeat process to get the effect of increased soil moisture.

   g. Select and delineate an adjacent area or similar site with the same slope. Repeat the process using a different intensity of simulated rainfall.

h. Repeat the process in areas of differing slopes.

i. If further studies are desired, repeat the process using different soil types and vegetation.

2. Advanced Level

a. Collect (as before) the runoff from various sites showing differences in ground cover, slope, etc.

b. Using a chemical testing kit, determine and compare the nutrient content of the runoff from these areas.

c. Correlate variable physical and environmental factors with changes in water quality of surface runoff.

V. Past Studies

1. Students have found that the moisture of the soil from previous precipitation can have an effect on the amount of runoff.

2. Students have conducted this activity on driveways, near farm fields, and in various other areas and have seen the effects of automobile emissions, animal wastes, and fertilizers on surface runoff composition.

VI. Limitations

1. Even distribution of simulated rainfall may be difficult to reproduce.

2. In order to cover many variables, teachers may find it convenient to break their class down into small groups, having each assigned an environmental or physical variable to examine, and to pool data later.

VII. Bibliography

Earth Science Curriculum Project, Investigating the Earth, Houghton Mifflin Co., Boston, 1967. (Chapter 9 contains a discussion of the movement of surface and ground water.)

Ward, R. C., Principles of Hydrology, McGraw-Hill Publishing Co., New York City, 1967. This more advanced text gives a stimulating and complete discussion of surface runoff and its relation to the hydrologic cycle.

B. Infiltration and Percolation: Concepts and Measurements Involved

I. Introduction

This activity acquaints the student with the action of water absorption, infiltration, and percolation in soil and encourages him to relate these to the hydrologic cycle and water quality. The basic level activity may be carried out by 7th graders and above; the advanced level may be carried out by students who have a little knowledge of chemistry. The activity will be carried out in a field or on a lawn where digging temporary holes is permissible.

II. Questions

1. To lead into the activity, as students:

   a. What happens to the precipitation that falls on soil?

   b. Where does the water in the soil move and how does it change?

   c. What is the action of water that enters soil?

2. To initiate activity ask students:

   a. How would you determine water motion within the soil?

   b. What determines the direction of water motion? What effect does this movement have on water quality?

3. To continue activity ask students:

   a. Are there any differences in the speed of water motion?

   b. Is there any upward or sideward movement?

   c. Does soil type affect the motion or effects of water in soil?

4. To evaluate the student's performance, consider:

   a. Has he demonstrated soil water movement satisfactorily?

   b. Was he able to relate infiltration to possible changes in water quality?

c. Does he explain where much of the water he uses goes?

d. Is he concerned as to the effects of the use of tracer dye?

e. Does he relate man's activities to a possible role in the quality of infiltrated water?

III. Equipment

1. Basic Level

a. Digging tools

b. Nontoxic dye such as fluorescent Pyla-Tel tracer dye (food coloring is also possible)

c. Several 10-qt. buckets and other large containers

d. Timing instruments

e. Meter Stick

f. Filter paper, Kleenex, paper towels, or toilet paper

g. Aluminum edging fence

2. Advanced Level

a. Nonpoisonous leaching chemical, such as sodium phosphate

b. Funnels

c. Sample bottles

d. Hach, Delta or LaMotte kit or suitable qualitative chemistry testing kit

e. Soil collection bags

f. Beakers

g. Pipettes and rubber tubing

IV. Procedures

1. Basic Level

   a. Have students set up a 30 cm. diameter circle of aluminum edging fence.

   b. Have students calculate how long it takes for a given quantity of water to penetrate the soil after it is poured into the enclosed area.

   c. Have students compare times from various areas.

   d. Have students excavate a 15 cm. diameter hole, which is 30 cm. or more deep.

   e. Have students excavate smaller holes around the original hole at various distances from it.

   f. Have students fill the original hole with the tracer dye solution.

   g. Have students make periodic checks in the surrounding holes with absorbent papers to determine flow of water and dye.

2. Advanced Level

   a. Have students excavate an additional experimental hole and distribute a known quantity of the nontoxic soluble chemical at the base of this hole.

   b. Have students add enough water to bring the concentration of the solute to 0.1M in the hole.

   c. Have students excavate test holes around the original at various intervals. (between 2 cm. and 35 cm.)

   d. After appropriate time delay, have students collect moist soil or accumulated water samples from the surrounding holes. These can be placed in bags and collection can be facilitated with tubing and pipettes.

   e. Have students test these samples with chemical testing kits, using the test appropriate for the test chemical used. This can be a qualitative or quantitative consideration. The student should test control samples from the same area.

   f. Have students compare and contrast their results.

V. Past Studies

Past studies show that the flow through the soil test holes will be enhanced if they are placed on an incline.

VI. Limitations

1. This activity can be done almost anywhere with simple equipment depending on a teacher's resources.

2. Surrounding holes can be made with an auger and be much smaller if time-saving is a factor. Do not place the surrounding holes too far from the original. Please be sure to get permission of property owners before you go to work.

VII. Bibliography

Monkhouse, F. J., A Dictionary of Geography, Arnold, London, 1965. This gives dictionary meanings of leaching, infiltration, etc., as they pertain to geography.

Strahler, A., Physical Geography, (2nd ed.), John Wiley & Sons, New York City, 1960. This text contains good information on hydrologic cycle and infiltration, with diagrams.

U. S. Department of the Interior, A Primer on Water, U. S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C., 1960. This gives very good information on runoff and infiltration under different conditions.

C. Transpiration: The Concepts and Measurements Involved

I. Introduction

This activity enables students to acquire an understanding of transpiration and its relationship to the hydrologic cycle. Seventh graders and above may complete this activity on the basic level.

II. Questions

1. To lead into activity ask students: What is transpiration and how does transpiration relate to the hydrologic cycle?

2. To initiate activity ask students:

   a. Can a way be devised to measure the rate of transpiration and determine the factors that limit it?

   b. How accurate is this method?

3. To continue activity ask students: How would the transpiration rate change in relation to changes in physical factors and man's activities such as air pollution?

4. To evaluate the students' performance consider:

   a. Did the students gain an understanding of the transpiration process?

   b. Did the students devise new tehcniques for demonstrating transpiration?

   c. Did the students relate the process to the hydrologic cycle?

III. Equipment

1. Basic Level

   a. Small potted plant

   b. Bell jar

   c. Flat surface for bell jar such as a glass plate

   d. Plastic sealable bags

e. Small graduated cylinder

f. Sensitive balance or scale (±0.1 g.)

g. Vaseline

2. Advanced Level

a. 500 ml. Erlenmyer flask

b. 2-hole rubber stopper to fit flask

c. Glass tubing

d. 20 cm. of rubber tubing

e. Small leafy plant

f. 1-ml. pipette

g. Burette clamp

h. Ring stand

i. Timing device

IV. Procedures

1. Basic Level

a. Have students place a potted plant under a sealed bell jar.

b. Have students make observations for a short period of time.

c. Have students alter some physical factors and make new observations.

d. Record and discuss all observations,

or,

a. Have students find a tree with leaves low enough to reach.

b. Have each student enclose a leaf in a plastic bag.

c. Have students wait an appreciable amount of time and collect bags.

d. Have students quantitatively determine the amount of water transpired.

e. Have students record and compare results. Ask them where the water came from and where it goes.

2. Advanced Level

a. Have students set up apparatus as outlined in Figure 1-1.

b. Have students fill the system completely with water and record the quantity of water used by the plant at various intervals.

c. Have students graph the data.

d. Have students repeat the experiment altering some physical factors.

e. Have students outline the relationship of physical factors to transpiration.

V. Past Studies

1. Students on the elementary and early secondary levels marveled at the collection of water by enclosing a leaf in a plastic bag.

2. Students at the 10th grade level were excited to find that plants give the atmosphere such a large quantity of water. One student devised a quantitative method to measure the amount of water a tree transpired in 24 hours.

3. Students at the 10th grade level were able to qualify the difference in transpiration between shaded and unshaded leaves and leaves of different sizes.

VI. Limitations

There are no limitations foreseen. Teachers should caution their students that procedures calling for sealed containers should be closely followed.

VII. Bibliography

Biological Sciences Curriculum Study, High School Biology, Green Version, (2nd ed.), Rand McNally & Co., Chicago, 1968. This is an easy reading basic biology test. Transpiration is treated on pages 447-449 and includes detailed procedure for a laboratory investigation of transpiration.

De Wiest, R. J. M., Geohydrology, John Wiley and Sons, Inc., New York City, 1965. This is a highly technical treatment of all aspects of the engineer's concerns; however, the treatment of transpiration is brief, simple and useful. (See pp. 47-49).

Hill, J. B., and others, Botany, McGraw-Hill Book Co., New York City. This is a collegiate text but easy enough for the good high school student. There are references to the physiological aspects of transpiration.

Leopold, Luna, and Walter Langbein, A Primer on Water, U. S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C., 1960. This is a simple pamphlet with good diagrams which are well worth having in the classroom. It runs the gamut from the water cycle to water purification systems, to farm irrigation, and to legal aspects. Water in relation to plants and soil is treated on pages 26-27.

Morholt, Evelyn, Paul Brandwein, and Alexander Joseph, A Sourcebook for the Biological Sciences, (2nd ed.), Harcourt, Brace & World, Inc., New York City, 1966. This is a must for every biology teacher. Use in this activity for directions for demonstrating transpiration and plant physiology.

U. S. Department of Agriculture, The Yearbook of Agriculture, 1955: Water, U. S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C., 1955. This is an excellent reference for the price ($2.00). It deals with water in connection with agriculture, forestry, and wildlife. It is easy reading with good diagrams and lots of statistics, although it is a bit old now.

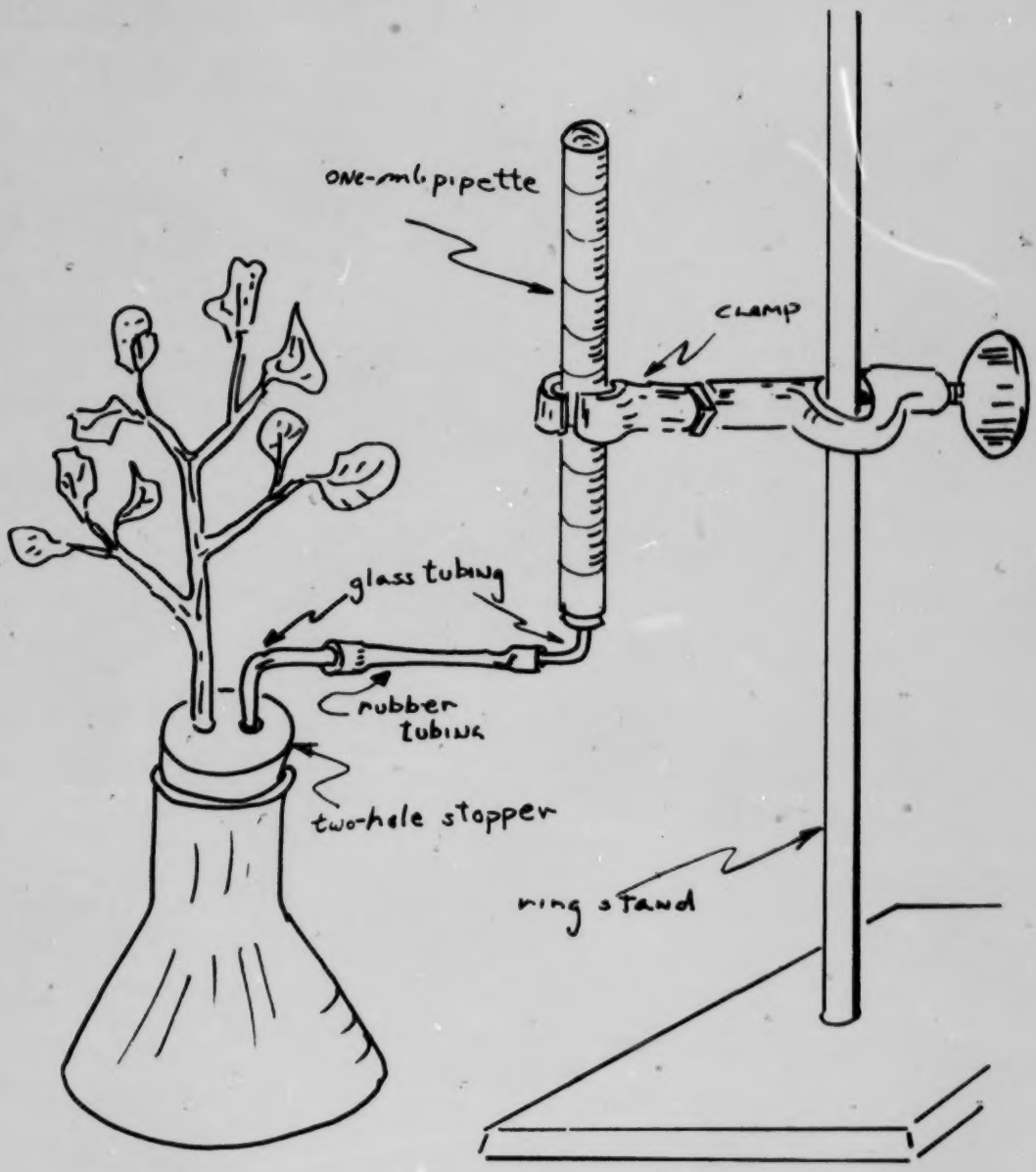


Figure 1-3 Diagram for Advanced Procedure

D. Soil Evaporation and Transpiration

I. Introduction

The purpose of this activity is to provide the student with an understanding of transpiration and its relationship to soil moisture content. It is applicable to a wide range of grade levels and study areas.

II. Questions

1. To lead into the activity ask students:

   a. What happens to the water taken up by plant roots?

   b. Where does it come from?

   c. Where does it go?

2. To initiate activity ask students:

   a. Does the use of soil water by plants have any effect which can be measured in terms of a difference in soil moisture content in a vegetated or unvegetated area?

   b. Does a covering of plants have any effect on the evaporation of moisture from soil?

3. To continue the activity ask students:

   a. How might man's land-use activities affect the hydrologic cycle through an effect on plants and their transpiration?

   b. Is transpiration a "good" or "bad" thing in relation to the role of water in our lives?

4. To evaluate the student's performance, consider:

   a. Does he weigh the idea that vegetation inhibits precipitation runoff with the idea that vegetation increases depletion of soil moisture by transpiration?

   b. Does he realize the multirole of plants in the hydrologic cycle?

III. Equipment

1. A coleus or geranium plant

2. Vaseline

3. Soil auger
4. Plastic bags (sandwich bags are excellent)
5. Trowel or small shovel
6. Balance
7. Meter stick
8. Oven or drying device
9. Six tall juice cans
10. Masking tape
11. Seeds of a convenient plant

IV. Procedure

1. Have the students pick four leaves from the plants.
2. Have the students coat the top side of one leaf, the bottom of another and both sides of a third with vaseline.
3. Have students check the leaves in 24 and 48 hours.
4. Have students discuss the condition of the leaves in relation to the untreated leaf and relate this to the biological role leaves play in transpiration and the water cycle,

or,

1. Have students clear the vegetation from a square of ground which is 30 cm. per side.
2. Have students take soil samples at various depths.
3. Have students determine the moisture content of these samples by weighing, drying, and reweighing.
4. The next day, have students take 3 more samples from the denuded plot and 3 from a vegetated area nearby.
5. Have students determine moisture content of each.
6. Have students discuss the results in terms of the hydrologic cycle and transpiration,

or,

1. Have students place an equal amount of soil in each of 6 juice cans.

2. Have students add an equal amount of water to each and plant seeds in 2 of them.

3. Have students cover all the cans with plastic.

4. When the seeds begin to germinate have students uncover the cans with planted seeds and 2 of the other cans.

5. After 3 days of plant growth, remove the plants and take an equal weight of soil from each of the cans and determine the moisture content.

6. Have students compare the moisture contents of each and discuss the mechanisms which cause different moisture amounts in each of the 3 types of "can" situations.

V. Past Studies

1. Students have been able to show graphically that soil loses more water when vegetated than it does in a denuded area where only evaporation takes place.

2. Students have often been stimulated to argue whether the role of plants is important in the hydrologic cycle. Replacement of atmospheric moisture must be weighed with the importance of soil moisture to man.

VI. Limitations

There are no foreseeable limitations in this exercise although some parts extend over a lengthy time period. A site location and materials collection should be no problem.

VII. Bibliography

Biological Sciences Curriculum Study, High School Biology, Green Version, Rand McNally & Co., Chicago, 1968. This text provides an explanation of transpiration and ideas for developing other demonstration projects.

Leopold, Luna, and Walter Langbein, A Primer on Water, U. S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C., 1960. An excellent pamphlet which deals specifically with the relation of plants, transpiration, and soil moisture.

Hydrologic Cycle

Morholt, Evelyn, Paul Brandwein, and Alexander Joseph, A Sourcebook for the Biological Sciences, Harcourt, Brace & World, Inc., New York City, 1966. This reference treats the physiology of transpiration.

Ward, R. C., Principles of Hydrology, McGraw-Hill Publishing Co., New York City, 1967. This advanced but excellent text gives a complete and stimulating coverage of transpiration and its relation to the hydrologic cycle.

Wilson, Carl, and Walter E. Loomis, Botany, Holt, Rinehart and Winston, New York City, 1962. A standard reference for botany, this text treats the biology of transpiration.

E. Evapotranspiration

I. Introduction

The purpose of this activity is to show that on a small grassy area water leaves the grass and enters the atmosphere by the process of evapotranspiration. It is a suitable activity for a beginning study of the hydrologic cycle. Seventh graders can easily do this study and young students will enjoy it if the teacher helps them with the water testing.

II. Questions

1. To lead into the activity ask students:

   a. Have you ever noticed water collecting on the underside of a waterproof material after it has been on the ground?

   b. Where did this water come from?

2. To initiate activity ask students: Can you collect and/or measure the water from the underside of a waterproof material after letting the material lie on a grassy area in the sun?

3. To continue the activity ask students:

   a. How does the process of transpiration fit into the hydrologic cycle?

   b. Do you think transpired water is pure?

   c. Is this important?

4. To evaluate the students performance consider:

   a. Does the student seem to understand the concept of transpiration and its relation to the hydrologic cycle?

   b. Did he develop additional approaches and techniques for demonstrating and measuring transpiration?

III. Equipment

1. A plastic sheet (preferably mounted on a stiff form, such as a form cut from a cardboard box and a clear sheet of plastic or cellophane stapled to its edges works well)

2. A small container to collect water from the plastic

3. Water testing kit for advanced study

IV. Procedure

1. Place the collecting equipment on grass, preferably in sunlight, and leave it there for 30 minutes or more.

2. Collect or observe droplets of moisture which have collected on the underside of the plastic.

3. If enough water is obtained, chemical testing procedures may be employed to determine such factors as total dissolved solids.

V. Past Studies

Students in many situations have been able to appreciate the demonstration of transpiration and its relationship to the water cycle by using this experiment.

VI. Limitations

There are no limitations in this experiment.

VII. Bibliography

Earth Science Curriculum Project, Investigating the Earth, Houghton Mifflin Co., Boston, 1967. This standard text gives a short treatment of transpiration on p. 215.

Ward, R. C., Principles of Hydrology, McGraw-Hill Publishing Co., New York City, 1967. This excellent text gives a coverage of evapotranspiration and its relation to the hydrologic cycle. Many ideas for continuing study projects can be found.

Wilson, Carl, and Walter E. Loomis, Botany, Holt, Rinehart and Winston, New York City, 1962. A standard botany text, this source covers the biology of transpiration.

F. Infiltration: Its Effect on Water Quality

I. Introduction

This activity demonstrates the change in precipitation water quality as it passes through soil using a lab model. This activity is applicable to a range of grade levels. Seventh graders can complete this activity if the teacher assists with the dissolved solids tests. Students with some chemistry background can do the activities themselves.

II. Questions

1. To lead to the activity ask:

   a. What happens to rainwater after it strikes the soil?

   b. Does some soak in?

   c. Does this change its quality?

2. To initiate the activity ask:

   a. How any quality change that occurs during infiltration may be measured?

3. To continue the activity ask:

   a. What would the variance in change be if two samples of different soil composition were tested?

   b. What would happen in test areas of different vegetation?

4. To evaluate the student's performance consider:

   a. Was he effective in using testing equipment and becoming skilled in testing techniques?

   b. Was he able to decide on logical choices for dissolved solids tests for his type of soil?

   c. Was he eager to improve on the experiment and make attempts to devise new experiments for testing changes in precipitated water quality?

   d. Did he check the distilled water to find the pH and any minerals which were already present?

III. Equipment

1. Chemical testing equipment
2. Sample box with screened bottom
3. Shovel
4. Collecting pan
5. Rainwater or distilled water
6. Number 10 can
7. Funnel (optional)
8. Ringstand (optional)
9. Funnel holder (optional)
10. Filter paper (optional)
11. Beakers (optional)
12. Number 10 nail or punch

IV. Procedures

1. Take a soil sample from the area chosen for study. Soil samples can be up to one cubic foot (30 - 45 kilograms). Bring the sample back to the lab.
2. Spread the sample in the sample box with the screened bottom.
3. Make a rain simulator by taking a Number 10 can and perforating the bottom with a nail or punch.
4. Measure out one liter of the test water.
5. Simulate rain on the soil sample by pouring your liter of water into the perforated can and collecting the seepage in a collection pan placed below the screened box.
6. Do appropriate dissolved solid tests on the seepage collected.

V. Past Studies

1. Some students recorded high iron and copper content in seepage water until they realized that their screening was affecting their results.

2. Students discovered that filtering seepage resulted in facilitating colorimetric chemical testing.

3. Some students have used rainwater in conducting the experiment. By testing water quality of rainwater and seepage, a more realistic presentation of the effect of infiltration on water quality was found.

VI. Limitations

1. This exercise requires a general knowledge in recognizing dissolved solids and testing for them. Teachers should let their students decide on the appropriate dissolved solids tests for the soil sample collected.

2. Careful rain simulation is necessary for realistic and uniform distribution.

3. Sites should be chosen that are representative and easily accessible.

VII. Bibliography

Leopold, Luna, and Walter Langbein, A Primer on Water, U. S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C., 1960. This inexpensive pamphlet contains a good description of infiltration in various conditions.

Strahlet, A. N., Physical Geography, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York City, 1960. This reference contains good general information on the hydrologic cycle and infiltration diagrams.

Ward, R. C., Principles of Hydrology, McGraw-Hill Book Co., New York City, 1967. An excellent general source, this text contains a detailed and stimulating coverage of infiltration and its relationship to water quality and the hydrologic cycle.

G. Ground Water Seepage

I. Introduction

This activity demonstrates that rock and soil minerals are dissolved in water as it moves from the surface to ground water and relates these nutrient changes to the water cycle. Students in a range of grade levels may complete this activity as the extent of testing is adaptable to the ability of the group. Any area where ground water seeps to the surface or is otherwise available for collection is a possible study site.

II. Questions

1. To lead into the activity ask students: Does water quality change when it soaks into the ground?

2. To initiate the activity ask students:

   a. Where can we collect ground water samples?

   b. How can we determine the composition of the water quality change?

3. To continue the activity ask students:

   a. How does the change in water quality take place?

   b. If this type of solution continues, what will happen to the soil and rocks of the area?

4. To evaluate the student's efforts consider:

   a. Has the student demonstrated how and why seepage water is of different composition than surface or rainwater?

   b. Has the student made any reasonable conclusions as to where the dissolved materials in the seepage water will finally accumulate?

   c. Does the student relate leaching to a role in the changing water quality and nutrient composition in the hydrologic cycle?

   d. Does the student realize that infiltration can also be a water purification mechanism?

   e. Does the student relate man's activities and their possible effect on the quality of ground water?

III. Equipment

1. 5 to 10 collection bottles (sterile)

2. Water chemistry testing kit (qualitative or quantitative)

3. Water bacterial analysis materials

IV. Procedure

1. Select an area of rock or soil where seepage of ground water to the surface is evident.

2. Collect 5 to 10 bottles of water for water chemistry and bacterial tests.

3. Test the water qualitatively or quantitatively as time and resources permit.

V. Past Studies

Students and teachers have found that if areas of ground water seepage are inaccessible, an examination of well or spring water is feasible.

VI. Limitations

The major limitation of this activity is the determination of a site with suitable flow for study; however, such seepage is found throughout the country.

VII. Bibliography and Resources

Baldwin, Helene I., A Primer on Ground Water, U. S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C., 1963. This is an excellent pamphlet for introductory treatment of ground water.

Ward, R. C., Principles of Hydrology, McGraw-Hill Publishing Co., New York City, 1967. This somewhat advanced text gives a complete coverage of ground water and contains ideas for stimulated students to develop into projects.

Teachers are also advised to contact their state and local Federal agencies for information on ground water resources of particular areas. The Soil Conservation Service is a particularly helpful agency.

H. Transpiration and Plant Uptake

I. Introduction

This activity is designed to help students realize that water is being taken in and given off by plants as part of the water cycle. It can be carried out in varying degrees beginning at the 1st grade level. Few time and travel problems occur because local weeds, shrubs and trees may easily be found in the immediate area.

II. Questions

1. To lead into the activity ask:

   a. What happens to a plant if it is not watered?

   b. Why do plants have to be watered more than once?

   c. What is happening to the water?

2. To initiate the activity ask:

   a. How is water released from the plant and why don't we see it?

   b. How can we show that water is being given off?

   c. How can we measure how much water is being given off?

3. To continue the activity ask:

   a. If a small plant gives off a given amount of water, how much does an oak tree give off?

   b. How much would a forest give off in a certain time period?

   c. Are the biological activities of plants involved in pollution?

   d. Does a given plant give off an equal amount of water from day to day or under variable physical conditions?

4. To evaluate the student's performance consider:

   a. Did the student devise methods for measuring the uptake and release of water by plants?

   b. Were his techniques successful in visibly demonstrating transpiration?

c. Did the student realize the role of plants in the hydrologic cycle and possible pollution from plants in a natural environment?

III. Equipment

1. Plastic bags (one per student)

2. Twist wires for tightening bags around plant stems

3. Bucket

4. Graduated cylinder or some equivalent means of liquid measure

5. Spade

6. Aluminum foil

IV. Procedures

1. Transpiration activity

a. Locate a place on your campus where there are small plants with stems so structured that plastic bags can be slipped over the end. Weeds are ideal (e.g., milkweed).

b. Have each student slip his bag over the end of a stem so that it will cover as many leaves as possible. Use the twist wires to tighten the open end around the stem securely.

c. Have the students return the next day and cut off the stem with the bag on it. Bring it back to the classroom and measure the amount of water that has collected in the bag.

2. Plant Uptake Activity

a. Have the students dig up two or more plants, getting as much of the root system as possible. Remove all soil from the roots and place each in a bucket containing a measured amount of water covering the roots.

b. Have the students check the amount of water in the bucket at various later times.

V. Past Studies

1. Students have found that they can demonstrate transpiration using a plant under a bell jar.

2. Although students at a particular school found that evaporation from all the plant uptake buckets was uniform, they devised a method using aluminum foil for eliminating evaporation as a variable.

3. Other students placed transparent plastic sheets on their lawn and observed the transpired water collecting under them.

VI. Limitations

1. Teachers should try to prevent other students at the school from disrupting the transpiration experiment.

2. Teachers can avoid problems by locating suitable plants on their campus before the students begin work.

VII. Bibliography

Biological Sciences Curriculum Study, High School Biology, Green Version, Rand McNally and Co., Chicago, 1968. Written for the high school level, this text contains a description of transpiration and ideas for further experiments.

Ward, R. C., Principles of Hydrology, McGraw-Hill Publishing Co., New York City, 1967. This excellent, more advanced reference contains a stimulating discussion of transpiration and its relation to the water cycle.

Wilson, Carl, and Walter E. Loomis, Botany, Holt, Rinehart and Winston, New York City, 1962. A standard botany text, this reference contains information on the biology of transpiration.

I. Erosion: The Effects of Water on Soil

I. Introduction

The purpose of this activity is to demonstrate the erosion effects of water runoff on various types of soil and slopes. It is a possible "beginning" activity for students at any level of understanding and is capable of being performed on any nearby eroded area.

II. Questions

1. To lead into the activity:

   a. Are there any hills or cliffs in your area that are being eroded?

   b. How does the runoff water affect these hillsides?

   c. Does the type of soil composition have any effect on the erosion rate?

2. To initiate activity:

   a. What soil composition do these hills have?

   b. What is the slope of these hills?

   c. How can we measure the ability of water to change the structure of different soils on a slope?

3. To continue activity:

   a. What types of plant life, if any, are found on these hillsides?

   b. Are similar types of plants found in all soil types?

   c. How does plant growth seem to affect erosion?

   d. How can the amount of rainfall be measured on individual hills?

   e. How can erosion rates be determined?

   f. What are other physical factors in erosion?

4. To evaluate the students' performances:

   a. Were the students able to identify various soil types as to their resistance to erosion?

b. Were the students able to correlate slope to erosion?

c. Did the students recognize the forces other than water which act upon the soil?

III. Equipment

1. Rain gauge
2. Meter stick
3. Protractor or clinometer
4. Stakes
5. Hammer

IV. Procedures

1. Have students visit the erosion site and set up rainfall gauge.
2. Have students drive measured stakes into the ground at the top, middle, and bottom of the area.
3. Have students measure the slope of the area.
4. Have students describe the soil of the site.
5. Have students examine and describe the plant life of the area and the root structure of particularly abundant species.
6. After the next rainfall, have students visit the site and repeat the previous procedures.
7. Have students calculate the amount of soil eroded off a specific area using the comparative before-and-after measurements from their stakes.
8. Have students correlate the amount of rainfall, slope, vegetation, etc., with the amount of erosion.

V. Past Studies

1. Students have often been amazed at the amount of soil which can erode off an unprotected hillside in a single rainstorm.
2. Some studies have included graphs correlating slope with amount of erosion.

3. Students have often been impressed at the amount of solid material that may enter a stream from such a hillside. The link between erosion and water pollution becomes visibly evident.

VI. Limitations

1. Teachers may have difficulty finding a site suitable for study. Housing developments and road construction areas can suffice, though open mining pits and steep unprotected hillsides usually provide the best study sites.

2. There are few other limitations to the study although the time period should be noted as this is a continuing study.

VII. Bibliography

Coleman, Edward A., Vegetation and Watershed Management, Ronald Press Co., New York City, 1953.

Earth Science Curriculum Project, Investigating the Earth, Houghton Mifflin Co., Boston, 1966. This text contains a description of water forces and their cause of erosion.

Ward, R. C., Principles of Hydrology, McGraw-Hill Book Co., New York City, 1967. This rather advanced reference contains a readable and stimulating treatment of water runoff.

J. Diffusion: Demonstration of Water's Solvent and Diffusion Properties

I. Introduction

The purpose of this activity is to demonstrate the diffusion of materials in water. Being a lab activity it is easily applicable to most teaching situations and a range of grade levels.

II. Questions

1. To lead into the activity:

   a. What is water?

   b. What is a solvent?

   c. What is diffusion?

   d. Is it possible to use elements, compounds, or both, to demonstrate diffusion and the rate of diffusion?

2. To initiate activity:

   a. How long does it take for differing chemicals to diffuse in water?

   b. Is there a difference in their diffusion rates?

3. To continue activity:

   a. Is there a noticeable difference in diffusion of organic and inorganic chemicals in water?

   b. How do effluent wastes from man's activities diffuse?

4. To evaluate the student's performance consider:

   a. Did the student relate diffusion to water pollution?

   b. Did the student realize the importance of water's solvent properties in the hydrologic cycle and water pollution?

   c. Did he demonstrate varying differences in diffision rates of various test compounds he chose?

III. Equipment

1. Suitable test chemicals such as potassium permanganate ($KMnO_4$), copper sulfate ($CuSO_4$), iodine, and elemental iron

2. Beakers and flasks

3. Effluent wastes from man's activities such as water from washing or cooking vegetables, sludge from a sewage plant, factory effluents from local industries, animal wastes from barns, detergents, etc.

4. Stopwatch

5. Bunsen burner, ring stand, asbestos screen

6. Balance

7. Filter paper

IV. Procedures

1. Add crystals or drops of test chemicals to beakers of water.

2. Observe and time the rate of diffusion throughout the solvent.

3. Have the students do the same with the various test effluents they have selected.

4. If students select a test material which does not completely dissolve, have them separate the undissolved material; dry and weigh it to determine the percentage of their material which has diffused.

V. Past Studies

Students have easily been able to relate what they have seen in this activity in the laboratory to what they see as effects of man on local rivers.

VI. Limitations

Teachers should caution their students about the dangers involved in the use of sewage wastes.

VII. Bibliography

Earth Science Curriculum Project, Investigating the Earth, Houghton Mifflin Co., Boston, 1966.

Leopold, Luna, and Walter Langbein, Water, Time, Inc., New York City, 1968.

U. S. Department of Agriculture, The Yearbook of Agriculture, 1955: Water, U. S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C., 1955.

K. Ground Water: An Examination of the Source of Water in Streams

I. Introduction

The purpose of this activity is to examine ground water as the source of water in streams. This activity is recommended for the high school level where it can be conducted successfully after the location of a small stream which is convenient for study. This activity requires more than an hour and one-half to complete.

II. Questions

1. To lead into the activity:

   a. Where does stream water come from?

   b. What is ground water?

2. To initiate activity:

   a. How can one demonstrate ground water as the possible source of water in streams?

   b. How does one collect ground water?

   c. What is contained in ground water?

3. To continue activity:

   a. How does the ground water differ at various points along the stream?

   b. How does the terrain affect the ground water?

   c. What other factors might affect the ground water?

4. To evaluate the student's performance:

   a. Does the student understand the relationship between ground water and stream water?

   b. Does the student relate man's activities to a possible role in the pollution of ground water?

   c. Has the student demonstrated the source of water in the stream picked for study?

Hydrologic Cycle

III. Equipment

1. Core sampler
2. Sledgehammer
3. Shovel
4. Thermometer
5. Siphon or ladle
6. Sample bottles
7. Meter stick
8. Filtering equipment
9. Dissolved solids water chemistry testing kit

IV. Procedure

1. Have the students excavate test holes in the land beside a stream. These can be placed at varying distances away from the stream.
2. Have the students measure the depth to which water fills these holes.
3. Have the students take samples of the water from various test holes.
4. Have the students test the composition of the water from their test holes. Hint: To use colorimetric testing procedures, filtering or centrifuging of the samples may be necessary.
5. Have the students compare the composition of the water from their test holes with a sample taken from the stream itself.

V. Past Studies

1. Students often have found that by placing their test holes too far from the stream they were unable to obtain any water samples. A graphic illustration of the concept of a water table was thus evident.
2. In some situations students were able to see that the water depth in their test holes was very close to that of the stream.

3. Comparable water quality composition from the test holes and stream is often found, indicating a common source. Students have extrapolated that the water in the stream is most probably from the water table they isolated in their test holes.

VI. Limitations

1. Teachers may have trouble finding a stream convenient for this study. However, any small stream will do. Those without steep banks are particularly useful as the students will have a large area of lowland in which to dig their holes with a probability of obtaining water in them.

2. Filtering and centrifuging the water samples is often necessary as the suspended solids content of the samples is often high. This can be done with standard equipment.

3. Students should not be discouraged if there is not immediate filling of their test holes. The holes may not be deep enough!

4. Core samplers have a habit of clogging. Patience is required.

VII. Bibliography

Ward, R. C., Principles of Hydrology, McGraw-Hill Publishing Co., New York City, 1967. Stimulating ideas and explanations of ground water and stream source are found in this somewhat advanced but easily readable reference.

Hydrologic Cycle

L. Precipitation: Measurement and Evaluation

I. Introduction

This activity introduces the student to precipitation in the hydrologic cycle as the input of water and input vehicle of nutrients to a study area. It is a possible study for all grade levels and is capable of being performed anywhere it rains.

II. Questions

1. To lead into the activity:

   a. What is rain and how does it form?

   b. What does it contain or is it pure?

2. To initiate activity:

   a. How can we collect and measure the amount of precipitation that falls on a particular area?

   b. What is the water quality of the precipitation?

3. To continue activity:

   a. What role does the chemical and nutrient composition of precipitation play in the system?

   b. By what means does precipitation pick up dissolved chemicals?

   c. Does the composition of snowfall resemble the composition of rain?

   d. What other means of nutrient input to study areas are there?

4. To evaluate the student's performance:

   a. Did the student devise a means of collecting precipitation so that he could accurately determine the amount and quality of the sample he obtained?

   b. Did the student understand the role of the nutrient input of precipitation as far as the system and its ecology is concerned?

c. Did the student demonstrate the presence of dissolved solids in precipitation?

III. Equipment

1. Basic Level

a. Funnels

b. Collection bottles

c. Evaporating dishes

d. Bunsen burner

e. Large, flat procelain dishes up to one inch deep

f. Rulers

2. Advanced Level

a. Demineralizing water wash bottles

b. Chemical testing kit for water quality determination

IV. Procedures

1. Basic Level

a. Have the student collect precipitation in procelain pans.

b. Have the student calculate how much has fallen in inches.

c. Have the student evaporate to dryness some of the collection and observe the residual solid content.

2. Advanced Level

a. Have the student rinse all apparatus with distilled and then with demineralized water.

b. Have the student collect precipitation as above.

c. Have the student quantitatively analyze the nutrient content of his collection.

V. Past Studies

1. Students have been able to compare the composition of precipitation from open areas, under trees, near factories, etc., and through discussion, have been able to realize the effects of these physical and biological characteristics on the system.

2. Students have often been able to gain an appreciation of nitrogen cycle by measuring nitrate input in precipitation.

3. Students have found nitrate, sulfate, chloride, fluoride, pH, and total dissolved solids, particularly useful determinations in chemical testing.

4. Students often have shown interest in developing new methods of precipitation collection.

VI. Limitations

1. There are few limitations in this study, particularly since it is capable of being performed on two levels or more.

2. It can be completed almost anywhere.

3. Teachers should make sure that all apparatus used in advanced study has been thoroughly rinsed and demineralized. After such a process it should not be touched as even the dissolved solid content of sweat may affect results.

4. The nutrient content of rain is often very low.

5. The precipitation should be transferred to collection bottles soon after its collection, as evaporation from collection pans will concentrate nutrient composition abnormally.

VII. Bibliography

Borman, F. H., and G. E. Likens, "Nutrient Cycling," Science, 27 January 1967, 155:424-429. This article gives a scientific but easily readable treatment of the role of precipitation in nutrient cycling.

Fisher, D. W., et al, "Atmospheric Contributions to Water Quality of Streams in Hubbard Brook Experimental Forest, New Hampshire," Water Resources Research, October, 1968, 4:1115-1126.

Hydrologic Cycle

Likens, G. E., et al, "The Calcium, Magnesium, Potassium, and Sodium Budgets for a Small Forested Ecosystem," Ecology, Late Summer, 1967, 48:772-785. This is a scientific but stimulating review of precipitation collection procedures.

Ward, R. C., Principles of Hydrology, McGraw-Hill Book Co., New York City, 1967.

M. The Water Budget of a Small Watershed

I. Introduction

The purpose of this activity is to introduce the student to the hydrologic and nutrient cycle budgets of a small watershed. It is an advanced-level study and is best attempted by the student who has completed a number of the hydrologic cycle activities.

II. Questions

1. To lead into activity:

   a. If we outline any particular area of land, what are the mechanisms by which water enters that area?

   b. What are the mechanisms by which it leaves the area?

   c. What changes are seen in the form of water while it is in the area?

2. To initiate the activity:

   a. On a particular area of land, what is the total yearly input of water?

   b. What is the total yearly output of water?

   c. By what mechanisms does water enter and leave the area?

3. To continue the activity:

   a. Within the particular area, what nutrients enter and leave using the hydrologic cycle as a vehicle?

   b. What physical and biological characteristics of the system affect the amount of water and nutrients flowing through it?

   c. Is it possible to calculate a nutrient and water budget for the area of study?

4. To evaluate the student's performance consider:

   a. Although it will be unusual to have calculated a balanced watershed budget, does the student display an understanding of such a budget?

b. Did the student realize that the input minus the output equals the change in storage within the system?

c. Were the techniques and references used by the student to calculate input and output reasonable and successful?

d. Did he realize that a long term study is essential for an accurate calculation of a hydrologic or nutrient budget?

e. Was he aware of the discrepancies involved in such an activity and did he attempt to explain them?

III. Equipment

1. References of climatological and hydrological data for the area of study

2. Equipment for measurement and testing of precipitation, transpiration, evaporation, and flow which has been outlined in previous activities and which depends on the number of parameters the student chooses to study within the particular area

3. Topographic maps and long-distance measuring devices

IV. Procedures

1. Have the student delineate an area for study.

2. Have the student calculate the area of his system.

3. Have the student calculate the yearly precipitation input.

4. Have the student identify and measure other system inputs.

5. Have student identify and measure other system outputs.

6. Using extrapolation techniques and his own and reference data, if available, have the student calculate the hydrologic budget for the area.

7. Have the student collect samples of water from various inputs (e.g., precipitation) and outputs (e.g., outflow).

8. Have students chemically analyze the water quality for nutrients.

9. Using extrapolation techniques and his own and reference data, if available, have the student calculate the nutrient budget of the area.

V. Past Studies

1. Students in one study were surprised to see that the sulfate input of their precipitation was nearly equal to the output in the outflow but that most of the nitrate input of precipitation remained within the system.

2. Calculated budgets have often been "unbalanced" by as much as 50%, but students have often been stimulated by the questions of what happened to all the precipitation that fell, and why is this stream still running in such a period of drought.

VI. Limitations

1. The study will be much facilitated if the teacher encourages students to delineate small natural watersheds as their area of study.

2. Teachers may have trouble locating a watershed which is both small enough for feasible study and which has a flowing stream in it.

3. This activity is most valuable as the culminating experience in an examination of hydrology. Students are able to put as many previously learned techniques and understanding to work as they can.

4. Teachers should not forget the importance of continuing data collection in the study of this type. If this can be arranged, the activity becomes a continuing one and its value will be greatly enhanced. If this cannot be arranged, an understanding of the concepts involved is very possible, but the quality of the budget calculated will inherently be low.

VII. Bibliography

Borman, F. H., and G. E. Likens, "Nutrient Cycling," Science, 27 January 1967, 155:424-429. This is a scientific but readable account of the concepts and work which has been done in this area at Hubbard Brook Experiment Forest in New Hampshire. The study is a continuous one and the motivated student will find further references in its bibliography and in more recent publications.

Ward, R. C., Principles of Hydrology, McGraw-Hill Book Co., New York City, 1967.

Chapter 2 Human Activities

Any human activity involving water, affects the hydrologic cycle. Therefore, it is important to see how man's activities cause changes and it is important to evaluate these changes. In many cases there is a pressing need to reverse damage now being done and to correct the errors of the past. These activities show how the individual, the family, and the community affect our water resources.

Today, individuals consume and discharge water in greater quantities than ever before. However, today most people obtain a quality of water that is offered to them by a central supplier in the community. In a similar manner, their waste water is discharged into a community service system. In effect, the individual may control his supply and disposal of water only in an indirect manner. He many not wish to pollute the nearby lakes and streams but if his sewage is processed centrally he cannot prevent the polluting unless he can exert enough political or economic force to redirect the efforts of his community.

Industry has developed in the United States as an extension of the concepts which operated during the great westward movement. Pioneering and carving out an existence by overcoming and utilizing the environment are second nature to many Americans. The concept that America's resources are limitless and require no management is typified by the inaction of industry and local governments to voluntarily correct present pollution practices.

If this attitude is to be corrected, it must be realized that any decision which affects the natural environment, affects an essentially fixed resource. All of us must now accept the principle that we must pay for what we use, whether we use up this fixed water resource in our recreation, our sewage disposal, industrial production, or our consumption of electricity. That we use our environment is necessary and acceptable. However, the future must differ from the past in that we can no longer only take from our environment but must perpetually renew and reuse what we take rather than follow the old pattern of using and discarding.

The activities in this chapter are classified under three major areas of inquiry: social configurations, economic endeavors, and recreational pursuits. The economic endeavors of man are considered on several levels according to the magnitude of the enterprise. We made the following distinctions: proprietorships, small industry, specialized industry, and conglomerates. A series of activities is also included to show the relationships between these areas of human activitity and also relate them to other chapters in the guide.

Human Activities

The following general questions may serve to focus on the scope of inquiry in this chapter. Let "X" equal the particular human activity under investigation.

1. What is the influence of "X" on the nitrogen cycle in your area?

2. What is the influence of "X" on the hydrologic cycle in your area?

3. How do the economic factors of "X" influence its impact on environmental quality?

4. What is the general public's attitude toward the impact "X" has on the environment?

5. What is the legal situation pertaining to "X"? Are the laws sufficient to preserve the environment? Are the enforcement procedures adequate?

6. What are the roadblocks to the lessening of "X's" impact on the environment?

The following resources will be found useful throughout the entire section. Resources of particular interest are listed at the close of each activity.

Billings, W. D., Plants, Man and the Ecosystem, Wadsworth Publishing Co., Belmont, California, 1970.

Life Science Library, Ecology, Time, Inc., New York City, 1969.

McKee, J. E., and H. W. Wolf, Water Quality Criteria, (2nd ed.), State Water Quality Control Board, Sacramento, California, 1963.

Human Activities

A. Farming and Water Quality

I. Introduction

1. The purpose of this investigation is to involve students in a study of how farming in general and on a given farm in particular, affect water quality. In this case we are looking at the effects of agriculture on the water cycle.

2. Any secondary student who has knowledge of the nitrogen cycle should be able to succeed in at least the introductory level of this activity.

3. The activity would take at least 3 hours to complete, and could be spread over a short field trip and several class sessions. The more advanced activities would take a much longer period of time to complete.

II. Questions

1. To lead into the activity, ask students what the nitrate level is in the wells and surface waters on the farm.

2. To initiate the activity, ask students:

   a. How are these data going to be obtained?

   b. What sampling techniques are going to be used; and what are the effects of high nitrate?

3. To continue the activity, ask students: What are the factors in farming practices that might lead to nitrogen in farm water?

4. To evaluate the students' performance ask:

   a. What were the nitrate levels on various areas of the farm?

   b. What factors caused these nitrate levels?

   c. What are the effects of agriculture on the nitrogen cycle?

   d. Can we "afford" to have these effects?

Human Activity

III. Equipment

1. Introductory Level

   a. Hach or Delta kit to determine dissolved solids (can ascertain nitrate or nitrite levels)

   b. Sample bottles

2. Advanced Level

   a. Hach or Delta kit

   b. Pipettes, burets (titration equipment to do analytical techniques)

   c. Millipore apparatus to do coliform and fecal coliform counts.

   d. Plankton net and collection bottles

   e. Soil test kit

IV. Procedures

1. Introductory Level

   a. Use Hach or Delta kit to determine nitrate and nitrite levels in well water, drinking water (if different) and any surface water (ponds or streams) that are on or near farm property.

   b. Find out by asking the farmer what kind and generally how much fertilizer he has put on land.

   c. Find out if there are any feedlots or other collections of animal waste, and if so, how large they are, etc.

   d. Determine amounts of nitrogen that are in the soil.

   e. What is the relationship between nitrogen content of the soil and nitrogen content of water?

2. Advanced Level

   a. Determine the nitrite, nitrate, and ammonia levels in wells and surface waters near farm diurnally and seasonally.

b. Determine variation of flow rate of streams, etc.

c. Determine bacteriological content of abovementioned waters and how they vary.

d. Determine algal content of surface waters near or on farm.

e. What is the effect of various crops on the nitrogen cycle?

f. Does the kind of livestock being raised on the land affect the nitrogen level of the soil and watershed?

g. Is there a difference in nitrate level between the runoff water and the soil?

h. Is there any correlation between fertilizer practice and nitrogen content?

i. Does it matter when the fertilizer is applied?

j. Is there any correlation between high bacteria counts and algae content?

k. Where is the runoff from the feedlot (or manure pile) going? What effect does this have on water quality? On the nitrogen cycle?

l. Be able to ask and answer more sophisticated questions.

V. Past Studies (An Example of a Study)

A study was performed on the Swain, Connely, and Hershey farms in June of 1970. The study was performed to determine the effect of agriculture on the nitrogen cycle. The amounts and kinds of fertilizer added to the farms are listed in Table I.

Farm	Kind of Fertilizer	*Amount Added	Crop
Swain	Manure & 10-20-10	600 lbs./acre	Corn
Hershey	Manure & 15-10-10	600 lbs./acre	Corn
Connely	Manure & 15-10-10	600 lbs./acre	Corn

*The amount of fertilizer added was the commercial fertilizer added. It was impossible to determine the manure added. Mr. Swain estimated the amount of manure added was 20 tons/acre/year.

Human Activities

The Swain farm had no surface or well water. All of its water was piped in from Tilton.

The Hershey and Connely farms obtained their water from wells. Table II shows the results of tests run on the water and soil from these two farms.

Table II Hershey-Connely Farms

	Nitrate	Nitrate	Nitrogen
Surface water	22 ppm	.016 ppm	
Well water	26.4 ppm	0 ppm	
Soil			*2% Def

*2% dificiency as determined by the Sudbury soil testing kit.

It was extremely difficult to determine the effect of agriculture on the nitrogen cycles in the sites used.

Reasons:

1. Commercial fertilizers had been used for such a short period of time.

2. The total area fertilized was relatively small.

The amount of nitrogen in the water tested was relatively high.

Some problems exist in doing a study of this type on a farm with a small operation. The amounts of fertilizers being put down are so relatively small, the effect on the enviornment would in turn be very small.

If this same study were performed on a farm that fertilized hundreds of acres or had thousands of head of cattle, a greater effect on the environment could be ascertained. If the study were performed on a farm that had been using inorganic fertilizers for a long period of time the results would be different.

VI. Limitations

A friendly and cooperative farmer has to be located. Sometimes it may be difficult for an entire class to invade a farm; one can probably send the class in shifts. Clothing should be rugged and the kind that can get dirty -- one of the advantages in this kind of study is that the students are "messing" around. Parents should be aware that this is going to happen, however, so they can clothe their children accordingly.

The size of the farm will affect the kind of study undertaken. A small farm would not have the variations of practices to answer some of the questions asked. In many cases the farms of a given watershed or area would be practicing similar farming techniques so a total picture could not be undertaken.

If a choice is available, a farm that is large enough to have: a) different kinds of livestock, b) different kinds of crops (corn, clover, hay, etc.), and c) a water supply that drains the areas studied.

VII. Bibliography

1. Parameters for Detecting Pollutants with Respect to Farming

   a. American Public Health Association, Standard Methods for the Examination of Water and Wastewater, American Public Health Association, Inc., New York City, 1971.

   b. McKee, J. E., and H. W. Wolf, Water Quality Criteria, (2nd ed.), Water Quality Control Board, Sacramento, California, 1963.

2. The Hydrologic Cycle and How It May Be Affected by Farming

   a. Bruce, J. P., and R. H. Clark, Introduction to Hydrometeorology, Pergamon Press, New York City, 1966.

   b. Thomas, H. E., The Yearbook of Agriculture, 1955: Water, U. S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C., 1955.

   c. Ward, R. C., Principles of Hydrology, McGraw-Hill Book Co., New York City, 1967.

3. Advanced Readings

a. Journal, Water Pollution Control Federation (3900 Wisconsin Ave., Washington, D. C. 20016)

(1) Ames *et al*, "Phosphorus Removal," May 1970.

(2) Azad and Borchardt, "Algal Growths," November 1969, Part 2.

(3) Nemerew, "Poultry Wastes," September 1969.

Human Activities

B. Community Survey

I. Introduction

This activity is intended to arouse the students' interest in the effects of human activities on a body of water. This is done by locating sites which might be sources of pollution; collecting samples for the necessary tests; running the tests; gathering the data; and making tentative conclusions. Then, by contacting persons associated with the community, help them to understand what their water problems are. Any level high school student can complete this activity.

II. Questions

1. Lead to the activity by asking:

   a. What are the possible sources of pollution in a body of water?

   b. What is the effect of a town's sewage and other effluents on adjacent bodies of water?

2. Initiate the activity by asking students:

   a. What are the sources of sewage and other effluents and specifically where are they located?

   b. What types of tests should be utilized?

   c. What sites are to be used in the testing process and are they representative?

3. Continue the activity with these questions:

   a. Do we have enough data to reach a conclusion?

   b. How will we use our data to arouse public interest?

   c. Should letters be sent, people interviewed, information be handed out, etc.?

4. Evaluate the activity by considering:

   a. Did the students understand the testing procedure and purpose?

b. Did the students eliminate variables that could produce errors in the data?

c. Are the students aware of the implications brought about by improper sewage and other effluent disposal practices?

d. Are the students cognizant of possible approaches that can be used to initiate public concern?

III. Equipment

1. Sterile bacteria bottles (as many as needed)

2. Sterile Millipore System (media, petri dishes, etc.)

3. Sterile bottles for making dilutions

4. DO bottles for DO, IDOD, and BOD

5. Thermometer

6. Tape recorder to record conversations of interested people

IV. Procedure

1. Field work

a. Sites which could show the possible source of pollution should be chosen.

b. Bacteria samples are collected.

c. DO samples are collected and fixed immediately.

d. IDOD samples are collected and fixed in 15 minutes. This will give an indication of the immediate dissolved oxygen demand that the micro-organisms exert on the DO content of the water.

e. BOD samples are taken and placed in darkness for 5 days. At that time they should be fixed and titrated. This will show the total biochemical oxygen demand of the sample.

2. Lab work

   a. Prepare all materials for bacteriology in advance.

   b. Find the amount of both fecal and coliform bacteria using the standard Millipore method. Fecal is done as well as total coliform because it is an indicator of sewage in the water.

   c. Using the Winkler method, finish the DO and the IDOD tests. Then, 5 days later, do the BOD test.

   d. When all the tests have been completed, gather the data and tabulate.

V. Previous Studies

1. A group of students studied 6 sites near Wolfeboro, New Hampshire. Tests for total and coliform bacteria, DO, IDOD, and BOD were performed. The effects of the effluents on adjacent waters were studied. Data from the above studies were presented to a newsman and the influential persons in the community.

2. The article written by the newsman for the Granite State News follows:

Water Samples in Wolfeboro Prove
Town is Polluting its Waterways

"Last Friday one group, and again on Monday a second group from the Tilton School Pollution Program were in the Wolfeboro Area taking water samples. The two groups, participants in the nationwide program centered at the school and financed by grants from the Ford Foundation and the Department of the Interior, were primarily interested in the general effect of human activities on a body of water. They were attracted to the Wolfeboro area by the abnormally high bacteria count in Wolfeboro Bay. In addition to this concern with water pollution, the program has two additional purposes. By forcing students and teachers into a close relationship outside the classroom, it is hoped that the program will serve a teacher training function. And, the program is also to prepare a learning guide based on the activities of the groups for use in studying pollution.

"In investigating the effects of human activity on the water supply, the groups took samples at five sites selected by Albert Powers, head of the Science Department at Brewster. The first site was on Smith River above

Wolfeboro Products, up stream from where Wolfeboro might have an effect on the water supply. The second site was by the dam at the excelsior mill in Wolfeboro Falls, the third by the sewer outlet in Back Bay, the fourth by the straw oil catch where the water from behind the shopping center flows under the railroad tracks into Back Bay, the fifth, under the bridge in the center of Wolfeboro. The sites were chosen so as to reveal any change in the condition of the water as it passed through Wolfeboro and to identify where these changes took place.

SITES TESTED

"At each site, tests were made to measure the oxygen dissolved in the water and also to measure the presence of bacteria in the water. Each group performed these tests at the sites with the Monday group acting as a check on the Friday group. The dissolved oxygen test measures the amount of oxygen in the water at the time of the test. From this, it is possible to determine what forms of life the water will support. Trout, for example, need a high amount of dissolved oxygen in order to survive.

"A second test, the immediate dissolved oxygen demand, measures how much of the oxygen is being used. If the amount being used is equal to the amount in the water then problems result because there is none left either for fish or organic breakdown.

"A third test performed measures the biochemical oxygen demand or, in other words, the amount of oxygen required by everything in the water. The absence of dissolved oxygen in addition to limiting the forms of plant and animal life also gives rise to hydrogen sulfide and methane gases. A super-saturated dissolved oxygen reading in which there is more oxygen in the water than can normally be dissolved at that specific temperature is also harmful. It appears to give rise to a higher disease rate and gill damage among fish. The tests revealed a supersaturated condition at sites two, three, and possibly four.

BACTERIA MEASURED

"Total coliform and fecal coliform counts were made to measure the bacteria present. The former indicates organic pollution such as sewage and garbage. The fecal coliform specifically measures the presence of organic matter from the intestinal tract of men and animals. Basing their conclusions on the test results and on the Recommended Use Classifications and Water Quality Standards of the New Hampshire Water Supply and Pollution Control Commission, they found that only site one was acceptable for bathing. The remaining sites would be placed in either Class C or D due to the high bacteria count. Class C is "acceptable for recreational

boating, fishing, and industrial water supply" while Class D is described as "aesthetically acceptable" and "suitable for certain industrial purposes." Evidence of recent fecal pollution was found at all sites except number one. And, a significant increase in the coliform count was found between sites one and two. This would lower the quality of water from Class B to Class C. The groups found oil and grease along with other floating solids at all sites except one. Using the Commission's standards, the remaining sites would all be classified in Class C using this criteria.

"While the two groups were quick to point out that the test results were only obtained from two sets of data performed by nonprofessionals, the similarities in the two did suggest the definite presence of a serious pollution problem. The results also gave a clear-cut, qualitative proof of the effects of human activities on a body of water. The groups noted that the State empowers local governments to set up laws regarding pollution where state laws do not apply and that any local Board of Health or any 10 or more citizens could petition the water supply and pollution control commission if a public water is being contaminated."

Roger Murray

VI. Limitations

1. Before starting, be sure that all health and safety precautions are taken.

2. Before undertaking field work, obtain permission to trespass on any private properties involved.

3. A boat or float should be used in any study involving obviously polluted waters.

4. Prepared Petri dishes must be kept cool until the time of inoculation to prevent the growth of any bacteria which might have been introduced.

5. The sample must be inoculated soon after the time of collection to prevent the growth of coliforms which might have been introduced.

6. Rigorous precautions must be taken to insure the growth of only those coliforms originating within the sample.

7. Two samples should be taken from each site as a check on the validity of the results.

8. When counting colonies, respect the potential diseases within the Petri dishes.

9. One method for testing the dissolved oxygen should be selected and carried throughout the entire study to insure uniform results.

10. It should be kept in mind that the Hach kit will not measure fractional parts of dissolved oxygen.

11. When on field studies testing for IDOD and BOD, a dark cool place should be readily accessible.

12. If there is a considerable distance between the site and the equipment, chemicals to the dissolved oxygen should be brought along to prevent aeration (i.e., a steep inclination of 10 feet).

VII. Bibliography

1. Parameters of Pollution with Respect to Human Activities

a. American Public Health Association, Standard Methods for the Examination of Water and Wastewater, American Public Health Association, Inc., New York City, 1971. This gives a complete list of reagents, procedures, and some standards for all tests used.

b. McKee, J. E., and H. W. Wolf, Water Quality Criteria, (2nd ed.), State Water Quality Control Board, Sacramento, California, 1963.

c. Needham, J. G., and P. R. Needham, A Guide to the Study of Fresh Water Biology, (5th ed.), Holden-Day, San Francisco, 1962. This guide has an excellent Algal and Macro-invertebrate Key.

d. Pelczar, Michael J., and Roger D. Reid, Microbiology, McGraw-Hill Book Co., New York City, 1965. Pages 500-512 give an excellent description of the coliform group of bacteria as indicators of possible fecal contamination. Page 513 gives a list of the effects of sewage on the environment.

e. Renn, Charles, A Study of Water Quality, La Motte Chemical Co., Chestertown, Md., 1968. An elementary study of water and how it can be altered by unnatural (i.e., "human activities") conditions.

f. Well, R., Design, Specifications Guide, Goodwin Hydrodynamics, Inc., Weirs Beach, N. H. It contains an elementary discussion of BOD.

2. Advanced Readings

a. Journal, Water Pollution Control Federation (3900 Wisconsin Ave., Washington, D. C. 20016.)

(1) Albertson and Sherwood, "Phosphate Extraction," August 1969, Part 1.

(2) Azad and Borchardt, "Algal Growth," November 1969, Part 2.

(3) Barth et al, "Phosphorus Removal," November 1969, Part 1.

(4) Burkhead and McKinney, "Activated Sludge," April 1968.

(5) Connell and Fetch, "Handling Gas Chlorine," August 1969, Part 1.

(6) Hansen et al, "Idealized Sedimentation Theory," August 1969, Part 1.

(7) Hoover and Arnoldi, "River Pollution," February 1970, Part 2.

(8) Lighthart and Oglesby, "Bacteriology of an Activated Sludge," August 1969, Part 2.

(9) Lutge, "Submerged Effluent Collections," August 1969, Part 1.

(10) McDonnell and Hall, "Benthal Oxygen Uptake," August 1969, Part 2.

(11) Mercer et al, "Ammonia Removal," February 1970, Part 2.

(12) Moore et al, "Viruses in Waste Water," February 1970, Part 2.

(13) Nebiker et al, "Sludge Dewatering Rates," August 1969, Part 2.

(14) Tchebanoglous, "Tertiary Treatment," April 1970.

(15) Thomas and Brown, "Chlorination," April 1968.

(16) Tenney et al, "Sludge Conditioning," February 1970, Part 2.

ALL of the above are very detailed, complete, biochemical studies. Very specific, very informative. The texts are for the average student but are advanced for someone who is not science-oriented.

b. Sawyer, C. N., and P. L. McCarthy, Chemistry for Sanitary Engineers, (2nd ed.), McGraw-Hill Book Co., New York City, 1967. This is very complete and deals with advanced applications for chemistry.

Human Activities

C. Drinking Water

I. Introduction

1. This activity is primarily for urban schools where field work is sometimes difficult. This activity can be done completely in the classroom and the time varies between 3 and 10 class days depending on the depth of study desired. This is suitable for students on the junior or senior high school level.

2. This activity gives the students an appreciation of their drinking water supply. This is to be done by having them discover the source of their water and how it is treated to make it pure. In the end they should realize that the water they pollute is going to be used by another community like theirs, which will also have to clean it.

II. Questions

1. To lead to activity ask: Where does our drinking water come from?

2. To initiate the activity ask:

   a. How can we find out where the water comes from?

   b. Is there a difference between the water we drink and the water at the source?

   c. How can the difference be accounted for?

3. To continue the activity ask:

   a. How is the water made fit to drink?

   b. Is there a difference between distilled water and tap water?

   c. Is tap water the same all over the city?

   d. How could a difference be accounted for?

   e. What is the cost of cleaning the water?

4. To evaluate the student's performance ask:

   a. How is our water purified?

   b. Why is it cheaper and better not to pollute the source of our drinking water?

c. Why must some cities' water supplies be so far from the city?

d. How do you think your water system can be improved? Why hasn't it been imporved?

e. How do large rainfalls affect your system?

f. How does drought affect your water system?

g. How does pollution in your water supply affect you physically and economically?

III. Equipment

1. Introductory Level

a. Untreated samples of water from the city's drinking source

b. Maps showing the city's intake water system

c. Books and movies on water purification if it is not possible to visit a plant

d. Evaporating dishes

e. Hach or Delta kit, if available

2. Advanced Level

a. Same as above

b. Millipore equipment

c. Material for building a rudimentary model purification system

IV. Procedure

1. Introductory Level

a. Trace the city's intake pipe to its source. Discuss the importance of the location. Find out if there are any industries at the source or if it is being used as a sewage dumping ground.

b. Compare water from the tap and from the source (supplied by teacher). Have students note sensual differences between the two. Have them feel, smell, and observe color differences. Do Not Have Them Taste Water.

c. Pour water samples into evaporating dish and let evaporate. Measure the difference in the amount of suspended solids.

d. Use Hach or Delta to determine chemical differences. Suggested tests: pH, chlorine, fluoride, turbidity, iron, and manganese.

e. Draw up summary of findings. This should generate discussion which leads into the next step.

f. Present information on how your water is purified.

g. Figure the cost per person for cleaning water.

2. Advanced Level

a. Same as above but in greater detail, especially for part (d).

b. Run tests for bacteria. Refer to the bibliography.

c. Visit a filtration purification plant if possible.

d. Set up your own model purfication plant.

e. Have speakers.

f. Discover the economic soundness of cleaning polluted water for drinking versus clean water.

V. Past Studies

To a certain extent some of the parts of this activity are traditional experiments. This activity was not performed in its entirety by the writers of this publication.

VI. Limitations

Even with very little it should be possible to conduct this activity. The water from the supply can be picked up by students from different areas; several gallons will be needed. Maps, free information, and assistance can be obtained from the local water board.

VII. Bibliography and Resources

1. Books

a. Fair, Gordon Gaskew, Water and Wastewater Engineering,

John Wiley and Sons, Inc., New York City, 1966. This book gives some general description of water systems in towns and cities, but is mostly a guide to the engineering of said systems.

b. Leopold, Luna, A Primer on Water, U. S. Department of the Interior, Washington, D. C., 1966. This book gives a general description of how and why town and city water systems work.

c. Microbiological Analysis of Water, Millipore Corp., Bedford, Mass. (application report A. R. *81), 1969.

d. Millipore Experiments in Microbiology, Millipore Corp., Bedford, Mass., 1969. The above two booklets describe methods of testing water quality and bacteriology counts. Millipore equipment is used.

e. Renn, Charles E., A Study of Water Quality, LaMotte Chemical Co., Chestertown, Md., 1968. This is a brief booklet discussing water quality standards, water purification, and waste water disposal.

2. Movies

a. Pure Water and Public Health, Cast Iron Pipe Research Association. This is a good description of the purification process but use only as a last resort. It is largely selling cast iron pipes. Write to 1168 Commonwealth Ave., Boston, Mass. 02134.

b. New Water For a Thirsty World, Office of Chief Engineer, Bureau of Reclamation, Code 841, Building 67, Federal Court, Denver, Col. This is a good description of the desalination process.

D. Pollution and Recovery

I. Introduction

In this activity students will become interested in seeing the effects of a town or city on a given waterway. The fieldwork is uncomplicated, consisting of sampling the water above and below the community. The most striking results will be obtained by testing above and below a town or city that has a substantial amount of industry with little, or no waste processing equipment. Two questions should be answered in this survey: what influence does industrial waste have on the over-all environment of a waterway and what is the recovery-rate of a stream as the distance from the effluent is increased? A follow-up investigation should be undertaken to study the influence of the factors as they apply to recovery rate.

II. Questions

1. Lead the activity by asking: What effect industrial waste has on the over-all quality of this water system?

2. Initiate the activity by asking:

   a. Where should your water samples be taken in this stream?

   b. Why did you choose these locations? (This should lead to a discussion as to the desirability of collecting above, immediately below, and a considerable distance below the effluent.)

   c. Which chemical tests do you feel will prove most significant for this survey?

   d. Which tests should be done at the site, and which may be brought back to the lab?

3. Continue the activity by asking:

   a. Do you notice any prominant physical or biological changes in the immediate environment?

   b. If we came back here tomorrow and collected samples, do you think there would be a considerable variance in data?

   c. What tests, other than chemical, would prove helpful in an over-all evaluation of this stream?

4. Questions such as these may help to evaluate the efforts of the students:

   a. Did the investigation hold the interest of the majority of the students?

   b. Did they seem eager to enlarge on the subject; as to which chemicals were doing the most damage to the system, where the most pollution was coming from, what action should come next?

   c. Did all, or most, of the students enter eagerly into the task of testing the samples from the three sites? (See II 2 b)

III. Equipment

1. Other than the laboratory testing kits very little is needed to carry out this investigation. The students should be encouraged to plan most of the procedures, and collect the needed field-work equipment.

2. Sample equipment might include:

   a. Collection bottles and fixing solutions for dissolved oxygen tests (Winkler Method)

   b. Collection bottles, any size, for general samples

   c. Collection bottles for bacteria; so labeled

   d. Testing kits and equipment, (i.e., Hach, Delta, or LaMotte kits, pH testing kit, pipettes and chemicals for Winkler tests for dissolved oxygen) DO meter (for comparison with Winkler test)

IV. Procedure

1. Collect water samples from 3 locations on the river; above, immediately below, and a considerable distance below the industrial waste.

2. Take a meter reading, if possible, for dissolved O_2 at each location.

3. Fix the oxygen in one bottle from each location with solutions of manganese sulfate, and alkali-iodide-azide. (For Winkler test--dissolved oxygen.)

4. Collect bacteria samples from each location.

5. Return to lab and make tests.

V. Previous Studies

1. Previous studies of this investigation have pointed out to the students which dissolved solids are most closely allied with industrial waste.

2. Some students are surprised that a stream that shows a high degree of pollution just below an effluent shows a remarkable degree of recovery over a comparatively short distance.

3. It has been noted that with most students there is a great desire to investigate the cause of each pollutant, and to work toward finding ways to eliminate the source. This investigation stimulates interest in over-all "ecotactics."

VI. Limitations

Other than the bacteria cultures, which are demanding, very few factors can hinder significant results from this investigation. Extreme accuracy is not important, as the comparison between above and below samples is very conclusive. Transportation to collection sites is the only real concern. Suitable clothing should be worn. Hands should be thoroughly cleaned after collecting heavily polluted water.

VII. Bibliography

Klein, L., River Pollution 3 Control, Butterworth & Co., London, England, 1966. It gives very complete coverage of total river pollution problems and is an advanced text.

Mackenthum, K. M., The Practice of Water Pollution Biology, Department of the Interior, Washington, D. C., 1969. This may be of some use for sampling techniques. It has little to offer over the testing kits.

McKee, J. E., and H. W. Wolf, Water Quality Criteria, State Water Quality Control Board, Sacramento, Calif., 1963. This is a very complete compilation of standards for all industrial and household uses of water. Standards for most stages are listed according to water usage.

Ruttner, F., Fundamentals of Liminology, University of Toronto Press, Toronto, Canada, 1969. Pages 56 to 104 cover all dissolved solids found in fresh water but is quite involved for the beginning student.

Human Activities

U. S. Department of the Interior, Pollution Control Administration, Biological Field Investigation Data for Water Pollution Surveys, U. S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C. This is a very fine booklet for general use on water pollution and costs only seventy cents. It has a very complete list of ecologic terminology and good chemical tables, especially on dilution.

E. Destructive Effects of Water Pollution

I. Introduction

The activity, which has a field and lab procedure, shows the effects of water pollution on concrete or any other materials. Eighth-grade students and above can relate certain human activities, causing water pollution, to the deterioration of materials stationed in the water. If a situation cannot be found where pollution is causing deterioration, this may be simulated in the lab.

II. Questions

1. To lead to the activity determine if there is a body of water in your area affected by human activities, and then inquire:

   a. Does the water have any effect on materials with which it comes in contact?

   b. What are some of the human activities in the area that would cause pollution?

2. Initiate the activity by asking:

   a. How would you determine the cause of the problem?

   b. How could you find results and interpret them?

3. Continue the activity with:

   a. Can you fit the interpretations into legislative action?

   b. How can you set up a controlled laboratory experiment to simulate the problem? (bioassay)

4. Evaluate the activity by determining:

   a. Did the students use a systematic approach to find and solve the problem?

   b. Did the students attempt to make any conclusions from the tests run?

   c. Can the student verify his observations?

III. Equipment

1. Field equipment (depends on the size of the body of water and whether it is a lake, stream, or river)

a. Dissolved solids testing equipment

b. Collecting 3 - 6 bottles of 1 liter capacity

c. Water gear (boots, boats, work clothes, bug spray)

d. Photographic equipment (optional)

e. Flow equipment (stop watch, orange, meter stick, 25 meter measuring tape)

f. Maps, data sheets

2. Bioassay materials

a. Samples of materials (cement, wood, aluminum boats, iron, steel)

b. Chemicals affecting materials (sulfurous acids, alkali, oils, synergism of chemicals)

c. Distilled water

IV. Procedure

1. Field procedure

a. Find a material that is being affected by water problems.

b. Determine factors that cause material deterioration. A few of these are: natural erosion; corrosion, industrial wastes and algae (see bibliography).

c. Collect equipment.

d. Take water samples at representative sites.

e. Test samples to see if factors determined in procedure "b" are present.

f. If possible, study the human activities along the stream to gain knowledge of effluents added to the water.

2. Lab procedure (if stream and pollution problem is not available)

a. Determine factors that cause materials to deteriorate.

b. Set up controlled experiments to show how the factors affect the materials.

c. Draw conclusions.

V. Limitations

1. Field procedure requires affected area for study.

2. Much time and transportation is needed for testing and sampling.

3. Lab experiments could also take much time. Note: The more concentrated the chemicals the quicker the results.

4. Test knowledge of the dissolved solids.

VI. Past Studies

Participants in a Water Pollution study course at Tilton School, July 1970, made a study of the Daniel Webster Memorial Bridge in Franklin, N.H., which was affected by cement corrosion. They also hoped to make an accurate report to the Franklin city officials. The corrosion could have been blamed on many factors. It could be natural; it may have been caused by chemicals dumped from industries on the side of the river; it may have been caused by dumping of snow (plus salt and sand) over the bridge onto the cement foundation, during the winter. The tests consisted of DO hydrogen sulfide, carbon dioxide, pH, alkalinity, sulfates, copper, nitrates and phosphates. They were taken at areas that would show if any chemicals were added to the river; such as above and below the entrance of possible effluents. After gathering results, interpretations were made. Research of chemicals that corrode concrete was made and compared to results. The chemicals and their effects are outlined below:

1. Corrosive factors that affect concrete:

a. Water mixed to make concrete should be suitable to drink (free from acids, alkalies, and oils).

b. Rate of flow of stream affects corrosion; density of cement is a factor in corrosion.

c. Other factors of corrosion:

(1) Creosote, cresol, phenol, and many vegetable and animal oils.

(2) Sulfates.

a. Sodium

b. Magnesium.

(3) Sulfurous acids (SO_2) over 25 ppm.

(4) CO_2 greater than 20 ppm.

(5) Water with greater than 100 ppm of carbonate hardness if water has low temperature and is constantly reviewed.

(6) Sewage in waters of low pH and high temperature favors high H_2S which oxidizes into sulfates. Synergism between CO_2 and sulfates.

2. By-products of copper electrolite industry:

   a. Copper smelting,

   b. Waste heat through cooling waters,

   c. Waters with added sulfates and sulfuric acids.

3. Electroplating:

   a. Use of alkaline solutions and acids,

   b. Use of demineralized water for rinsing.

4. Tanning:

   a. Needs low concentrations of free CO_2,

   b. Needs low concentration of bicarbonate.

VII. Bibliography

McKee, J. E., and H. W. Wolf, Water Quality Criteria, State Water Quality Control Board, Sacramento, Calif., 1963. "Quality Criteria for the Major Beneficial Uses of Water," pages 88 to 96, discuss concrete corrosion. Also in this same chapter, there are explanations of industries that could dump effluents that are destructive: page 98 for the copper industry; page 99 for electroplating and metal finishing; and page 106 for the tanning industry.

F. Sewage Treatment

I. Introduction

In this activity students learn about sewage and waste treatment. The students learn how sewage is processed in their town and in neighboring communities. New laboratory techniques and equipment will be introduced which will enable students to determine the efficiency of various sewage treatment procedures and to appreciate, in a more precise way, the problems involved in an important but often neglected or unnoticed part of everyone's life. The time required may vary from two to four periods or longer depending on the difficulty of selective procedure, student interest, and time and equipment available. The activity is designed for students from 7th grade and up.

II. Questions

1. To lead the activity ask: What happens to the sewage and waste waters in your community after leaving their point of origin?

2. To initiate the activity ask:

   a. What type (primary, secondary, tertiary) or waste treatment facilities does your community have? (Consult local authorities, i.e., local health departments and sanitary engineers.)

   b. Are all types of wastes (sewage, runoff) treated in the same way?

   c. How effective is this treatment?

   d. Could it be improved? How?

3. To continue the activity ask:

   a. Are the methods of elimination of pollutants which you have encountered the most effective methods possible?

   b. If not, why not?

   c. What tests can be performed to determine the effectiveness of treatment plants?

4. To evaluate the student's performance ask:

   a. Do you consider the sewage treatment in your community adequate?

b. What can we as individuals or members of groups do to help improve sewage treatment methods?

III. Equipment

1. Introductory Level

a. Sample bottles

b. Microscope

c. Hach or Delta kit

d. Aquatic identification books for identifying micro-organisms

2. Advanced Level

a. Same as above

b. Millipore equipment or standard bacteriological materials

c. Titration equipment for Winkler, BOD

d. Materials for constructing a model treatment system

IV. Procedures

1. Introductory level

a. Using microscopes and identification books identify the organisms found in samples.

b. Using the Hach or Delta kit determine the level of nitrates in the water. Determine why this level is so important.

c. Draw diagrams of the local treatment plant.

d. Determine pH. Why is it important in processing sewage?

2. Advanced Level

a. Same as above

b. Using the Hach and Delta, determine the levels for dissolved solids you feel are important in sewage treatment based on what you have learned, in preparing for this activity and your study of the treatment plant.

c. Using Millipore filter technique, or other methods, determine the level of bacteria before and after treatment. Also determine why this level is important.

d. Determine how bacteria are used in sewage treatment. (Discussion)

e. Determine the level of DO, IDOD, BOD in water before and after treatment, and in the body of water into which the treated sewage is dumped. Discuss the significance of the results (refer to Standard Methods for technique).

f. Build a model sewage treatment plant.

V. Past Studies

1. A group of students from Quincy, Mass., found their bay to be suffering from rapid biological aging (eutrophication). Also, it was being polluted by "storm" drains from a combination storm-sewage system. They studied the advantages and disadvantages of secondary treatment, the dangers of daily chlorination, and the problems of algae.

2. Another group of students from Quincy made a study of the effects of sludge being pumped into the bay at a rate of 2 million gallons a day. They concern themselves with BOD, eutrophication and floating solids.

VI. Limitations

If there is no treatment plant in your area it will be necessary to take field trips. Movies and books may have to replace the primary learning and experience of visiting the plant. Supplemental equipment may consist of: paper chromatography; standard analytic procedures, quantitative and qualitative analyses, etc.

VII. Bibliography

1. Introduction to Sewage Treatment.

a. Pelczar, Michael J., and Roger D. Reid, Microbiology, McGraw-Hill Book Co., New York City, 1965. This is an excellent source for an outline of sewage treatment. Pages 511-522 discuss the biological and chemical characteristics of sewage and outline Primary and Secondary Treatment.

b. Renn, Charles, A Study of Water Quality, LaMotte Chemicals Co., Chestertown, Md., 1968. An elementary discussion of water quality and how it can be altered by unnatural conditions. It is presented along with good background materials and good references.

c. U. S. Department of Health, Education, and Welfare, "Municipal Sewage Treatment Process," No. 002599. This is a good film for teacher and student, leading into and initiating the activity; it is black and white and slightly outdated.

2. Parameters of Sewage

a. American Public Health Association, Standard Methods for the Examination of Water and Wastewater, American Public Health Association, Inc., New York City, 1971. This is a complete set of directions, from making reagents to performing tests. It is a good reference but is quite complicated.

b. Pelczar, Michael J. and Roger D. Reid, Microbiology, McGraw-Hill Book Co., New York City, 1965. Pages 500-504 contain an excellent discussion of the coliform group as indicators of pollution. It is very complete and can be understood by the "average" junior high student. Page 513 gives a list of the effects of sewage on the environment.

c. "A New Prospect," Environment, Vol. 12, No. 2, March 1970. This is a study of the parameters of sewage and problems of sewage on the environment. It is a good study of the effects of sewage on the environment.

3. Advanced Readings

a. Journal, Water Pollution Control Federation (3900 Wisconsin Avenue, Washington, D. C. 20016)

(1) Albertson and Sherwood, "Phosphate Extraction," August 1969, Part 1.

(2) Azad and Borchardt, "Algal Growth," November 1969, Part 2.

(3) Barth et al, "Phosphorus Removal," November 1969, Part 1.

(4) Burkhead and McKinney, "Activated Sludge," April 1968.

(5) Connell and Fetch, "Handling Gas Chlorine," August 1969, Part 1.

(6) Hansen et al, "Idealized Sedimentation Theory," August 1969, Part 1.

(7) Hoover and Arnoldi, "River Pollution," February 1970, Part 2.

(8) Lighthart and Oglesby, "Bacteriology of an Activated Sludge," August 1969, Part 2.

(9) Lutge, "Submerged Effluent Collections," August 1969, Part 1.

(10) McDonnell and Hall, "Benthal Oxygen Uptake," August 1969, Part 2.

(11) Mercer et al, "Ammonia Removal," February 1970, Part 2.

(12) Moore et al, "Viruses in Wastewater," February 1970, Part 2.

(13) Nebiker et al, "Sludge Dewatering Rates," August 1969, Part 2.

(14) Tchebanoglous, "Tertiary Treatment," April 1970.

(15) Thomas and Brown, "Chlorination," April 1968.

(16) Tenney et al, "Sludge Conditioning," February 1970, Part 2.

(17) Zablatsky and Petterson, "Anaerobic Digestion Failures," April 1968.

All are very detailed, complete, biochemical studies, not for the average student or someone who is not science-oriented.

b. Sawyer, C. N., and P. L. McCarthy, Chemistry for Sanitary Engineers, (2nd ed.), McGraw-Hill, New York City, 1967.

G. Biochemical Oxygen Demand In Sewage

I. Introduction

The BOD test, Biochemical Oxygen Demand, is designed to determine the amount of oxygen bacteria required to break down sewage. There are 3 factors in the breakdown of sewage which require oxygen: (a) carbonaceous organic material usable as a food by aerobic organisms; (b) oxidizable nitrogen and organic nitrogen compounds which serve as food for specific bacteria, and (c) certain chemical reducing compounds which will react with molecularly dissolved oxygen. There is an incubation period of 5 days in which the 3 factors above are given time to use oxygen. Therefore, for one to incorporate this activity into the classroom, one must make time for collection of samples, seeding, and after incubation, the BOD test. The activity may be designed to fit almost any age group. It is a good activity with which to teach lab techniques for 10th graders and older students.

II. Questions

1. To lead to the activity ask:

   a. What causes the breakdown of wastes?

   b. What must be present for this breakdown to occur?

   c. Would it be possible that there may not be enough of this substance to complete this breakdown of the waste?

2. To initiate the activity ask: How shall we test for this substance and find out if a BOD exists?

3. To continue the activity tell the students the procedure for the BOD test and let them continue with testing of sites of their own choice. Because of the complexity of this procedure, the teacher must answer the students' questions directly.

4. To evaluate the students' actions observe who participates, how much work each individual does, and how well they do the work. Also watch the organization the students build up on their own.

III. Equipment

1. 500 ml. sample bottles

2. 300 ml. sample bottles

3. Some standard method of determining DO

4. Pipettes

5. Graduated cylinders

6. Beakers

7. Heavy brown paper

8. Tape and marking pencil

IV. Procedure

The procedure given here is very sketchy. For more detail, refer to Standard Methods.

1. Prepare organic-free dilution water. Distilled water may be used.

2. Determine the DO content of the dilution water.

3. Determine the DO content of the waste water to be tested.

4. Make several dilutions of the prepared sample so as to obtain the required depletions. The following dilutions are suggested: 99.9 to 99.0% for strong trade wastes, 99 to 95% for raw and settled sewage, 75 to 95% for oxidized effluents, and 75% to no dilution for polluted river waters. The dilution of the samples is called seeding. For example, a 95% dilution indicates 5 ml. of sample plus 95% sterilized distilled water.

5. Put an airtight seal on the bottles and store in a dark place for 5 days at a temperature of 68 degrees F (20 degrees C).

6. During the incubation period, calculate the initial DO content of the incubated sample. Below is the equation for calculating the initial DO, (d) content of the incubated sample.

$$\left(\frac{x}{y}\right) X (d) = \text{ppm} \qquad \text{DO contributed by waste water}$$

x is the amount of the sample used to make up the incubated sample.

y is the total volume of the incubated sample.

d is the DO content of the waste water.

$$\left(\frac{z}{y}\right)X(D) = \frac{\text{ppm}}{\text{ppm}} \quad \begin{array}{l}\text{DO contributed by dilution water}\\ \text{DO Total DO initially}\end{array}$$

z is the amount of dilution water used in the incubated sample.

D is the DO content of the dilution water.

7. After 5 days, determine the DO content of the waste water-dilution mixture.

8. On the basis of oxygen depletion and the relative proportions of waste water and dilution water, calculate the oxygen demand of the organic material in the waste water.

$$\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)X(I - H) = \text{ppm of oxygen demand or BOD}$$

I is the total DO initially.

H is the DO of the sample after incubation.

V. Limitations

The greatest limitation of the BOD test for classroom application, is the fact that the procedure runs into much technicality. However, with some modification, the test may be fitted to younger age groups. It would be wise to be well-informed before proceeding. One must also have fairly reliable equipment in order to procure accurate data. At least a half a day should be allotted for completing the sample collecting and preliminary testing before incubation.

VI. Past Studies

1. A group of students concerned themselves with setting parameters of sewage influent-effluent flow, concentrating on the ability of secondary treatment to remove oxygen-demanding materials from sludge.

2. A team of students attempted to isolate the three classes (Standard Methods) of oxygen-demanding materials.

VII. Bibliography

1. Introductory Literature

a. Pelczar, Michael J., and Roger D. Reid, Microbiology, McGraw-Hill Book Co., New York City, 1965. It gives an excellent operational definition of BOD on page 512.

b. Wells, R., Design, Specifications Guide, Goodwin Hydrodynamics, Weirs Beach, N. H. This is a good elementary procedure for preparing and performing BOD.

2. Advanced Reading

American Public Health Association, Standard Methods for the Examination of Water and Wastewater, American Public Health Association, Inc., New York City, 1971. This gives complete information on seed dilution factors, etc. This is not a good reference for the average student.

H. Effect of Oil on Aquatic Life in Recreational Waters

I. Introduction

The Water Quality Act of 1965 states the following: "Standards of quality.....shall be such as to protect the public health or welfare, enhance the quality of water and serve the purpose of this act." Included among substances banned from recreational waters are floating debris, oil, scum, and other matter. This study regards fuel oil discharged by small craft on recreational waters as hazardous. Concentrations higher than 50 gal. per $mi.^2$ may coat the bodies of bathers causing skin irritation. This oil sometimes blocks sunlight, thus preventing photosynthesis in aquatic plants at the bottom of the body of water. It can also stick to the gills of fish and interfere with their respiration. It may also coat the bottom of the body of water, endangering spawning areas. 9th graders and above may do this activity.

II. Questions

1. To lead to the activity ask:

   a. How does oil on the surface of recreational waters affect aquatic life?

   b. How could a student test the effect of fuel oil on a certain type of aquatic life?

   c. In testing to find this effect, which would be more advisable to use, plants or animals?

   d. How would you collect the living specimens that you would like to use?

   e. What do you think that you would need to perform this experiment?

2. To determine the quantitative relationship of oil concentration to the surface color, ask:

   a. What is an oil slick?

   b. At what concentration of oil does the slick become visible?

   c. At what concentration is an oil slick seen as a silvery sheen on the surface of the water?

   d. At what concentration of oil are bright bands of color visible?

3. To evaluate this experiment ask:

   a. Why did you use a control during the experiment?

   b. Was timing accurate during this work?

   c. Were all of the organisms used during this project of the same species, size, etc., and do you think that any variations in these could have changed the effects of this experiment?

III. Equipment

1. Net
2. Container in which to place organisms that are caught
3. Tank in lab to keep organisms in water from natural habitat
4. Beakers
5. Graduated cylinders
6. Pipettes
7. Watch with a good second hand
8. Oil (inexpensive)

IV. Procedure

1. Make field trips to observe oil on lakes and streams.
2. Complete the following to see the effect on fish.

   a. Add 10 ml. water to beaker #1, 50 ml. to #2, 100 ml. to #3, 150 ml. to #4, and 150 ml. to #5 (control).

   b. Add 3 ml. of fuel oil to each beaker except control.

   c. Note time of addition of oil and time of death of fish.

   d. Record data carefully.

V. Previous Studies

1. Chipman and Galtsoff (1949) showed that low concentrations of oil are toxic to fresh-water fish.
2. Pickering and Henderson (1956) made toxicity studies of oil on minnows.

VI. Limitations

1. Be sure to have a small fish net because it is difficult to remove a small fish from the tank.

2. Make sure that the smallest amount of water (in this case, 10 ml.) is enough to support the size fish you are using.

VII. Bibliography

1. FWPCA, Report of the Committee on Water Quality Criteria, U. S. Department of the Interior, April 1, 1968. We found references to previous studies made on this topic.

2. FWPCA, Water Quality Studies: Clean Water, Training Manual, U. S. Department of the Interior, October 1969. It contains good references to the effect of oil on the surface of water.

3. McKee, Jack E., and Howard W. Wolf (eds.), Water Quality Criteria, State Water Quality Control Board, Calif., 1963. This book contains good references to fuel oil.

I. The Effects of Damming or Impounding Water

I. Introduction

This investigation was devised to determine the long-range effects a dam has on river and the difference in the present-day condition of the river above and below the dam. 8th graders and older students with a background in the various water pollution tests may complete this activity.

II. Questions

1. Lead to the activity by asking:

   a. What biotic and abiotic factors are involved in a stream's equilibrium?

   b. How would a dam interfere with these factors? Specifically, which factors would be altered?

2. Initiate the activity with:

   a. How would you measure the changes caused by the dam?

   b. What tests might be performed to measure such changes?

3. Continue the activity with:

   a. What are the interrelationships between abiotic and biotic factors?

   b. How would different dams effect different purposes, for example, a recreation dam as opposed to one used for flood control? Would a dam used to generate electricity by hydroelectric power produce problems different from those created by a steam-generating plant located at the dam?

4. To evaluate the activity:

   a. How did the student solve problems which arose from the physical characteristics of the site (depth of stream too great to be measured without a raft, the problems of gaining access to a dam, etc.)?

   b. What have the students found to be the advantages and disadvantages of impounding water?

   c. Has the student gained an understanding of the term "watershed"? Can he outline the watershed of this river? Can he predict the effects of an unusual condition which might occur upstream?

d. Can the student offer explanations for differences he noted up and down stream from the dam?

e. Does the student feel he has gained an understanding of the problems involved in the planning and maintenance of such a body of water?

III. Equipment

1. Hach kit, Delta-50 kit or LaMotte kit
2. Dissolved oxygen meter
3. Secchi disk for measurement of turbidity
4. Meter stick
5. Rope or chain
6. Styrofoam ball or orange
7. Watch with second hand or stop watch
8. Thermometer
9. Life raft perhaps
10. Core sampler
11. Kemmerer sampler for collection of water at great depths

IV. Procedure

1. Selection of a site

The site should be employed only after some investigation. One must determine whether or not access to the dam can be gained. The best way of locating a site may be to check the map, and then to be in touch with the personnel at the dam so that selection of site will be made easy.

2. Short range versus long range procedures

Rather than simply performing the tests once, one might perform them over a succession of days or months. In addition one might find statistics from previous studies of the area and compare these to the data one has collected.

3. Actual testing

Turbidity, dissolved oxygen, carbon dioxide, pH, and temperature may be determined above and below the dam.

Tests for rate of flow might be performed. Additional studies of settling rates of suspended particles, the contents of a core sample, and various tests of deep water samples may be carried out.

4. Correlation

Comparison graphs of biotic and abiotic factors might be made from these conclusions on the dam's effect on the abiotic and biotic factors. It is wise to be in touch with the State Health Department, for it is from them that previous data may be obtained.

V. Previous Studies

1. A group of students studied a dam and the river at sites above and below the dam. They were amazed at the effect of impounding the water on the surrounding community.

2. Another group studied a flood-control dam which was also used for recreation. It was interesting to determine whether both could be done simultaneously and still effectively.

3. A group was interested in the trees of the area surrounding the dam and suggested further study.

4. Still another group in its study, attempted to determine whether siltation occurred and what its long range effects might be.

5. In one study, students discovered that the installation of a sewage treatment plant, several miles above the dam site produced startling results in the bacteria dnd dissolved oxygen counts. (Further investigations as an outgrowth of this situation, in the classroom).

VI. Limitations

1. Short-range Study

a. Access to the desired site cannot be assured due to the abutments in the structure of a dam. Thus, the student must bring a long rope with which to suspend a bucket, thermometer, etc., to test the water. In such cases, the core and Kemmerer Samplers are helpful.

b. The Kemmerer Sampler presents many problems. A chain must be used to suspend the sampler. One must make sure this chain is straight, in order that the "messenger" can slide freely down it. In hauling up or letting down

the chain, the hands may be hurt by friction caused. To prevent this, a winch or rubber gloves should be brought along.

c. Below the dam, at your site, make sure the water is not so turbulent as to prevent access.

d. In getting rate of flow, make sure your raft is far enough removed from the generator's intake valves so that it is not affected by the undercurrent (i.e., sucked in)

e. Suggestion: If your dam is used for the production of electricity, take a tour of the plant if at all possible. It is interesting.

2. Long-range Study

a. One note may be made here and that is that water pollution surveys do not date back to before the 1940's in most cases. Because of this, the dam on which the study is performed must be relatively young.

b. Suggestion: If at all possible make a comparison between the bottom topography of the stream before and after the dam was built.

VII. Bibliography

1. Benton, A. H. and W. E. Werner, Jr., Field Biology and Ecology, McGraw-Hill Book Co., New York City, 1965.

2. Billings, W. D., Plants, Man and the Ecosystem, Wadsworth Publishing Co., Belmont, Calif., 1970.

3. Kormondy, E. J., Concepts of Ecology, Prentice Hall Biological Series, T. H., Inc., Englewood Cliffs, N. J., 1969.

4. Life Science Library, Ecology, Time, Inc., New York City, 1969.

5. Odum, E. P., Fundamentals of Ecology, (2nd ed.), W. B. Saunders Co., Philadelphia, Pa., 1971.

J. Community Water Supplies

I. Introduction

In this activity it is presumed that the student has an understanding of the amount of water needed or used by urban centers. From this point he will proceed to discover from where this water comes and what steps are taken to protect the water supply. Several other avenues are opened as possible future activities depending on the interest of the student. This activity may be carried out by 6th through 12th graders.

II. Questions

1. To lead to the activity ask:

   Where does your water come from?

2. To initiate the activity ask:

   What is the watershed of the water supply?

3. To continue the activity ask:

   (At this point several paths are opened which might be followed to advantage)

   a. What are the controls on the human activities within the watershed? What are the provisions of enforcement of these controls?

   b. If an impoundment exists, what have been the effects downstream from the dam?

   c. Has the evaporation of impounded water caused detrimental concentrations of dissolved solids? Are any impounded supplies faced with this problem?

   d. Evaluate the effectiveness of the controls placed on the watershed by comparing the water runoff with that of an equal-sized region which is not controlled.

   e. If supply is a flowing river, what controls are placed upon the upstream facilities such as cities, industries, etc. What are state controls on effluents? If the river is an interstate one, how do state controls compare?

   f. How does the seasonal variation in the river flow affect the concentration of contaminants?

g. If the supply is a deep well, try to trace the underground flow by reference to geologic factors. For instance, much of the deep water in midwestern plains states originates in the Rocky Mountains. How does this long path affect the water quality and flow?

4. To evaluate the student's performance have him describe the water sources of his urban community and give the factors which he feels are important to its preservation.

III. Procedure

1. Contact should be made with the public water supply department to obtain a map showing the water supply or supplies of the urban center. The supplies may be surface entrapment, deep well, or flowing river.

2. If the supplies come from a deep well source, a geologic map showing underground structures and sand-bearing strata would be needed. If impounded, a topographic map would be needed and the region contributing water to the impoundment would be outlined. (This assumes a knowledge of map reading.)

3. If the source is a flowing river, a topographic map of large area coverage would be required and the watershed outlined. The towns, cities, and industries in this watershed should be designated.

IV. Equipment

1. Appropriate maps

2. Contacts with state and city departments responsible for public water supply

V. Past Studies

To date, no known past studies on a secondary level have included a thorough investigation of the sources and methods of protection for a municipal water supply.

VI. Bibliography

1. McKee, J. E., and H. W. Wolf, Water Quality Criteria, (2nd ed.), State Water Quality Control Board, Sacramento, Calif., 1963. This is a good reference on the major uses of water, including domestic water supply.

2. U. S. Department of the Interior, A Primer on Water, U. S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C., 1960. This simplified pamphlet (good for 6th to 12th grade use) explains hydrology and water use, including city water systems.

K. Investigating Lead Concentrations in Automobile Exhausts

I. Introduction

In this activity lead concentrations of car exhausts will be investigated. This project is an outgrowth of water pollution investigations. It was a natural development which takes advantage of procedures common to water pollution work. One of the intentions of this activity was to make a springboard from which other types of lead concentration-investigations could be devised.

II. Questions

1. which lead to the activity:

   a. Why are large amounts of lead in the air a problem?

   b. Where does most of this lead come from?

   c. What is lead used for in gasoline?

2. which initiate the activity:

   a. Would different types of cars give off differing amounts of lead?

   b. Would the type of gasoline used determine in any way the amount of lead given off?

   c. What types of gasoline give off the most lead?

3. which continue the activity:

   How do the lead concentrations given off by automobiles compare with the amounts given off by other internal combustion powered machines (i. e., buses, trucks, motorcycles, lawnmowers)?

4. which evaluate the activity:

   a. How do the data collected in this activity compare with other studies in this area?

   b. What interfering factors and built-in errors might there be in this method of testing?

III. Equipment

1. This activity uses a hydrid Hach-Millipore procedure. Millipore air pollution equipment is used for detecting

the lead and then the Hach colorimeter is used to give quantitative results. Standard Millipore air-testing equipment including filters, number AAWGØ4700 and pads number HAWGØ4750.

2. Tetrahydroxy - p-benziquinone (THQ)

3. Isopropanol

4. Acetone

IV. Procedure

1. Make up standard solutions of lead nitrate to be used to calibrate the metering system.

2. Draw solutions through filters, solubilize these in 25 ml. of acetone and read on the colorimeter.

3. Make up indicator solution of tetrahydroxy quinone by dissolving an excess amount of tetrahydroxy - p-benziquinone in 10 ml. of isopropanol, filter, and then through this filter pour 10 ml. of distilled water to produce the workable 20 ml. solution.

4. Place 2 ml. of this solution on a pad in a Petri dish.

5. To collect sample place a filter in the sterifill system and place over the exhaust pipe. A limiting orifice should be used in the connection to the vacuum source. The sample should be collected for a standard amount of time.

6. Place the filter on the THQ-soaked pad, face up, and allow 30 seconds for the purplish color to develop.

7. After 30 seconds place the filter in a colorimeter bottle containing 25 ml. of acetone and shake vigorously to dissolve the pad.

8. Read the sample in the colorimeter on scale Number 2667 using filter Number 2408. The colorimeter should be calibrated with colorimeter bottle of pure acetone.

9. Compare to standards to get milligrams of lead per liter of exhaust.

V. Past Studies

The author developed this test from Millipore's qualitative procedure for determining the presence of lead. Lead nitrate solutions ranging from .01 to .1 grams of lead nitrate were made up. Because of a lack of time not enough were made up to make as accurate a test as would be desired. Therefore, it is hoped that participants will make their own scaling system. To do this, many standards were made up and pulled through filters and then measured in the standard way. The results were then graphed and a formula was devised to give a result. This formula is:

-0.004 x meter reading + 0.339 = lead nitrate.

However, this only gives the number of equivalent grams of lead nitrate in the whole sample. A workable number was desired. Therefore, the number gotten by the formula was multiplied by .6 which is the amount (by mass) of lead nitrate that is lead. In this study, a 14 liters-per-minute limiting orifice was used and samples were taken for one minute. The answer from above, then, would be the number of grams (or milligrams) of lead in 14 liters of exhaust. The answer was then standardized to one liter by dividing by 14. To summarize, the method of obtaining a quantitative result was to use this formula:

lead nitrate x .6/14 = mg. of lead per liter.

The tetrahydroxy - p-benziquinone is quite expensive. It was found that very little was wasted if the filtrate was reused. No noticeable loss in accuracy was observed. The indicator solution was found to go bad quite quickly, sometimes in as little as a few hours. This is the reason for mixing in such small quantities. The color produced by the lead also fades quickly.

VI. Limitations

The main limitation of this test is the questionable accuracy thereof. However, more work in this area could alleviate this problem. Other limitations are: the expense of the chemicals and equipment; the expediency with which the test must be done to preserve accuracy, and the safety factor which must be kept in mind while working near exhaust pipes.

Chapter 3 Ecological Perspectives

To understand the effects of pollution, one should study organisms and determine their relationship to the nonliving part of the environment in which they live. An ecological perspective results when these relationships are understood as they affect the quality of the abiotic environment.

Previous studies[1] indicate that a single group of organisms (with the exception of coliform bacteria) is not reliable as an indication of water quality. Only a total biotic study reveals the true quality of a body of water.

The activities presented in this section employ techniques of bacteriology, aquatic biology, chemistry, geology, physics, and engineering to delve into aquatic ecosystems. The following fundamental questions dealing with a given aquatic system outline the scope of this chapter.

1. How many kinds of organisms are present? What else is present?

2. What is the diversity index above and below an effluent on a given stream or around the shoreline of a given lake?

3. What is the relationship between any two of the following to the diversity index of a waterway:

   suspended solids
   flow
   type of bottom
   dissolved solids--phosphate, nitrate, sulfate, chloride
   iron copper
   dissolved gases--oxygen, carbon dioxide, methane
   hydrogen sulfide

4. What is the effect of varying concentrations of dissolved materials such as Cl or phosphate on the species population or diversity index of a microcosm?

5. Does the diversity index change as one goes downstream?

6. What are the species populations of an aquatic system? What is the biomass and/or energy flow in a particular system?

---

[1]U.S. Department of the Interior, Biological Field Investigative Data for Water Pollution Surveys (Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office), p.4.

7. Do the concentrations of dissolved oxygen and carbon dioxide change over a 24-hour cycle? Does the diversity index of an aquatic system change over a 12-month period?

The following resources will be found useful throughout the chapter. A bibliography is listed at the close of each activity.

American Public Health Association, Standard Methods for the Examination of Water and Wastewater, (13th ed.), American Public Health Association, Inc., New York City, 1971. This book discusses biological collection techniques, bioassays, and chemical analysis and contains good drawings of the organisms. Every school should have at least one of these.

Hedgepeth, J. W., Treatise on Marine Ecology and Paleocology, Memois 67, Geological Society of America, 1963. This is a good reference for marine studies. Chapter 4, "Obtaining Ecological Data in the Sea," is particularly useful.

Needham, J. G., and P. R. Needham, A Guide to the Study of Fresh Water Biology, Holden-Day, Inc., San Francisco, Calif., 1962. This guide contains excellent drawings of organisms and is easily carried into the field.

Usinger, R. L., Aquatic Insects of California, University of California Press, Berkeley, 1956. This can be used for most locations within the United States.

Welch, P. S., Limnological Methods, Blakiston Co., Philadelphia, Pa., 1968. This is highly recommended.

Wilhm, J. L., "Patterns of Numerical Abundance of Populations," The American Biology Teacher, March 1969, pp. 147-150. A diversity index is presented as well as other means of statistically analyzing biological data.

Ecological Perspectives

A. Aquatic System

I. Introduction

The purpose of this investigation is to involve students in studying a total aquatic system. This activity would be carried out to begin the study of Ecological Perspectives. Most of these activities would take place at the secondary level; however with proper teacher adaptation, some could be used at elementary levels. The basic and advanced levels differ mostly in the accuracy and, therefore, the expense of the equipment involved.

II. Questions

1. To lead to the activity ask:

   How many kinds of plants, animals, and microbes are present in this aquatic system?

2. Initiate the activity by posing:

   How are you going to collect these?

3. Continue the activity with:

   What are the physical characteristics of the system?

4. Evaluate the performance of the students by considering questions such as:

   a. How many species were present in the student's samples?

   b. How many did the students find?

   c. Were the samples representative?

   d. What are the pertinent physical characteristics?

   e. Did the students study them?

   f. How well did the students work (as opposed to hacking)?

   g. What seemed to interest them most?

   h. Were the students able to fit all the parts together and form an understanding of the whole system?

III. Equipment

(The Equipment and Procedure sections are suggestions only. Teachers should encourage their students to develop equipment and procedures of their own.)

1. Basic Level

   a. Several thicknesses of cloth to filer out microbes

   b. Some screen to collect bottom dwelling organisms

   c. Container for collected plants

   d. A float for estimating stream flow

   e. A can for collecting bottom sediment or gravel

   f. A microscope

2. Advanced Level

   a. A plankton net or membrane filter apparatus

   b. A Surber Sampler or Ekman Dredge (you can make your own quantitative samplers)

   c. Containers and keys for collected plants

   d. A stream flow meter or a watch with a second hand, a meter stick, and a float

   e. Core sampler, Ekman Dredge, or Kemmerer Sampler

   f. A microscope for counting cells such as Sedgwick-Rafter, Palmer, or haemocytometer

IV. Procedure

1. Basic Level

   a. Pour sample water through cloth and study residue by making wet mounts on microscope slides.

   b. Place screen in rift, then:

      (1) disturb bottom by moving stones,

      (2) remove organisms from screen and place in container,

      (3) sort out species

c. Pick representative plants from various kinds present and place them in container.

d. Estimate the time it takes for the float to go a given estimated distance, estimate width and depth, and calculate flow in cubic units per time.

e. Get a bottom sample with a can, determine particle size with screen, and observe organic matter present.

2. Advanced Level

a. Run a known volume of water through the net or filter, then determine by microscope the number of kinds present per volume of water.

b. Collect bottom sample with Surber, Ekman, or improvised collector, then determine types present per unit area.

c. Collect representatives of all plant types using quadrat, if desired, then use keys to identify plants.

d. Calculate the flow using flow meter or watch, meter stick, and float.

e. Get a bottom sample using core sampler, Kemmerer Sampler, or Ekman Dredge.

f. Determine particle size by using differential settling or by using a series of different meshed screens.

g. Do a microscopic study of particle size.

h. Determine the percent of organic matter by massing, fire treating, and remassing.

V. Previous Studies

1. Some 6th graders delighted in drawing what they saw in their microscopes. They placed their drawings on the bulletin board.

2. A 3rd grade class was extremely interested in picking macroinvertebrates from a bottom sample.

3. Second-year biology students reacted strongly to the lack of diversity in a polluted bottom sample. They had thought that pollution just happened to the water.

4. A group of freshman students thought that their flow data were wrong because flow decreased as they went downstream. They

investigated further and found out that a water supply company was taking water from the stream.

5. A freshman class found that an undiluted water sample had a zero coliform bacteria count. However, the 1:10 and 1:100 dilutions had uncountable numbers. They were challenged to find a palatable solution.

VI. Limitations

Travel and clothing sometimes present problems. Keys are difficult to use. Teachers should emphasize general species characteristics and support the efforts of students to help them make particular identifications. Use pictorial keys if possible. Keying unknown organisms down to species often requires an expert. Don't require too much precision.

VII. Bibliography

American Public Health Association, Standard Methods for the Examination of Water and Wastewater, (12th ed.), American Public Health Association, Inc., 1965, pp. 634-690. These pages provide detailed descriptions of various collecting devices, counting cells, procedures, etc.

Edmonson, W. T. (ed.), Fresh Water Biology, (2nd ed.), John Wiley and Sons, Inc., New York City, 1959, pp. 1194-1197. These pages discuss the collection of plankton, vascular plants, and macroinvertebrates.

Mackenthum, K. M., The Practice of Water Pollution Biology, U. S. Department of the Interior, Washington, D. C., 1969, pp. 55-65. This is a very general text but covers simple techniques.

Morgan, A. H., Field Book of Ponds and Streams, G. P. Putnam's Sons, New York City, 1930. This book contains very good general information on collecting and preserving. It discusses growing organisms in the laboratory.

Pennak, R. W. C., Fresh Water Invertebrates of the United States, Ronald Press Co., New York City, 1953. Pages 727-735 give a brief description of equipment and methods and mentions the kinds of organisms which can or cannot be collected. Photographs are included.

Smith, Gilbert M., The Fresh Water Algae of the United States, McGraw-Hill Book Co., New York City, 1950. Pages 27-38 provide information on collection, preservation, and methods for studying fresh water algae.

B. Stream Deterioration Due to Effluents

I. Introduction

The purpose of this experiment is to show the student the effect of an effluent upon the fauna of a specific area within an aquatic system. Because of the nature of this experiment these activities would take place at a secondary level; however, with minor modifications it could be used at an elementary level.

II. Questions

1. To lead to the activity ask:

   What is an effluent?

2. Initiate the activity by posing:

   a. How could we determine the effect of an effluent?

   b. How could you collect the data?

   c. How could you compile the data?

   d. What do the data show?

   NOTE: After the students have discussed the ways in which the data can be compiled, introduce diversity index.

3. To continue the activity ask:

   Does the effluent affect the bottom dwelling organism in a stream?

4. To evaluate the activity ask:

   a. Did the population diversity change: How?

   b. Could you observe the changes that occur without a close examination?

III. Equipment

(Teachers should encourage their students to develop equipment whenever possible. Bacteriological equipment may be used if students are interested in further study.)

1. A plankton net

2. A Surber Sampler or an Ekman Dredge

3. Containers for collected plants and animals

4. Lab equipment - microscope, white enamel pans, hand magnifying glasses

IV. Procedure

1. Select a stream containing at least one effluent.

2. Pick sites 50 meters above and below the effluent which are suitable for your equipment. If the stream is wide, take three samples at each site, one close to each bank and one in the center.

3. Place samples in separate containers, identify by number, date, and temperature of water.

4. Make a map to show where the samples were collected.

5. If time permits, sample more than one effluent site.

6. During warm weather, refrigerate samples until for study in laboratory.

7. Pour contents of each bottle into separate white enamel observation pans.

8. Begin separating, counting, and tabulating.

9. Compile data.

10. Plan your time. Class discussions are very important.

V. Previous studies

1. Some 10th grade students were amazed at the number of species contained in one-square-foot samples.

2. One member of the team spent an afternoon in working a method for feeding information into the computer to develop our diversity index.

3. The team selected a stream named Needleshop Brook. Upon arrival at the stream, we searched for and found an effluent entering the stream. Samples were taken above and below the effluent entrance. Also, samples were taken 200 yards further downstream. Indexing indicated a sharp reduction of fauna directly below the effluent and a 70% restoration of the fauna further downstream.

4. The data collected at sites along a stream are shown in Figure B-1. As the stream had effluents added (increasing site numbers), the population diversity changed.

VI. Limitations

The appropriate stream may be difficult to find within a reasonable distance from the school and in an accessible area. Clothing and footwear sometimes became a problem.

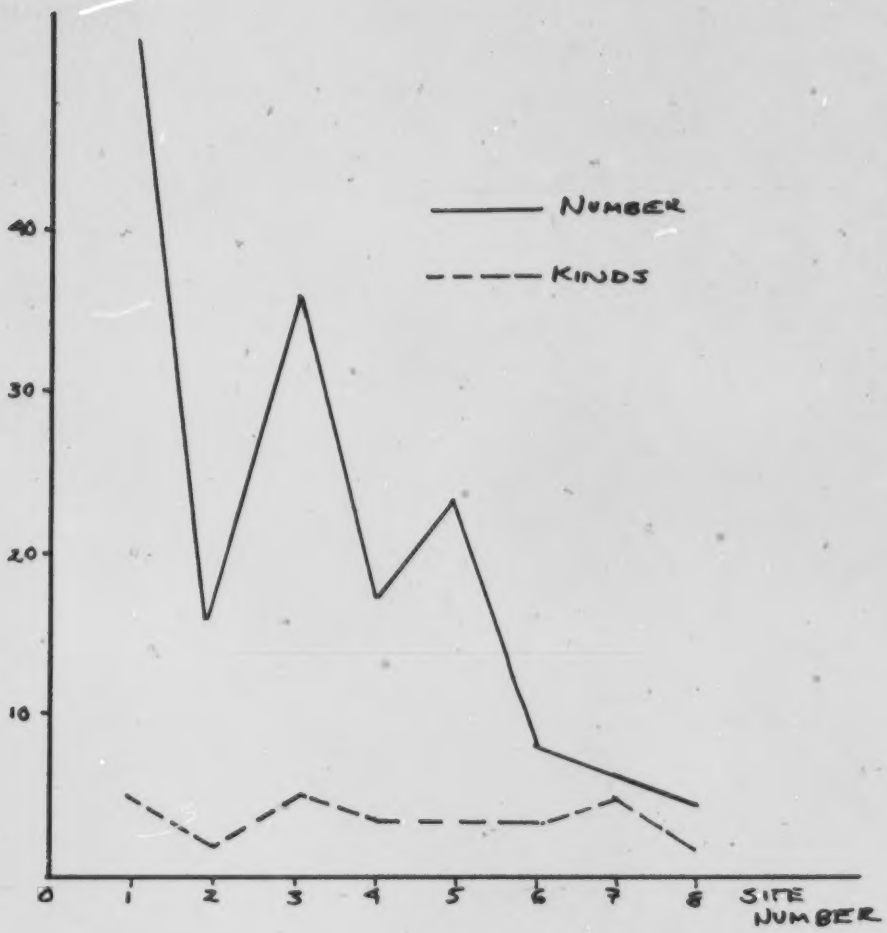


Figure B-1

VII. Bibliography

Coker, N. E., Streams, Lakes, & Ponds, Harper & Row, New York City, 1968.

Edmondson, W. T., (ed.), Fresh Water Biology, (2nd ed.), John Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York City, 1959.

Morgan, A. H., Field Bock of Ponds & Streams, G. P. Putnam's Sons, New York City, 1930.

Pennak, R. W. C., Fresh Water Invertebrates of the United States, Ronald Press Co., New York City, 1953.

C. Stream Variation

I. Introduction

This is an introductory activity for 3rd through 12th graders. The students can easily become aware of how to sample bottom organisms and how population diversity varies with water quality. A short trip to two or more sites is required, but no specialized equipment is necessary.

II. Questions

1. Lead the activity by asking:

   Does the diversity index change as one goes downstream?

2. Initiate by asking:

   How could we test for this change?

3. Continue by asking:

   a. Why does the diversity change?

   b. Does it change drastically on the downstream side of an effluent?

   c. If so, what is the source of the effluent and can it be stopped?

4. Evaluate by:

   a. Listening to the ideas brought up in class discussions.

   b. Considering how well did the students work.

   c. Reviewing what seemed to interest them the most.

   d. Checking follow-up on the experiment (i.e., What is causing the change and how could the problem be best controlled?)

III. Equipment

1. Surber sampler

2. Three or more one-gallon or equivalent bottles for each sampling site

3. Preservative for keeping the organisms

4. Suitable clothing

   a. Boots, sneakers, etc.

   b. Shorts

   c. Rubber gloves (if working in contaminated water)

IV. Procedure

1. Collect bottom sample using the Surber sampler or another suitable collecting device.

2. Determine the number of species per unit area and the diversity index.

3. Compare and plot data of the stream.

4. Report and discuss findings.

V. Past Studies

A few students found that the stream steadily became worse as they proceeded downstream. They noted with interest the ability of the stream to cleanse itself from an effluent if given time.

Students in a freshman science course linked the population diversity with other factors - bacteria and chemical data - and found a relationship among the three. They felt a great sense of accomplishment in the study and thought that it was a worthwhile project.

VI. Limitations

Due to the nature of the experiment, the whole class might not easily do one stream. If there are too many people, it might be better to break up the class into small groups to survey other streams in order to arrive at a better picture of the aquatic ecosystem in that area. An alternative is to choose many sites along a stream.

Time is also a factor; field trips are generally very time-consuming, as is the counting of the organisms. It is neither advisable, nor necessary at this stage, to ask the students to identify down to the species level.

VII. Bibliography

Morgan, A. H., Field Book of Ponds and Streams, G. P. Putnam's Sons, New York City, 1930, pp. 26-45. This gives good general information on collecting and preserving and discusses bioassays.

Pennak, R. W. C., Fresh Water Invertebrate of the United States, Ronald Press Co., New York City, 1953, pp. 727-735. This gives a brief description of equipment and of methods and mentions the kinds of organisms which can or cannot be collected. It is illustrated.

D. Diurnal Study

I. Introduction

This diurnal activity deals with the study of the changes in carbon dioxide and dissolved oxygen in water over a 24-hour period by testing at regular intervals. Since the study takes place over a long (24 hours) period of time, students must arrange for rest between measurements or teams must be used. The investigation should convey both the biotic processes involved in the production of carbon dioxide and oxygen and provide a situation in which the student can independently perform a scientific experiment. To accomplish this, the following objectives should be kept in mind:

1. Promote creative thinking toward the solution of a proposed problem.

2. Motivate the student into collecting data to support his program for solving the problem.

3. Encourage the pursuit of the biotic processes involved in production of the dissolved gases and their interrelationship with each other and the abiotic factors affecting them.

II. Questions

1. Lead to the activity by asking:

   a. Is the concentration of dissolved gases in a body of water always the same?

   b. Are carbon dioxide and oxygen present in the same concentrations in a given body of water?

   c. Are the concentrations of oxygen and carbon dioxide constant in a 24-hour period or over a long period of time?

2. Initiate the activity by asking how you might determine whether the concentrations of these gases vary?

3. Continue the activity by asking:

   a. What factors may affect the concentrations of the gases?

   b. What effects on organisms are seen?

   c. How does the varying concentration of gases available to organisms affect the entire community?

4. Evaluate the performance of the students by considering questions such as:

   a. Did the students use more than one method for the determination of concentrations of gases?

   b. Could the student offer possible explanations, reasons for his results?

   c. Did students pursue a study of the physical factors affecting concentrations? How did they consider?

   d. Did the student consider the effects of gases on organisms?

   e. Did he make a study of these effects?

   f. Did he consider the effects on a community of organisms?

   g. Did he consider the effect of oxygen on food production or the revierse?

   h. Did he pursue these possibilities?

   i. How well did the students work?

   j. Were they able to relate data and for an understanding of the whole system?

   k. Did they go on to consider the seasonal effects on gas concentration and what the results of such changes might be?

   l. Does the student consider the possibility of making a general statement about the possibility of oxygen and carbon dioxide being limiting factors in an aquatic environment?

III. Equipment

1. General Equipment

   a. Table for testing equipment

   b. Chairs

   c. Camping equipment, perhaps blankets, sleeping bags

d. Large flashlights

e. Alarm clock

f. Food and drink

g. Pencils and paper for recording data

h. Insect repellent

i. First aid kit

j. Sponge and paper towels

k. Masking tape for labelling

2. Equipment for dissolved oxygen determination

a. Dissolved oxygen meter

b. Winkler method equipment (have instructions available)

(1) Manganous sulfate

(2) Alkali-iodide-azide solution

(3) Sulfuric acid

(4) Sodium thiosulfate solution (.0375 N)

(5) Starch solution

(6) Distilled water

(7) Collection bottles with ground glass stoppers

(8) Graduated cylinder

(9) Burettes and stands

(10) Pipettes (2 ml. or 5 ml. calibrated in ml.)

(11) Beakers: 125 ml., 250 ml.

(12) Funnels for filling burettes

c. Hach, Delta, or LaMotte kit

3. Equipment for carbon dioxide determination

   a. Collection bottles

   b. Hach, Delta, or LaMotte kits or alternative procedure

IV. Procedure

1. Oxygen Determination

   a. Dissolved oxygen meter

      (1) Place probe in water by casting without allowing probe to hit the bottom.

      (2) Check battery, calibrate instrument, and make temperature reading.

      (3) After setting temperature gauge, make oxygen reading and record data.

or,

   b. Follow procedures on dissolved oxygen procedure sheet (Appendix 1) for Winkler test, keeping the following precautions in mind:

      (1) Be careful to use the proper pipettes for different chemicals. Marking pipettes in order to distinguish them will help.

      (2) Use care in labelling so that chemicals are not confused.

      (3) Use extreme caution in handling sulfuric acid and alkali-iodide-azide solution. Pipette with CARE. If either is spilled, flush the area with water.

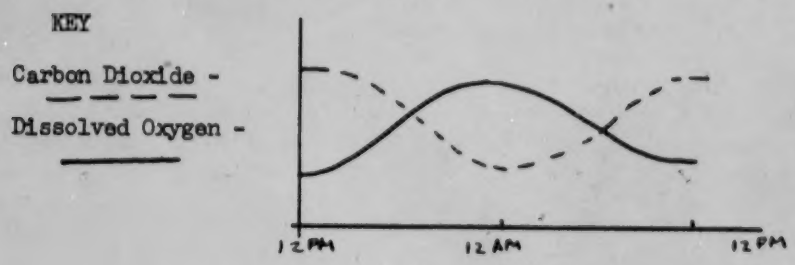
2. Carbon Dioxide

   a. A collection bottle should be placed upstream in the water, and it should be filled carefully with no splashing. As in Winkler, capping of the bottle should be done under water.

   b. Use kit procedure to determine concentration.

V. Past Studies

1. Participants in the Summer School Project at University School on a 9th and 8th grade level did a 24-hour study taking tests at 2-hour intervals and established an oxygen and carbon dioxide curve corresponding to the cycle.



2. Students on a junior high level participated in a 24-hour study taking the carbon dioxide and oxygen counts every 6 hours. When they found a sharp drop in the dissolved oxygen at 6 p.m., they explained it by noting the dense cloud cover that had formed since their last reading.

3. Juniors in high school conducted a 24-hour study during the fall and after noticing that the dissolved oxygen did not increase considerably from night to mid-day, they concluded it was due to the leaves which had fallen and blocked the sun's rays.

4. A group from a summer water pollution program did a 24-hour study of a local lake and noted that the carbon dioxide curve was highly irregular. They later realized that the lighting affected the test results by giving the samples a yellowish tint thus making the color readings in the test inaccurate.

5. In 1961 at Webster Lake near Tilton, N. H., a group of summer trainees recorded the following study:

   a. Selection of a site was made after consideration of factors including accessibility of the site and problems concerned with setting up and use of the equipment.

   b. The equipment was set up inside the Webster Lodge. At 24-hour intervals the tests for carbon dioxide and dissolved oxygen were conducted. Two water samples were

obtained by filling ground glass collection bottles with water from the site, taking care to fill the dissolved oxygen bottle completely, thus preventing aeration from within the bottle. At this time, the dissolved oxygen reading and temperature of the water were taken with the Dissolved Oxygen Meter. The purpose of taking two dissolved oxygen tests was to make a comparison between methods. However, the Winkler-Azide Method failed to give reasonable results probably due to a fault in the reagents.

c. Once inside the Lodge, the carbon dioxide test was run using the Hach Kit Method. After each test, the bottles were flushed with distilled water. (Sterility is not required in testing for dissolved gasses.)

d. As part of the observations, general weather conditions are noted along with the data.

Time	Temp °C	O_2 (ppm)	CO_2 (ppm)	Remarks: (light, air temp., wind level)
10:15 pm	19	3	8	Dark, warm, and still
12:15 am	19	4	6	Water disturbed due to human activity Dark, cold, and still
2:15 am	18	3	8	Same as 12:15 am
4:15 am	17	5.2	8	Cold, still, lighter
6:45 am	17	7.5	6	Same as 4:15 am
9:15 am	19	8	4	Water disturbed due to human activity
11:00 am	20	7.5	4	Water disturbed due to human activity Light, warm, still
1:00 pm	21	6.5	4	Same as 11 am
3:00 pm	21.5	7.5	4	Water disturbed due to human activity Light, hot, windy
5:00 pm	23	6.5	4	Same as 3 pm
7:00 pm	22	8	6	Water disturbed due to human activity Dark, still, warm

e. Dissolved oxygen and carbon dioxide concentration change as a result of animal and plant respiration and photosynthesis. It may be that the dissolved oxygen was low during the first testing time because the day had been an overcast one and, perhaps, less dissolved oxygen had been formed by the photosynthesizing plants.

   Dissolved oxygen concentrations are inversely proportional to temperature change. For example, between 5 p.m. and 7 p.m. there was a decrease in temperature accompanied by an increase in dissolved oxygen.

f. Dissolved carbon dioxide and oxygen vary in concentration within a 24-hour period due to a variety of physical characteristics which change as the day progresses. It would be interesting to determine whether this fluctuation in gas concentrations might produce noticeable effects in the biotic community of the lake.

VI. Limitations

1. Make sure the equipment is complete to prevent the necessity of returning to the lab.

2. Plan your equipment with the physical characteristics of your site in mind (i.e., mosquitoes).

3. Obtain some method of lighting other than lights that must be held (i.e., a lantern).

4. Location:

   a. Have easy access to your site. Problem locations would be:

      (1) forest with dense undergrowth

      (2) steep banks

      (3) water which drops off quickly at the banks

   b. Locate your site and set up equipment before dark.

5. Surviving the night:

   a. Proper clothing, a change of clothes and a sleeping bag are needed to insure the semicomfort of the participants.

b. Quick energy food is needed.

c. In most cases, insect repellent is a must.

VII. Bibliography

Benton, A. H., Field Biology and Ecology, (2nd ed.), McGraw-Hill Book Co., New York City, 1965.

Billings, W. D., Plant, Man and the Ecosystem, (2nd ed.) Wadsworth Publishing Co., Belmont, Calif., 1970.

Buchsbaum, Ralph, Basic Ecology, Boxwood Press, Pittsburgh, Pa., 1957.

Kormondy, Edward J., Concepts of Ecology, Prentice Hall Biological Series, T. H. Inc., Englewood Cliffs, N. J., 1969.

Life Science Series, Ecology, Time, Inc., New York City, 1969.

Odum, Eugene P., Fundamentals of Ecology, (2nd ed.), W. B. Saunders Co., Philadelphia, Pa., 1971.

E. Population Diversity Index

I. Introduction

This activity enables the student to determine the species population of macroinvertebrates in a stream. The student may also determine by investigation if the diversity index changes as one samples at random sites downstream. The activity will acquaint students with macroscopic sampling techniques and will, hopefully, provide them with results that will initiate other kinds of water quality tests and activities. Seventh graders and above may do this activity.

II. Questions

1. To lead to the activity:

   a. How many kinds and numbers of macroinvertebrates are in the stream?

   b. Do you think this diversity index should change as you go downstream?

2. Initiate the activity with: Where are they found and how can they be collected?

3. Continue with: If there is a change in the diversity index, how can you account for it?

4. Evaluate the students by asking:

   a. How many species were present in the students'samples?

   b. Were the samples representative?

   c. Given the change in the diversity index, did the students account for this change?

   d. Were the students interested in the activity?

   e. Did any of the students want to pursue the activity to a greater depth?

III. Equipment

1. Basic Introductory Level

   a. Hip boots, screen, (for bottom dwelling organisms - close mesh), or cloth (i.e., nylon)

b. Collecting jars with preservative, if it is being used; shallow pan; and forceps

c. Pan with white background

2. More Advanced Level

a. Surber sampler (for other samplers see Standard Methods pp. 673-83)

b. Can to rinse attached invertebrates to bottom of net; collecting jars; shallow pan; forceps

c. Pan with white background; key to identify invertebrates

d. Dissecting scope to facilitate identification

IV. Procedure

Choose several sites randomly spaced along the stream. At each site take three samples such that the area is well covered. Water should not be too deep or too shallow and fast running. Avoid large rocks; find gravelly bottom with hand-size stones or little larger. Try to make each sample site the same type of bottom and same area.

1. For Basic Level

a. Place screen, so that it will trap macroinvertebrates that have been loosened from upstream, at the chosen sites. Disturb bottom by moving stones above screen.
Note: Area should be constant for all sampling done. It may be desirable for students to wear boots.

b. Remove organisms from screen and place in a suitable container.

c. In the lab, place the specimens in pan with white background; separate them as to kinds and number. (This will determine species population.)

d. Assign letters to the specimens, each specimen having a letter, with specimens in each group having consecutive numbers. For example, if there are 37 worm-like specimens with black heads, these might be in Group A and have numbers 1 through 37; 14 snails of one type might be Group B and have numbers 38 through 51, and so on.

e. Randomly select (by putting numbers in a hat and pulling them out, for example) numbers 1 to 200 and list them.

f. Determine the number of "runs" (the numbers of continuous series of similar organisms). If the numbered specimen is in the same group as the one immediately preceding, it is part of the same run; if not, a new run is started (it does not matter that the specimen is part of a run three or four runs back; we are concerned only with the specimens immediately following one another). For example, take the following list, with groups assigned. Suppose, that the first number chosen is number 10. Number 10 organism is from Group A. This will begin run number 1. Organism number 3, chosen next is of the same Group A and is therefore also included in run number 1. However, the next organism, number 6, is of Group D. Hence, a new run, number 2, has begun. The remainder of the runs are formed in a similar way.

Organism number	Group	Run
10	A	1
3	A	
6	D	2
7	B	3
2	A	4
5	C	5
4	C	
9	B	6
8	B	
1	A	7

These are a total of 7 runs in the 10 spcimens listed.

g. The total number runs reported both as total no./200 specimens and as a Diversity Index.

$$D.I. = \frac{\text{number of runs}}{\text{number of specimens}}$$

2. For Advanced Level

a. Place Surber sampler in water at chosen sampling site. Pick up stones and remove organisms so that they will

136

flow into the collecting net. Note: Be sure to collect all possible organisms in the square foot area.

b. Remove sampler from water and transfer organisms to collecting bottles. Note: It may facilitate transferring organisms if the organisms are first placed in a shallow pan and then in the collecting jars.

c. In the lab, place the specimens in pan with white background; differentiate them as to kind and total numbers of each kind.

d. If the students are interested, they should identify the organisms they have collected with the aid of a dissection scope and a key. (This would be for advanced students and would be useful to relate organisms being found at different sites on the stream.)

e. To determine the diversity, one divides the number of types by the square root of the total numbers of individuals for all samples taken at each site.

$$D = \frac{S \quad (\text{\# of Species})}{\sqrt{n} \quad (\text{total \# of individuals})}$$

For further interpretation of data consult The American Biology Teacher, "Patterns of Numerical Abundance of Animal Population," by Jerry Wilhm, Vol. 31, No. 3, pp. 147-150, March 1969.

V. Previous Studies

1. A freshman class sampled 22 different locations on a watershed, collected and massed the macroinvertebrates.

2. A 2nd-year biology class used this method to determine species diversity.

3. A field study of this type was used by sophomores, to illustrate the numerical abundance of a population of grasses on a lawn.

VI. Limitations

Ample time should be provided for collecting samples. Sites should be well planned before class activity. Since this activity will probably take longer than one setting, specimens may be kept in preservatives until time allowed; however, it is best to work with live samples (they can be kept up to 4 days by refrigeration).

Time is required in transferring the specimens from net to jar (they tend to cling to the net). Often there is a feeling of inadequacy and a consequential fear to try this activity. If many samples are obtained, they should be clearly labeled to avoid mixing; keys are often difficult to apply.

VII. Bibliography

American Public Health Association, Standard Methods For the Examination of Water and Wastewater, (12th ed.), New York City, 1965. This gives a complete listing of all bottom fauna sampling methods and how to use them, pp. 673-682.

Mackenthum, K. M., The Practice of Water Pollution Biology, Department of the Interior, Washington, D. C., 1969. It gives a semi-complete listing, but for more information on sampling methods see Standard Methods.

Morgan, A. H., Field Book of Ponds and Streams, G. P. Putnam's Sons, New York City, 1930. Both of these books are good if you are looking up the genus species of your specimens.

Pennak, R. W. C., Fresh Water Invertebrates of the United States, Ronald Press Co., New York City, 1953.

The American Biology Teacher, Vol. 31, No. 3, March 1969.

F. Bioassay

I. Introduction

In order to determine the effect of harmful dissolved solids on a microcosm, the minimum lethal dosage must be determined. This can be done by experimenting with different concentrations of dissolved solids and noticing the effect over determined periods of time. Seventh graders and up may complete this activity.

II. Questions

1. Lead into the activity by asking:

   a. How could we test the stream's fauna in relationship to abiotic factors?

   b. Are certain combinations of chemicals synergistic? If so, how could we test for this?

2. Initiate the activity with:

   a. Where could the experiment be best controlled?

   b. What type of test organisms would be best suited for our study?

3. Continue with:

   a. What do the varying "kill" times indicate?

   b. How could this (kill time) be minimized?

4. Evaluate the students by considering:

   a. Do the students "stick with it" when the control dies off first for some strange reason, yet still continue anew?

   b. Was time used wisely (as opposed to hacking)?

   c. Did the students try to do as quantitative a study as possible?

III. Equipment

Like many other experiments in the ecological perspectives group, the following materials are fairly standard. The following pieces are for a quantitative rather than a qualitative study.

1. Battery jars
2. Graduated cylinders
3. Aerators and plastic tubing
4. Test chemical
5. Test animals (fish, macroinvertebrates, plankton)
6. Nets
7. Labels and markers
8. Sample jars
9. Water from which samples are taken

IV. Procedure

1. In the lab, mark all battery jars used.
2. Prepare each jar with the liquid required. REMEMBER the control!
3. Begin to aerate the jars 30 minutes before you put in any of the test animals.
4. Collect test animals. (Be sure they are acclimatized to the lab.)

   For further precautions see the limitations section.
5. After the test animals are accustomed to the lab, transfer them to the test jars.
6. Note the time. Depending upon time limitations, you may want to check the jars every half hour or daily (obviously the half hour is more quantitative than the daily check).
7. Remove all dead fish from the jars.
8. For each jar, graph fish kill vs. time of individual deaths.
9. After 96 hours or 100% fish kill, which ever comes first, end the test.

V. Past Studies

Using the procedure above, studies have been done as to the effects of an endotoxin produced by the dying of certain blue-green algae. The algae were killed by copper sulfate at 4 ppm. The test animals were minnows. The first study did not succeed due to the use of distilled water instead of stream water. A second study was immediately undertaken using the above procedure.

Another group of students ran a toxicity test on $CuSO_4$ and found that after 3 hours a 100% fish kill occurred.

VI. Limitations

1. In doing bioassays, keep in mind some of the following factors:

   a. Temperature

   b. Oxygen

   c. Nutrients

2. As a safeguard against possible killing of the fish in the lab, try to make the water in the battery jars the same temperature as was found in the stream. Even more important is the oxygen. Remember that the fish need O_2; try to get them as quickly as possible back to the lab to the aerators. Stream water is chosen in lieu of distilled for it was discovered that the fish would die fairly quickly without the necessary nutrients, even though the O_2 and temperature were satisfactory.

3. As mentioned before, time is a very important factor in that there is a considerable amount of time taken up in catching the test organisms.

VII. Bibliography

American Public Health Association, Standard Methods for the Examination of Water and Wastewater, American Public Health Association, Inc., New York City, 1950. This gives the standard tests for CO as well as giving identification plates for some fresh water algae.

Smith, Gilbert M., The Fresh Water Algae of the United States, McGraw-Hill Book Co., New York City, 1950. This is a general text on the identification and classification of fresh water algae.

G. Plankton Growth in Relation to Light

I. Introduction

The purpose of this activity is to discover what relationship, if any, exists between the presence of light and algae growth. Students make a photometer, then use it to measure the extinction of light in a still body of water. Data from the light measurements are then compared to data on the plankton population of the water. This activity is most successfully performed by students in grades 7 to 12, and requires that the students have a basic understanding of the process of photosynthesis.

II. Questions

1. Questions leading into the activity:

   a. What do green plants need to grow?

   b. If they don't get what they need what happens to the plants?

   c. What happens if a plant can get all the water and light it can use?

   d. What happens if a plant can get all the light it needs but can't get enough water?

   e. What happens if a plant can get all the water it needs but can't get enough light?

   f. Where is a place where plants can get all the light they need, but not enough water?

   g. Where is a place where plants can get all the water they need, but no light?

2. Questions initiating the activity:

   a. In a nearby still body of water, as you go towards the bottom, do you reach a point at which there is no light or less light than at the surface?

   b. How many plants would you expect to find there (at the bottom) as compared to the number you would find at the top?

   c. How are we going to prove that there is a place in the water where there is less light?

   d. How are we going to prove that in this place where there is less light, that there is also less plant life?

3. Questions which continue the activity:

   a. Does anybody know how to snag up a lot of plants from the water at a particular depth?

   b. Does anybody know any ways to measure how much light there is in a given place?

   c. If you had a camera light meter, how could you use it under water?

   d. If you did not have a camera light meter, could you make a simple instrument to measure light under water?

   e. What else can you think of other than a light meter that would be sensitive to light?

   f. How could you arrange to have a known amount of light at a known depth so that you could measure the light the plant took in?

4. Evaluating the student's efforts:

   a. Does the student have a reasonable understanding of the way in which plant growth is dependent on light?

III. Equipment

1. Pond or other suitable body of water

2. A boat, pier, bridge, or bank which will allow students to lower samples to a depth which will demonstrate a measurable attenuation of light

3. A light sensitive device such as:

   a. Camera light meter in plastic bag or similar waterproof container and device (such as diving mask) for reading light meter under water

   b. Homemade photometer: an instrument of this sort can readily be assembled with a variable-register photocell and an ohmmeter from the school physics lab.(The photocell can be purchased for a dollar or less from a local electric supply house. It usually comes with two wires attached. If the wires are clipped to the leads of the ohmmeter, light registers directly as (milli) ohms of resistance. Plastic bags or other waterproofing can be applied as necessary, a project which can be readily completed with the assistance of a senior physics student or a general science instructor.)

4. Equipment for collecting plankton:

   a. Plankton net

   b. Homemade device such as cloth bag or pillowcase on coat hanger frame dragged through water on a string

5. Microscope for observing plankton

6. Measuring instrument for determining depth

   a. Meter stick

   b. Knotted or marked cord

7. Containers for samples

IV. Procedure

1. Select a site.

2. Measure light at depth. Readings can be taken continuously or at intervals which are convenient from the surface to the bottom or point of light extinction.

3. Collect plankton at depths corresponding to depths measured for light intensity.

4. Evaluate plankton population at each level.

5. Graph and correlate data to demonstrate relationship between ligh and plankton growth.

V. Previous Studies

In a study done by students at Peasoup Pond in Franklin, N.H., it was found that only 5% of the light striking the surface of the pond penetrated to a depth of 4 feet. Near the surface of the pond several types of green algae were present in moderate concentration; no algae was found in samples at a depth of 4 feet

VI. Limitations

The pond used for the study has to demonstrate enough attenuation of light so that there will be a measurable difference in plankton concentration from the surface to the bottom. If the water is too clear, plankton will avoid the very bright sunlight in the 1 to 2 feet of the pond, and figures could be produced that would show increasing plant growth with decrease of light. A very deep pond or lake which was stratified for temperature could show a difference in photosynthesis on opposite sides of a thermocline.

VII. Bibliography

Benton, A. H., and W. E. Werner, Field Biology and Ecology, McGraw-Hill Book Co., New York City, 1966.

Ruttner, Franz, Fundamentals of Limnology, University of Toronto Press, Toronto, Canada, 1953.

Smith, Gilbert M., Fresh Water Algae of the United States, (2nd ed.), McGraw-Hill Book Co., New York City, 1950, pp. 14-15.

H. Water Quality Comparisons by Diversity Index

I. Introduction

The purpose of this investigation is to compare the diversity index of two separate waterways; one with obvious pollution, the other apparently clear. Suitable locations may be found through observation of the site, comparing basic properties noticeable fish kills, sewer or pipe drainage entering lake, noticeable algae blooms, and odor of water and lake shore. Young students could do a fair job with sample collecting, but perhaps only high school students should attempt complicated type classification.

II. Questions

1. To lead to the activity, ask how many kinds of plants and animals are present at this location.

2. Initiate the activity by posing, how are you going to collect these specimens?

3. Continue the activity with:

   a. Does the water depth have any effect on the numbers and kinds of organisms present?

   b. Does pollution affect the total number of animal and plant samples collected?

   c. Are there any specific plant or animal groups that are affected more than the others by pollution? (This may be a benefit as well as a detriment.)

4. Evaluate the performance of the student by considering questions such as:

   a. Did the group collect a representative sample of the area?

   b. Did all students appear to be working willingly and to their capacity?

   c. What part of the investigation seemed to interest them most?

   d. Were the students able to draw adequate conclusions to satisfy the problem?

III. Equipment

(Equipment can easily be adapted to availability. Even for advanced groups sophisticated equipment is not needed.)

1. Fine mesh cloth to filter bottom samples for microbes
2. Screening to screen out larger invertebrates
3. Seines or fish nets to collect small fish or aquatic insects
4. Containers for holding plant and animal specimens
5. A small rubber boat or raft (any floating craft that will hold one person)
6. Meter stick for measuring depth of water
7. Sounding line
8. Microscope

IV. Procedure

1. Collect all varieties of plants present at a shallow depth.
2. Seine or net samples of small fish, amphibians, water insects, or other forms of animal life at shallow depths (up to one meter).
3. Screen out large invertebrates from soil samples at shallow depths with coarse screening.
4. Examine the lake bottom at shallow depths for bottom dwellers (snails, clams, mussels, etc.).
5. If the group is mature enough, repeat procedures (3 & 4) listed above, at water depths of 2 and 3 meters.
6. Bring material back to laboratory, sort as to like kinds, and classify all specimens where possible.
7. Compare collections from each site and determine the effect pollution has on organism diversity.
8. Within each waterway, determine what effect water depth has on numbers of individual specimens.

V. Previous Studies

1. A group of high school students was surprised to find that the number of mussels per square meter was greater in a polluted lake than in a nonpolluted one. This led to speculation as to how far this pollution could go before the trend was reversed.

2. In comparing lake bottoms from polluted and nonpolluted water systems, the students noted that polluted sand bottoms were covered with a layer of silt or mud; the clear lakes had much less sediment. They wondered whether the increased vegetation could have anything to do with this situation.

3. The presence of large masses of spirogyra in the shallows of a still lake became a signal to a 6th grade class that the water was polluted.

VI. Limitations

Class size may hinder effective control and accomplishment of this investigation. Transportation is always a problem. In studying water that shows pollution signs, care must be taken to protect the student from contamination. If adequate protection is not available, then the site should be ignored. Classification should be attempted according to the ability and maturity level of the class. Keying to class or order is adequate for younger groups.

VII. Bibliography

Jacques, H. E., Plant Families--How to Know Them, Wm. C. Brown Co., Dubuque, Ia., 1941. A general key is given for all plant families.

Morgan, K. M., Field Book of Ponds and Streams, G. P. Putnam's Sons, New York City, 1930. It gives helpful information on collecting and classification, and it has some helpful photographs.

Needham, J. G., and P. R. Needham, A Guide to the Study of Fresh Water Biology, Holden-Day, Inc., San Francisco, Calif., 1969.

Pennak, R. W., Fresh Water Invertebrates in the United States. The Ronalds Press Co., New York City, 1955. This is a good guide to fresh water forms most often found in common waterways of New England. Keys are quite easily followed by younger students.

Prescott, C. W., How to Know the Fresh Water Algae, Wm. C. Brown Co., Dubuque, Ia., 1964. This contains a rather comprehensive and difficult key to the algae of fresh water. The practiced student has little or no trouble finding most species.

Smith, Gilbert M., Fresh Water Algae of the United States, McGraw-Hill Book Co., New York City, 1950. It contains a complicated key to the algae which should not be used by the inexperienced student.

U. S. Department of the Interior, Biological Field Data for Water Pollution Surveys, U. S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C., 1966. This is a good book for terminology and equipment description for water sampling and could be helpful for even the very young student.

I. Algal Blooms and CO_2

I. Introduction

The purpose of this investigation was to determine the regularity properties of CO_2 in relationship with algal blooms. It might be best handled by students that have taken either biology or chemistry. This could also be handled, although maybe at a less quantitative level, by those who have not yet had such courses. The test is conducted by running CO_2 and algae counts and plotting the resulting graph between the two.

II. Questions

1. Lead the activity by asking:

   a. How do plants affect the life in a given body of water?

   b. What do the plants need for growth?

   c. What gases do plants give off?

   d. What gases are utilized by the plant in the photosynthesis process?

2. Initiate the activity with:

   a. How could we test for these gases (i.e., why test for them)?

   b. Would there be a relationship between the amounts of certain gases and the amount of algae?

3. Continue the activity with:

   a. Could these gases be controlled?

   b. Does an algal bloom control the CO_2 or the CO_2 control the bloom?

4. Evaluate the students by considering:

   a. Do we have enough data to reach a valid conclusion?

   b. Did the students understand the procedure?

   c. Did they try to refine the procedure in its rough spots?

   d. Were they inspired to take on new outgrowths?

III. Equipment

1. Basic level

a. Method for testing CO_2 (Hach, Delta, LaMotte, etc.)

b. Sample bottles

2. More advanced level

a. Same as above

b. Bioassay equipment using plankton as organisms

IV. Procedure

1. Basic Level

a. Take CO_2 test.

b. Take water samples for plankton analysis.

c. Count the plankton.

d. Graph the results: number of plankton vs. corresponding CO_2 levels.

2. More advanced level

a. Follow the preceding procedure.

b. Run a bioassay using plankton as test organisms.

c. Purpose: to create an algal bloom.

d. Introduce CO_2 into the system at different levels.

e. Keep close tabs on the pH.

f. Test for CO_2 changes.

g. Discuss the importance of a rise or fall of CO_2 in the system.

h. Graph the resulting data.

V. Past Studies

Some students while investigating the first question noticed in their study that certain data when plotted showed an interesting bell-like curve. This curve indicated a high and/or low

range at which algae might exist in bloom conditions. Time ran out before sufficient data had been collected in order to answer the last question.

Other students, for a recent lab report undertaken in a 10th grade chemistry class, studied this area. They found that there were certain limitations in running a bioassay in the lab using CO_2 as a nutrient. The lab was not a true success in that the test organisms died because of the increase of pH caused by the added CO_2. This did, however, force them into the field where they found varying concentration of CO_2 occurring, naturally. This made them ask themselves why the pH was higher in the ponds and lakes than in their bioassays. Thus, they were hot on the trail of a possible natural-existing buffer in the water.

VI. Limitations

The main limitation in the exercise lies in the advanced level of the experiment. That is, the CO_2 levels in the different jars were of such concentrations that the CO_2 in the water caused a significant drop in the pH. This is because carbonic acid is formed (when CO_2 changes to carbonic acid.) This is why it is felt that a suitable buffer was needed.

Another important limitation is that most CO_2 tests are no more than a free acidity test in that phenolphthaleine is the indicator. Therefore, if the sample that you are working a test for has a higher pH than 9, any CO_2 that is present will be masked by this alkalinity. Perhaps a possible outgrowth of this could be a chemical that would neutralize the carbonic acid in the water which then could be measured.

VII. Bibliography

American Public Health Association, Standard Methods for the Examination of Water and Wastewater, American Public Health Association, Inc., New York City, 1965. Pages 78-85 and pages 739-744 give the standard tests for CO_2 as well as giving identification plates of some fresh-water algae.

Smith, Gilbert M., The Fresh Water Algae of the United States, McGraw-Hill Book Co., New York City, 1950. This is a general text on the identification and classification of fresh water algae.

J. Bottom Core Sampling

I. Introduction

This activity is designed to acquaint high school students with bottom sampling in general and organic analysis of bottom samples in particular. Approximately three 1-hour periods will be required. The setting for the investigation should be one which will enable the student to obtain a core with relative ease as well as a core which will evidence clear layering from season to season. Generally the best locations are around bodies of water which undergo regular flooding every spring and gradual emergence during the summer months. The dark layer which will be noted usually represents the rather fine organic material that is deposited in the shallow and calm waters of the summer season while the alternating band of coarser and lighter colored gravelly material is representative of sediment which is laid down in the more turbulent waters of the springtime. It is important that students practice taking cores beforehand and develop skill in driving the core sampler and retrieving the samples. See Figure 3J-1.

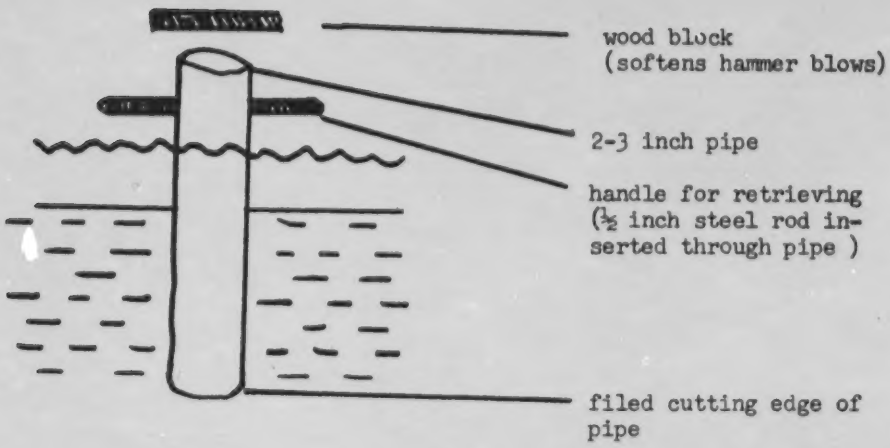


Figure 3J-1

II. Questions

1. Lead to the activity by asking:

   a. Can you think of any way to obtain a record of some of the materials which have been suspended in our streams and lakes and deposited on the bottom over the past several years?

   b. Explain.

2. Initiate the activity with:

   a. Do you feel that the amount of organic material being laid down each year in a specific body of water is related, in some way, to the amount of pollution that this area has experienced?

   b. Explain.

3. Continue the activity with:

   a. Can you think of several different ways to analyze chemical variations and interpret the ecological history which is indicated in core samples?

   b. Explain.

4. Evaluate the students' work by noting what significant differences they discovered in the different layers and by evaluating how they reconstructed the ecological history.

III. Equipment

1. Core sampler
2. Large flat cake pan or other suitable pan for placing the core to be analyzed
3. Drying oven
4. Spatula
5. Cm. scale
6. Merck burner (Bunsen burner may be used if a Merck is not available)
7. Ring stand

8. Triangle

9. Extra large crucible, size 3, (an evaporating dish may be used if a crucible is not available)

10. Cent-O-Gram balance

IV. Procedure

1. The core may be obtained and removed immediately by gently sliding it out onto a cake pan.

2. After bringing the sample to the lab select the areas for analysis. Cut sample bands of desired width (approx. 1 cm.) and place each band to be analyzed in a previously weighed crucible.

3. Dry sample at 70-80°C in an oven overnight to remove moisture. (An alternate method of drying is to line the core tube with vaseline before the sample is taken and allow the sample to dry in the tube over the weekend or for 2-3 days and then remove. The core then has less tendency to fall apart in the removal process. The outer edge in contact with the vaseline must be shaved off before analysis.)

4. Weigh each crucible and dried sample.

5. Heat sample for 45 minutes to burn off all organic material. (If the art department has a firing oven, the sample may be fired until it comes to constant weight.)

6. Cool and weigh.

7. Heat again for 15 minutes, cool, and weigh. If weights agree within ± 0.03 grams, the sample can be considered to be at constant weight. If sample is not at constant weight heat, cool, and weigh until it is.

8. Determine the weight of sample.

9. Determine percentage of organic material.

V. Past Studies

A core sample was obtained for the first site of the Winnipesaukee River. Although several cores were obtained, only one was used for analysis due to limited time. Choices of where to take samples from the core will vary from sample to sample according to mud stratification. In our sample, layers of similar given grain size

(fineness) were chosen. We used Bunsen burners for heating and glowing embers were noted in the samples up to 30 minutes after heating began. Our samples were left for 2 hours and the second heating gave constant weights. No effort was made to determine minimum heating time with Bunsen burners. Heating time would vary according to the percentage of organic material present. The following results were obtained:

Sample	Location on Core	% Organic Material
A	1st cm. from top	4.9%
B	2nd cm. from top	2.2%
C	11th cm. from top	1.5%
D	12th cm. from top	3.1%

From this one test no definite interpretations can be made. Since class investigations would be expected to produce more analyses, the significance of any patterns which might develop should be interpreted with respect to the ecological history of the area.

VI. Limitations

1. Heating to burn organic materials may require much extra time depending on percentage of organic material present and how hot a flame is available.

2. If cores are obtained with no stratification it is difficult to determine where to take samples.

Chapter 4 Social and Political Factors

A constructive approach to pollution problems requires more than a knowledge of pollution results; we also need to understand the human motives and actions that produce them, as well as comprehend the political process that we must initiate to change those results. It is difficult to define or limit the scope of the activities which appear in this section, for in a general way, virtually all human activity is either social or political.

There are several general approaches that may be taken on this subject. One of the most direct approaches to social and political factors, however, is to begin with the present, find out how we got here and where we should go from here. To find out where man is, the student must begin to relate the scientific aspects of pollution to the social and political factors. The question, "Where are we now?", must be answered as completely as possible. Our political institutions must be defined and evaluated to see what hope for solutions lies in them. Existing laws must be examined as well as procedures for enforcement. In other words, the political structure at all levels must be examined to determine what type of vehicles exist and what, in fact, is going on. This in itself is not an easy task; some of the activities which follow, such as the construction of government models, clearly demonstrate the overlaps in authority, and the ambiguous seats of responsibility which now exist among government agencies.

Next, to determine what factors allowed this situation to develop, it is beneficial to study the history of our laws and those political institutions relevant to water pollution, as well as the feelings and sense of responsibility of various individuals and companies. The history of the relevant laws can be determined through research. Most states have law libraries available to the public. Others may be found in a local courthouse, university,or even a local attorney's office. Any of these is a good place to begin.

Of particular value is the development of industrial polluters. Each business can be analyzed from many points of view. Its record of water pollution violations, obtainable from the state pollution commission or whatever body is charged with the regulation of water quality in your state, is of particular interest. A company's economic history can be determined from past annual reports and corporate histories available either from the company itself or through a local brokerage house.

The state engineers associated with water quality can be queried, and corporate executives should be questioned. They are able to relate past, present, and future policies of the corporation in terms of their responsibility to stockholders, the community in which they operate, and the natural resources they consume or destroy. Very often decisions made by management concerning natural resources are made according to narrow, inadequate economic criteria. They are often not conscious that decisions concerning the management of natural resources involves the allocation of an essentially fixed resource.

Social and Political Factors

Personal interviews are very valuable in recognizing the difficulty in reaching solutions when the problem involves particular people whose rights, prejudices, and very often, simple lack of interest, must be considered. Often games, particularly those which utilize role playing, are also helpful in further illuminating these conflicts.

In conducting these interviews, students may probe into other competing considerations for the use of our resources.

This brings the students to the last phase of investigation: "Where do we go from here?" Do we have an obligation to future generations to maintain the quality of our natural environment, and, if so, how do we go about preserving it? Model legislation activities, as well as the formation of clubs and lobbies, are helpful in focusing attention on specific problems.

This section also involves communication. Environmental problems which already exist as well as those pending must be recognized and widely discussed.

Possible alternatives must be made known before any final decisions concerning our natural resources are made. If a lobby is to be successful, it must have wide support; if model legislation is to be enacted, it, too, must have the support of citizens and legislators alike. All of this involves communication of one kind or another. Students are more than willing to undertake activities in this area and may utilize any media from video tape to statistics.

Social and Political Factors

A. How to Talk Back to Statistics

I. Introduction

This activity is designed to help students read articles on water pollution critically; it should also help them increase their general awareness. Select the articles according to the groups' reading ability and their scientific background. Do not underestimate the students' ability to follow news articles; they are very curious about news.

II. Questions

1. To lead to the activity, ask:

   Is the information you read in your article reliable?

2. To initiate the consideration of the statistics' reliability, ask:

   a. Who says so (where did the data come from)?

   b. How does he know (qualify the source)?

3. To continue refining the evaluation of the article, ask:

   a. What is missing?

   b. Did somebody change the subject?

   c. Does it make sense?

4. To evaluate the students' success, check the following:

   a. The student should formulate an opinion on the article and back up his views with several important factors.

   b. The student should be able to present the complete subject in an acceptable manner.

   c. The student should be able to demonstrate particular types of distortions or misusage of data by converting the data to a low quality advertisement or poster.

III. Equipment

Materials for writing and illustrating should be available. Copies of the article must be made or bought. If the students rework the data, serious consideration should be given to publishing their work.

IV. Procedure

1. Get an article, make copies, and assign the reading.

2. Have a class discussion where you introduce the questions.

3. Let the students do another version or let the students seek out several views on the same subject and then reapply the questions to be able to compare the articles.

V. Previous Studies

Seniors were required to subscribe to the New York Times and to read front-page articles which dealt with statistics or data. They could be counted upon to read about drugs, economics, and, in particular, water and air pollution. After reading 3-5 articles and evaluating them, the critical evaluation based on the five questions became automatic. A carryover into the evaluation of advertisements was notable. When students presented data as a result of polls they had taken, usually they did not do a superficial job. This could carry over into lab conclusions and evaluations.

VI. Limitations

Reproduction of articles for educational purposes is usually permissible. Make it a policy to acknowledge sources and, when possible, tell the author you used the material for educational purposes.

VII. Bibliography

1. Freund, John E., Modern Elementary Statistics, Prentice Hall, Inc., Englewood, N. J., 1960. This text acquaints students with the theoretical aspects of statistics. This is recommended for high school students.

2. Huff, Darrell, How to Lie With Statistics, W. W. Norton and Co., New York City, 1954. This book is a study of the use and misuse of statistics. It is written humorously and can be understood by junior high students. It is recommended for all who undertake this activity. This is available in paperback.

3. Johnson, D. A., and W. H. Glenn, The World of Statistics, Webster Publishing Co., Manchester, Mo., 1961. This is a book on the basics of statistics for junior high on up.

4. Reichman, W. J., Use and Abuse of Statistics, Oxford University Press, New York City, 1962. This is a general work on statistics designed for the high school student which covers the calculation of statistics and their use and abuse.

B. State and Local Government Organization

I. Introduction

This activity is to introduce any junior or senior high school student to state and local governmental structure. As a result, the student should know where to go in his local or state government to deal with a water pollution problem. Students will probably develop a schematic diagram to display the governmental breakdown. This activity may be done by any student above the 7th grade.

II. Questions

1. After arriving at a site of water pollution, ask the following questions to lead to the activity:

   a. Do you see anything at this site which is an indication of water pollution?

   b. What are some possible sources?

2. Initiate the activity by asking:

   a. What do you think we as a group can do to stop this?

   b. Do you know the legal restrictions concerning water pollution?

   c. Where would you find them?

3. Continue the activity with:

   a. Are you able to correlate the information you have found?

   b. How could you resolve the problem of organizing the information?

   c. Would a visual aid be more feasible for total group comprehension?

4. Questions which help the teacher evaluate the students' efforts:

   a. What initiative do the students show in responding?

   b. How do they perform as a group and as individuals?

   c. Does the schematic accomplish your objective?

III. Equipment

1. Use of school library

2. Pamphlets released by Legislative Services, Comptroller's Office, and Water Pollution Board

3. Poster board, pens, magic markers, and rulers

IV. Procedure

1. The students should be taken to one site and exposed to a particular pollution problem. The local area should be scanned beforehand for various pollution offenders along bodies of water. The school itself determines whether the students can find the necessary source material themselves or whether these need to be placed in the library prior to the time of the activity. Such things as proximity to state agencies and class schedules will help in determining which course of action should be taken.

2. Either through use of the library or student investigation, the students will obtain information concerning state laws and state agencies. Hopefully, their research will lead to questions dealing with the water pollution aspect. They will discover the necessity of understanding a relationship between the various state agencies in order to deal with them more effectively. At this point, the teacher may suggest a schematic diagram for student use.

3. Students may show interests in other aspects; this should be encouraged. The following areas may be used for future activities or the students may wish to work in groups on some or all of them:

   a. Relationship of federal and local agencies

   b. Operative efficiency of state commissions

   c. Reorganization plan development for a more efficient state organization

   d. State, federal, and local laws dealing with pollution

   e. Biological studies of pollution

   f. Social aspects

V. Past Studies

Students and teachers at the Tilton School Water Pollution Program made such a study during the summer of 1970. They visited the state capitol at Concord, N. H., and obtained information from the General Court Manual and from antiquated schematic diagrams. After visiting many governmental departments, they settled upon the basic agencies which could be helpful.

The students conducted interviews with the comptroller to find where the money came from and how it was spent on the state and local levels. Then they made a schematic diagram of the government organization and a second and more technical one of the water pollution department.

Presented with a hypothetical problem that involved working through the government, the students showed greater interest and ability to analyze because of their increased grasp of the governmental organization. Figures 4B-1 through 4B-3 show the results of the study by a 9th grader.

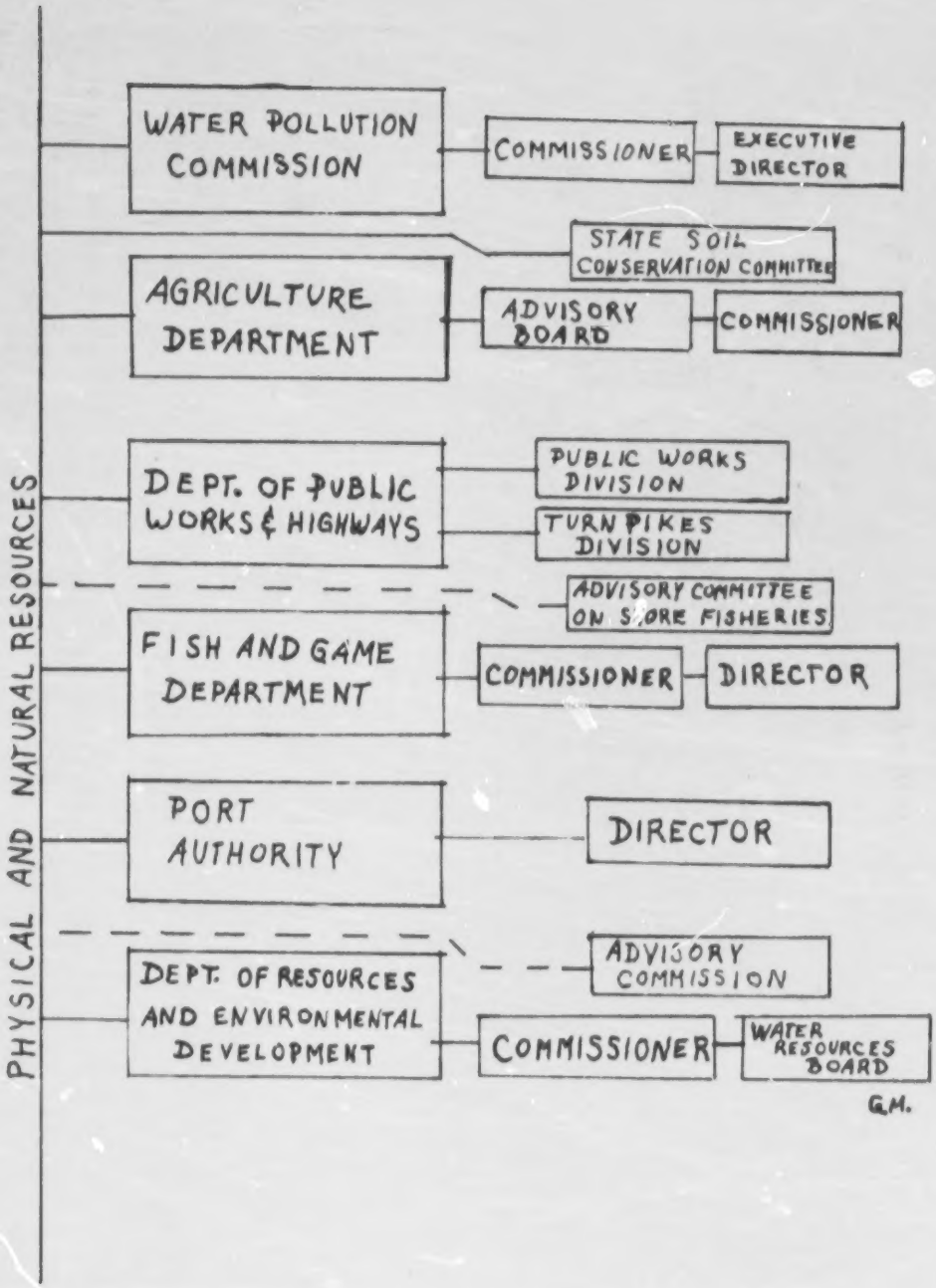

PHYSICAL AND NATURAL RESOURCES
WATER POLLUTION COMMISSION
COMMISSIONER
EXECUTIVE DIRECTOR
STATE SOIL CONSERVATION COMMITTEE
AGRICULTURE DEPARTMENT
ADVISORY BOARD
COMMISSIONER
DEPT. OF PUBLIC WORKS & HIGHWAYS
PUBLIC WORKS DIVISION
TURNPIKES DIVISION
ADVISORY COMMITTEE ON SHORE FISHERIES
FISH AND GAME DEPARTMENT
COMMISSIONER
DIRECTOR
PORT AUTHORITY
DIRECTOR
ADVISORY COMMISSION
DEPT. OF RESOURCES AND ENVIRONMENTAL DEVELOPMENT
COMMISSIONER
WATER RESOURCES BOARD
G.M.

Figure 4B-1

ADMINISTRATIVE SERVICES

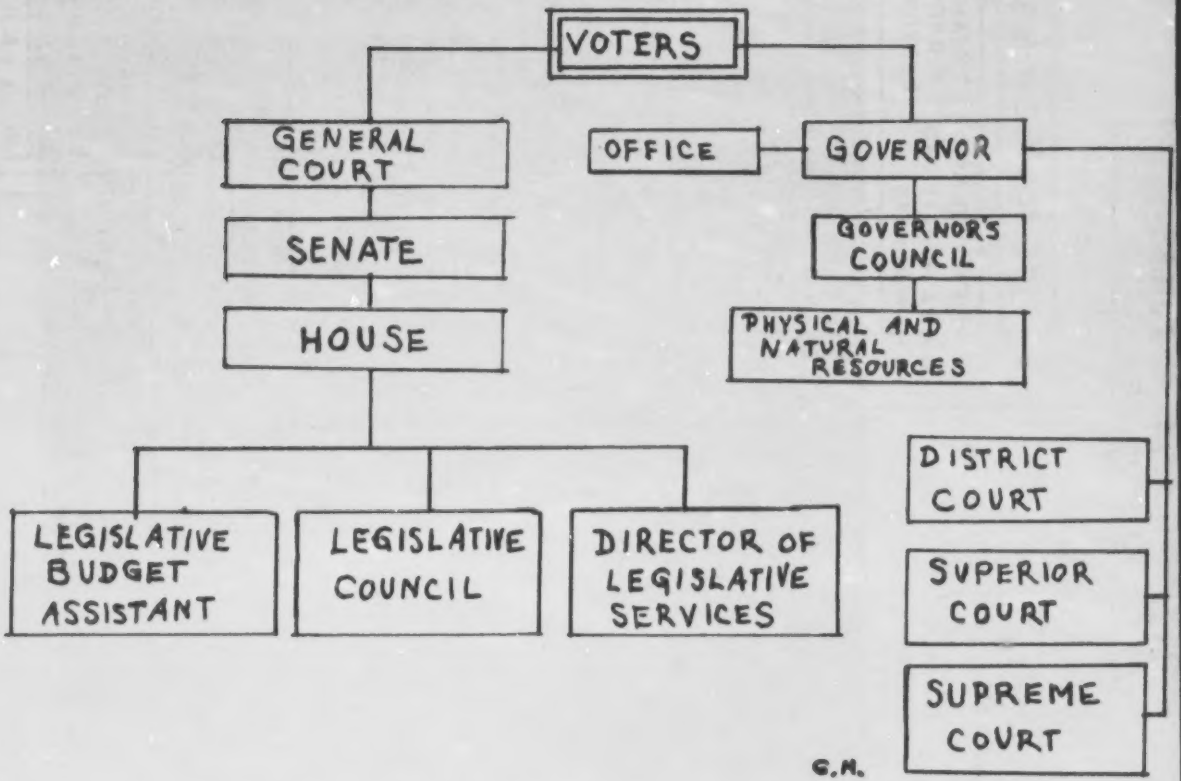


Figure 4B-2

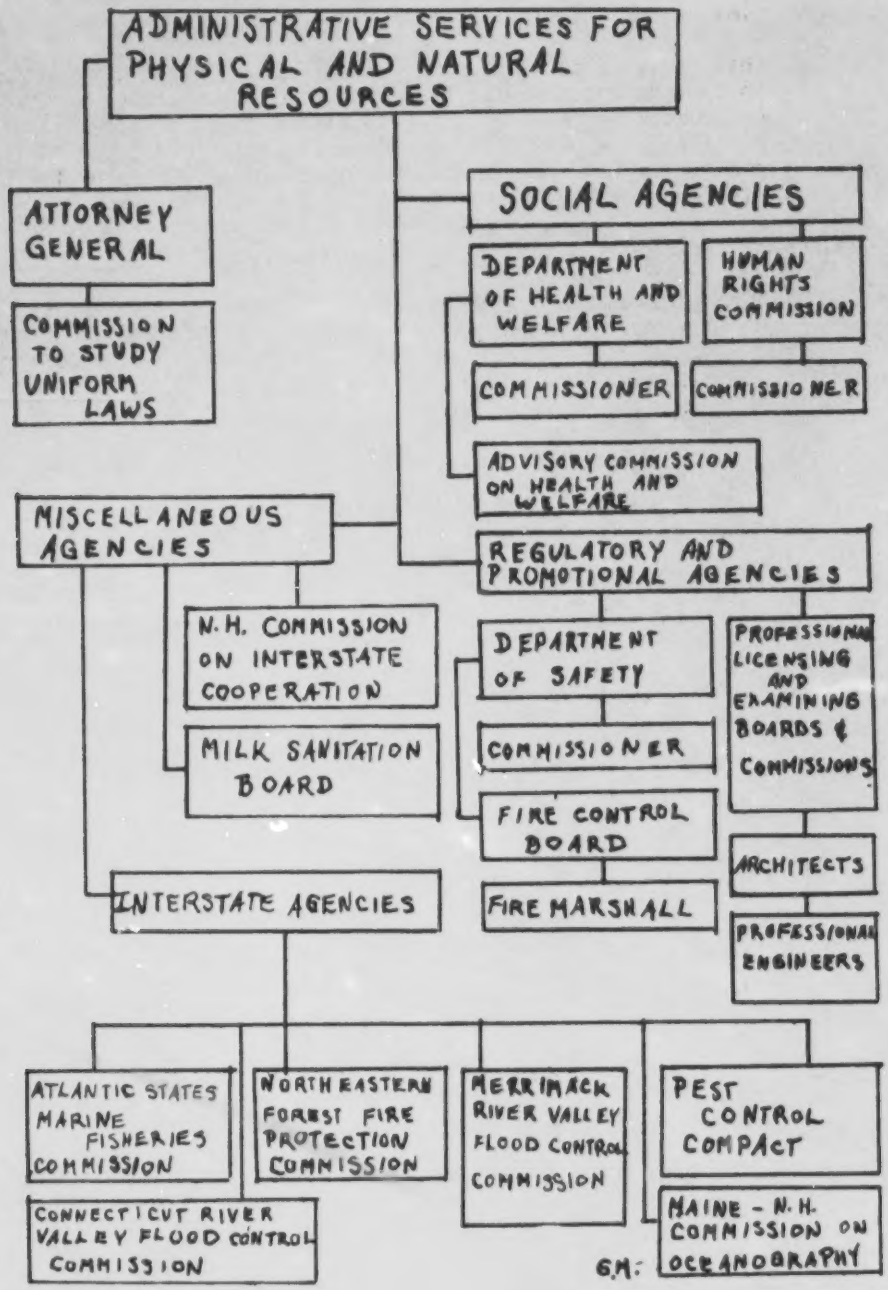

ADMINISTRATIVE SERVICES FOR PHYSICAL AND NATURAL RESOURCES
ATTORNEY GENERAL
COMMISSION TO STUDY UNIFORM LAWS
SOCIAL AGENCIES
DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND WELFARE
HUMAN RIGHTS COMMISSION
COMMISSIONER
COMMISSIONER
ADVISORY COMMISSION ON HEALTH AND WELFARE
MISCELLANEOUS AGENCIES
REGULATORY AND PROMOTIONAL AGENCIES
N.H. COMMISSION ON INTERSTATE COOPERATION
MILK SANITATION BOARD
DEPARTMENT OF SAFETY
COMMISSIONER
FIRE CONTROL BOARD
FIRE MARSHALL
PROFESSIONAL LICENSING AND EXAMINING BOARDS & COMMISSIONS
ARCHITECTS
PROFESSIONAL ENGINEERS
INTERSTATE AGENCIES
ATLANTIC STATES MARINE FISHERIES COMMISSION
NORTHEASTERN FOREST FIRE PROTECTION COMMISSION
MERRIMACK RIVER VALLEY FLOOD CONTROL COMMISSION
PEST CONTROL COMPACT
CONNECTICUT RIVER VALLEY FLOOD CONTROL COMMISSION
MAINE - N.H. COMMISSION ON OCEANOGRAPHY
G.M.

Figure 4B-3

VI. Limitations

This activity could vary from an hour to several days, according to the students' desire to delve into such a project. If the instructor gathers certain information ahead of time, it is possible to work within normal class periods. If the state capitol is far away transportation could be a problem for those wishing to visit.

VII. Bibliography

Pamphlets published by the state, or local governments are useful. New Hampshire publishes through the Department of State, A Manual for the General Court. Any reports by temporary advisory commissions are also valuable.

C. State Government Model

I. Introduction

This is an activity for the high school level which could follow one in which the state government structure in the area of water pollution has been studied (such as Activity B, in this chapter). It is assumed that the students have been impressed with the complexity of governmental operations; the duplication of efforts; the inefficiencies of the various bureaus, commissions, boards, etc. It is, therefore, anticipated that the students might wish to develop their own organizational plan for water pollution control. The students may then wish to make suggestions to their legislators or to special appointed task forces so that the immediate serious problems might be solved by minimizing the usual red tape and delays.

II. Questions

1. Lead to the activity by asking:

   a. Why does it take so long to get things done?

   b. Why is it so hard to get questions answered?

   c. Are you surprised by the complexity of the structure of the state government?

   d. Do you think the present one can operate efficiently and effectively?

   e. Do you notice that various aspects of the water pollution program come under different agencies?

2. Initiate the activity with questions such as:

   a. Can you name all the people and organizations that might be concerned with water pollution?

   b. Do you think that certain areas are not covered?

   c. Do you think that efforts are being duplicated?

   d. Do you think that you can come up with a better type of organization?

   e. What are some desirable changes that are in order?

   f. How do you think that the changes can be brought about?

3. Continue the activity by asking:

   a. Now that you have developed a plan which you think is more efficient and effective, do you wish to pass this on to your legislators?

   b. Can you name some other individuals and organizations that might be interested in your plan?

   c. If no party or parties show any interest in your plan, do you wish to revise or alter the plan?

4. Evaluate the students' efforts with questions such as:

   a. Did this activity interest the students?

   b. Did they wish to extend the study?

   c. Did they really feel that they were making a contribution to the solution of the problem?

III. Equipment

No equipment is needed. Various booklets on the structure of state governments - from the state in which the school is located or (if a boarding school) from home states. Typewriters, duplicating, or copying machines are in order.

IV. Procedure

1. After students have expressed their dissatisfaction with the present system of water pollution control, suggest (or have the students suggest) that they develop a better system which would more efficiently coordinate all the agencies, commissions, etc.

2. Have the students block out a table of organization.

3. Compare the students' plan with the one proposed by their state.

4. Suggest follow-up by writing letters and enclosing the plan to legislators and others who might be interested.

5. Students may be encouraged to make charts and posters explaining what they hope to accomplish.

V. Previous Studies

1. Studies of government structure in other courses might have given the students an idea of the complexity of government structure.

2. Experiences in the past in seeking out information, such as letter writing and interviewing,might give clues to the problems involved.

3. Some students may have experienced the feeling of powerlessness, the credibility gap, and the great difficulty in getting direct answers to questions.

4. The bibliography contains a list of documents acquired in two days at Concord, N. H. Three tries were required to obtain the table of organization and it was three years old.

VI. Limitations

The only limitation is time. Depending on the type of course that is being offered, this activity can be as short or as long as desired, provided that the interest is there. It is possible to go on to another unit while replies to letters or any follow-up studies are underway.

VII. Bibliography

State of New Hampshire Citizens' Task Force: 1. Over-all Report; 2. Reports of the Consultant; and 3. Reports of the Subcommittees.

"State of New Hampshire Citizens' Task Force Chart of the Reorganization of the Executive Department," Concord Daily Monitor, January 7, 1970.

State of New Hampshire, "Table of Organization of the State Government."

State of New Hampshire, "Table of Organization of the Water Supply and Pollution Control Commission."

Similar reports should be available from all state and regional governments.

D. Anti-pollution Laws

I. Introduction

This activity is designed to determine what circumstances in a given area allow cases of obvious pollution to continue. While it is true that the time gap between creation and enforcement of laws is one of the primary causes, this is not always the case. If anti-pollution laws do exist, it may be that a gap also exists between what is considered to constitute pollution and what legally constitutes a case of pollution. In other words, both legal and illegal polluters have been found to exist.

In order to make such determinations, the students are required to wade through many legal documents as well as carry out interviews. Therefore this activity is suggested for senior high school students.

II. Questions

1. Lead to the activity by asking:

   a. Why isn't something being done about citing a local polluter?

   b. How can you determine the legal status of an industry?

2. To initiate the activity ask:

   a. What agencies (public and private) are directly concerned with industrial pollution in your river basin?

   b. Which ones make the regulations?

   c. What are they?

   d. What people should be contacted for information? Local? State? Federal?

   e. What questions do you want answered? For example, is there a water quality standard in your state?

3. To continue the activity ask:

   a. What types of testing have been done?

   b. Should you make tests of your own?

   c. Who interprets the results of the testing?

   d. What is the mechanism for reporting violations?

e. How do you survey local industry?

f. What steps are being taken toward sewage abatement?

g. Who is responsible for enforcement of water pollution regulations?

4. To evaluate the student consider:

a. What types of background material did the student gather?

b. Were the questions formulated in advance of personal contact with resource people?

c. Was the plan of attack well planned and viable?

d. Can the student differentiate between legal and illegal pollution practices?

e. Is the student aware of public recourse that can be brought against the illegal industrial polluter and the steps in this process?

III. Equipment

No special equipment is required unless the students do testing in the field.

IV. Procedure

1. Select a site of obvious water pollution.

2. Determine the industrial or private persons who are contributing to the pollution.

3. Investigate the local, state, and federal agencies concerned with pollution in your area and determine what laws are now in existence.

4. Select one specific industrial polluter and secure background material on the corporation, i.e.,

a. How is it polluting and to what degree (may be necessary to perform tests)?

b. When did it begin?

c. How many people are employed?

d. What are its gross earnings?

e. What responsibility does it feel it has?

5. If a violation is occuring, discuss the courses of action regarding it. You may want to do one of the following:

   a. Go to the corporation's management and ask about the responsibility to meet legal standards, past actions, and projected activities.

   b. Go to the local politicians about the specific corporation.

   c. Go to the relevant enforcement agencies with your data and attempt to find out what they are doing.

V. Limitations

You may have difficulty arranging interviews. Some people are reluctant to talk freely about the situation. This often includes politicians, factory managers, and heads of agencies on all levels.

Conflicting evidence may occur in the data collected by personal interviews. Biases and backgrounds of the persons being interviewed should be taken into account.

Interpretations of the law may be a problem at times even for the "experts."

If violations are found and reported, don't expect instant action. Legal mechanisms often take a great deal of time.

VI. Past Studies

This activity was carried out by a group of Tilton School students. A small tannery was discovered polluting the Pemigewasset River in Franklin, N. H. Tests above and below the tannery were made to determine the exact nature of the pollution. It was discovered that the tannery was polluting beyond the limits set by the State Water Pollution Control Commission. Although a violation was found to exist, the State allowed this until completion of sewage abatement by the tannery.

VII. Bibliography

Camp, Dresser, and McGee, Report on Sewerage and Sewage Treatment, City of Franklin, N. H., January 1965. This is a consulting engineering firm's report on the treatment of this city's municipal and industrial sewage.

Social and Political Factors

State of New Hampshire, Laws Relating to the Water Supply and Pollution Control Commission, January 1970.

U. S. Department of the Interior, Federal Water Control Administration, Report on the Pollution of the Merrimack River and Certain Tributaries, Part 1. It contains the summary, conclusion, and recommendations for the cleaning of these rivers.

E. An Elementary Investigation of Local Water Anti-Pollution Programs by Interviewing Government Officials

I. Introduction

This activity could be used in classes for 6th through 12th grade students to evaluate the evident effectiveness of the government to deal with water pollution. The students should become aware of and develop an interest in the local problems of their communities.

II. Questions

1. Lead to the activity by asking what are the water pollution problems in our community.

2. Stir interest by asking:

   a. Who are the people responsible for controlling these problems?

   b. Do they use the authority given them effectively?

3. The teacher may evaluate the activity by considering:

   a. What were the students' results?

   b. What reasons were there for these results?

   c. Were the students' questions well prepared?

   d. Was the students' back-up knowledge sufficient?

III. Equipment

None is required.

IV. Procedure

1. Find out a few problems in your community by reading the newspaper.

2. Determine which laws pertain to these problems.

3. Make up an outline of questions.

4. Set up the interview.

5. Record the results and your reactions by writing articles or reports.

V. Past Studies

This outline was followed by 6th grade students for interviews regarding pollution problems in two communities. Problems were encountered in dealing with community officials. The following reaction was written as a result of a 3 day trip to Washington to find out what was going on. The article appeared on pages 75-77 of the March 1970 issue of the Academy Science Journal published by Germantown Academy, Ft. Washington, Pa. The authors were seniors in 1970.

Moving Around on Pollution

"On March 4th, a Wednesday, four leaders of the Wissahickon Lobby met with Professor Zandi of the University of Pennsylvania Ecology Department. The professor is an authority in matters of pollution and its treatments. Another meeting took place on March 6th with Samuel S. Baxter who is the Commissioner of Philadelphia's Water Department. Both interviews were very educational and further indicated the number of highly paid pollution fighters who are sitting around doing nothing.

"Mr. Zandi was very impressed with the enthusiasm of the Wissahickon Lobby; however, he seemed to be very pessimistic as to any positive results. Mr. Zandi suggested some kind of coordinator or advisor who could tie all the loose ends together. It is important to note that Mr. Zandi did not have all our material and therefore could not review the situation to its furtherest point. One must also take into consideration the role of the University which is purely educational. You might call it a noninvolvement policy. Mr. Zandi proposed that he would come to our school once a month and check the project's progress and offer his advice. There was no settlement as to the future; however, Mr. Zandi said he would look into a student advisor on a weekly basis (senior doing graduate work in actual pollution).

"Our interview with Commissioner Baxter dealt more with the legal aspects of pollution. He is presently involved with an article entitled, "Are Things As Bad As They Seem?" Mr. Baxter felt there were many other problems that were more pressing than the problem of pollution. He posed questions such as, "Many people want all the streams and waterways as clean as possible. Can the 4 million people living in metropolitan Philadelphia expect to physically clean up the streams?" Mr. Baxter is in a bind as are all officials handling this problem; however, is this a valid excuse for the hoarding of enthusiasm!

"The shortage of money was brought up by the Commissioner, but how is it that a newly-formed lobby such as ours is capable of

raising money, but not a large organization such as the Philadelphia Water Department? It also seems as though the people themselves are aiding the various extents of pollution by rejecting any increase in taxes for the fight against pollution. Many enjoy the reduction in taxes due to the amount paid by the companies who must pay taxes because of the pollutants they feed into the air and the water. It has even been mentioned that various people don't want anything done for that specific reason. I'd say that was a little selfish on the people's end of the pole. Will it take a critical situation to move people, or can we join in and work at it now?

"Mr. Baxter's problem is much more complex than the one we have here at the Wissahickon and this makes ours much easier to clean up. An example would be the storm sewerage problem in the city. After it rains much waste and pollution is carried into the sewers, however, it only amounts to 3% of the Delaware River's pollution. For the city of Philadelphia to clean that 3% up, it would cost approximately $3 billion. In 3 years the Department has spent $75 million on treatment plants. This is all very impressive, but somehow something can be done on the Wissahickon that is not going to cost $75 million. The Wissahickon is no Delaware River; however, if we were situated on the Delaware, the impression that was made by certain figures would have been much less agreeable.

"Our feeling is one of optimism, and the problems of the larger scale pollution fighters do not necessarily involve us. With the number of students we have working on the Lobby and the amount of information we have piled up, one can't help but look at things in a bright light. Things are moving, and the right people (industrial and sewage polluters) are now beginning to worry, is there a better indication?"

Bill McKay '70
Sal Siciliano '70

The following reaction was written as a result of a trip to the capitol of Pennsylvania. It was a research trip for a student lobby. This article appeared in the December 1969 issue of the Academy Science Journal, published by Germantown Academy, Ft. Washington, Pa.

Pollution and the Law

"On November 26, 1969 I traveled to Harrisburg to interview a Mr. Smurda of the Department of Health about water quality. My reason was to gather legal data on the relation between water quality and the law. My hope was to find out the different

legal ways in which to help my school in its attempt to unpollute the Wissahickon Creek. As my interview went on I was increasingly impressed that though there are laws, there is no real way to stop filth from being poured into our streams unless the companies decide to do something on their own.

"The first thing which I was shown, was a copy of the laws as they now stand. I immediately turned to the page which told of the penalties for constant waste disposal into streams and found the following:

> 'Any person who shall continue to discharge sewage or permit the same flow into the waters of the Commonwealth, contrary to the preceeding provisions of this act, or after the expiration of the time fixed in any notice from the board to discontinue an existing discharge of sewage into the waters of the Commonwealth shall, upon conviction thereof in a summary proceeding, be sentenced to pay a fine of not less than twenty-five dollars and not exceeding one hundred dollars for each offence, and a further fine of ten dollars a day for each day the offense is maintained and, in default of the payment of such fines and costs, the person or the member or members of any association or co-partnership, or the officer or officers of any corporation, responsible for violation of this act, shall be imprisoned in the county jail one day for each dollar of fine and costs unpaid.'

"The part of this which is most distressing is the fact that a simple appeal can delay indefinitely the payment of fines which might even reach a meaningful size in the area of $10,000 or more.

"For the most part the rest of the articles which I was shown offered little that those people at my school did not already know. All the figures that I saw agreed with our own and showed that many levels including the total soluble phosphate level is 500% (approx.) higher than it should be.

"The one thing that I think really struck me was that the State knows who is polluting the creek and even goes to the trouble of listing who these people are. This was the list as taken from the implementation plan for interstate waters Schuykill River basin.

> Industrial Wastes-Discharges -- Nicolet Industries, Certainteed, Lansdale Tube-Philco, Merck, Sharp & Dohme, Precision Tube, Leeds and Northrup, Philco-Ford TV, McNiel Labs.
> Sewage -- Ambler MSS, Ambler South MS, North Wales MSS, Abington T. MSA, Gwynedd Jr. College, Silverstream Nursing Home, Delaware Valley Independent Sewage, Selas Corp., Aidenn Lair, Upper Gwynedd T. MSA, Sheraton Motor Inn.

Social and Political Factors

"The most distressing thing is that the State knows who is throwing things into our creek, yet they can do very little. Something must be done within the near future, and it must be done by the people involved. If reform cannot come fast enough from the Government, cooperation must come from all involved."

Nick Backrack '70

The following article appeared in the February 1970 issue of the Academy Science Journal, published by Germantown Academy Ft. Washington, Pa. The author was in the class of 1970.

Washington Excursion

"This was the first trip to Washington concerning Federal anti-pollution laws and programs. We entered Washington with a naive attitude that people would be eager and willing to help us, but when we left we realized the problems that confront an anti-pollution program.

"The first obstacle to overcome is getting an appointment. Time can be lost if this is not done before arriving in Washington. We lost one afternoon of work because we did not have a definite appointment. A definite time and day will resolve this problem.

"Another problem we incurred was that we can be given the run-around quite easily. To solve this problem we need somebody, inside Washington, or out, who is able by his name to get us action. At this point, only a few people seem interested in what we have to say. The only two places were we found any interest were Mr. Cutler of Senator Muskie's staff and Representative Coughlin's office. In both these places, we found people willing to listen and talk with us. Mr. Cutler was helpful by naming other people we could contact for help. These were Thomas Jarling, Minority Counselor Public Works; James Smith, the Conservation Foundation, Washington; the League of Women Voters; and the Administration.

"We should not, however, look to Washington as our sole means of help. Although help from Washington is nice, we must start looking around us for help because this is where we can apply the most pressure. We should look for a group to help us. If there is none, we should form one. This can be done in several ways. One way, that Mr. Cutler agreed with, was an association. This association would be made of schools from throughout the Delaware Valley. With business and community backing, we can use this group to get things done as well as applying pressure. We can also join lobbies in both Harrisburg and Washington. Being part of a lobby will also open doors and bring us more power.

"Mr. Cutler also stated that unless the waters we are investigating are interstate, we must work within State and local laws. If the waters are interstate, then it comes under Federal jurisdiction.

"Although the trip was not a complete success, we did learn something. The next group that goes down must be ready beforehand. It must have specific questions to ask and definite appointments. Members must be ready to be given some run-around, but also they should realize it and try to stop it. We must also get contacts in Washington who can help us get appointments in Washington."

Pieter Platten '70

VI. Limitations

In some large cities, there might be a problem in getting an interview. And, many times one official will refer you to another, which makes things difficult for reasons of transportation and time.

VII. Bibliography

English teachers generally can provide a bibliography which gives references on writing reaction papers.

F. Publication of a Science Journal

I. Introduction

This activity introduced the student to the communications aspect of pollution studies -- a science journal as one key to reaching other people through students' activities. This project would involve more than science; the English, history, and art departments are important contributors to the overall results. The student is eager to share his enthusiasm and ideas with others; the result is a spreading involvement in pollution activities. Grades 7 through 12 will find this a good activity. In one case, a second grade remedial reading class made a significant contribution to one science journal.

II. Questions

1. Ask students if they feel a need exists for communication concerning pollution.

2. Initiate the activity by asking the students what method they consider most appropriate for the establishment of communication and whether or not a science journal would help in creating an awareness of the problem.

3. Continue the activity by asking to what activities the establishment of a journal could lead.

4. Evaluate the activity by determining:

   a. Are students interested in participating in some way in the journal's production?

   b. Are they concerned about communicating their ideas with others?

III. Equipment

Equipment requirements vary according to resources available. Your journal could be a mimeographed series of reports stapled together or a sophisticated, printed manual. You will need paper, typewriters, mimeograph, stamps, and envelopes for mailing, and people to work.

IV. Procedure

Suggest to students that they write up their various activities and collate them into a booklet. Devise a method to choose 8 or 9 students who will be in charge of general production such as reader service, editing and correcting articles, and collating material. A suggested mailing list would be the area independent

and public schools. This type of activity allows students of all age to participate. Perhaps, if you have the time and the materials, you can print copies for parents and alumni to generate interest. Encourage every student to contribute, not necessarily scientific articles, but ones dealing with pollution in general.

V. Past Studies

Germantown Academy, Ft. Washington, Pa., last year started production on the Academy Science Journal. Nine students from the Biology 2 section were in charge of general production, and the first articles were contributed by the biology, physics, and chemistry departments. However, after a couple of issues, students nonscientifically oriented were contributing write-ups on projects and activities, varying from the invention of a flow meter to 1st grade essays on the meaning of pollution. Artistic students contributed diagrams, drawings, and cartoons. The Journal's content increased in size slowly, but the variety of the content broadened considerably. Eventually the journal was sold for 25¢ each to members of the local Watershed Association to raise money for some projects. The students in grades 1 - 5 were so enthused that they made and sold a booklet of drawings and essays on pollution. The money they raised was used to buy a filter for the school incinerator. The Academy Science Journal is printed monthly and contains 80 typewritten pages. It is distributed free of charge to approximately 200 schools. The purpose of the Academy Science Journal as stated on the title page is:

> "As faculty of the science department of Germantown Academy, we uphold the belief that many of our students are capable of making significant scientific contributions at the secondary level. These students possess the initiative and scientific curiosity to determine problems, conduct research, and translate the information into meaningful conclusions.
>
> "We feel that their investigations warrant publication in order that others may share in their activities."

VII. Bibliography

Science journals on any level are the best bibliography. Check with your school librarian.

G. Orientation Program For the Study of Water Pollution

I. Introduction

This activity is set up as a discussion for a group orientation study of water pollution. The group can be a traditional class. It could also be a community group (e.g., students from several high schools that do not offer a course in water pollution). The questions should stimulate the group into shaping a skeleton from which the leader can plan a study agreeable to all. It would be helpful to get through the whole activity in one session. However, the rate of progression must be determined by the group. Tape recording the discussion would have value; the group leader could use it as a reference in the future. The questions are set up under the precept that the group will be situated by a polluted body of water. Perhaps it will be the one the group decides to study. This natural setting should act as a motivating device, as seeing the problem would increase awareness and hopefully concern among the group.

II. Questions

These questions are to provide thought-provoking topics for discussion. The first three sections play a specific role in the progression of the orientation.

1. To lead into the activity - these questions are to "set the stage," to lead the group to concentrate on water pollution. They lead into the real investigation.

   a. What is pollution?

   b. Can you identify by sight any pollution in this water?

   c. Are natural things like leaves and twigs pollution?

   d. How is a scientific approach to the problem relevant?

   e. What can science tell us about the problem?

   f. Can this information help us to solve the problem?

   g. How can data and facts help us?

   h. Why is a social approach important?

   i. How can a social approach help to solve the problem?

   j. How can public relations help with a commercial approach to fighting pollution?

k. On which commercial enterprises should attention be focused?

l. What type of public relations is important?

m. Reflecting recent months, pollution plays an important role in politics. How can politics influence pollution?

n. How can his outlook on pollution affect the fate of a politician?

2. To initiate the activity - the trend should be set in a meaningful direction at this point. Discussion now centers about the objectives of the group. These shall be recognized by covering the points to each numbered theme question.

a. Should we study a specific body of water?

b. What would you like to find out about the pollution of this water?

-chemical

-bacterial

-historical

-aquatic life

-public influence

c. Are we going to try to solve the pollution problem?

-(apply what was discussed in A)

-when

d. How shall we divide the group, if at all?

-scientific

-social

-commercial

-legislative

-political

e. Whom shall we involve in fighting this pollution?

-peers

-family

-community

f. What type of information shall we request, and what commercial enterprises shall we contact?

-only water polluters

-any polluters

-research agencies

-factories

-small enterprises

g. What information shall we seek?

-history

-general information

-a role we can assume now

h. What shall our group objective be?

-(tie together what was discussed)

3. To continue the activity - now that the atmosphere is set and the group objectives outlined, these questions focus on planning the group's activities. The extent of the use of the questions will vary, especially in the case of high school students. Many will have to have been answered by other than the group in preparation of a type of contract, be it a community group.

a. Where shall we begin?

-introduce limitations set by authorities, if it is necessary

-frequency of group sessions

-summarize B and make it concrete

-independent work

-funding

-publicity

4. To evaluate the students' performance - these questions can be applied to a classroom situation if the need for an evaluation persists. If it is a community group, this evaluation may be unnecessary. The leader will have to evaluate a group of high school students if their schools request it. Evaluation may also be necessary if credit is to be given for the study.

   a. Did the group member help set a meaningful trend to the discussion?

   b. Did he (she) make specific personal objectives of the study?

   c. Did he (she) help with the setting of the group objective?

   d. Did he (she) introduce relevant discussion matters not included in the outline?

III. Equipment

The equipment used should be decided by the leader. Some may prefer to keep the whole orientation a discussion. Others may find nonscientific aids helpful. Listed below are a few suggestions:

1. Should the students desire to observe the water more closely, the following supplies may prove useful:

-bucket

-rope

-hand lens

-old cloth (as a net)

-tin cans

-plastic bags

-jars or bottles

2. Current mass media about pollution may prove helpful through the orientation.

IV. Procedure

Begin the orientation with questions. Although they need not be carried out exactly, the questions are prepared to facilitate discussion of relevant matter. The leader must "play it by ear" as each group will be directed differently.

V. Past Studies

1. A discussion held in the natural setting has proved effective at Grymes Memorial School, Orange, Va.

2. The role play technique has been used with great success at Nottingham Academy in Buffalo, N. Y. Its use fosters understanding of various situations and opinions among students. It is a technique especially good for a student who refuses to try to understand a situation.

3. It is important that the students have an understanding of the pollution problem. A raw scientific approach without any orientation is more apt to "fail" than a study where the students actually understand the significance of any scientific methods before they begin.

4. Notice the work "leader" is substituted for teacher. A study of water pollution is something new and different to most students. It is more important to learn about it than be taught about it. However, the need for an experienced moderator still exists. This person may or may not be a "teacher." Hopefully, the teamwork that should result will put all group members on the same level, regardless of their age.

5. Role playing activities:

   a. A constant consumer of high phosphate detergents argue about detergents. (If others are introduced, the argument should become a discussion.)

      (1) <u>High-phosphate-detergent consumer</u>

      -if phosphates are that bad, the government should outlaw their use

      -the laundry must be clean, and there are no comparable substitutes

-phosphates tend to make the water 'wetter', and this especially is necessary in hard water areas

-I have to use up the detergents I've already purchased.

(2) Anti-pollution-conscious consumer

-phosphates are a main contributor to algae growth and increased bacteria growth, thus causing eutrophication.

-it is up to each individual to fight pollution to the best of his ability.

-which do you value more - clean clothes or clean water?

-if we do not purchase them, store owners and manufacturers will be forced to act quicker.

(3) Detergent manufacturer

-research has been going on for many years.

-automatically banning phosphate detergents would present serious problems.

-housewives like modern detergents and will not settle for soap.

-if housewives were really so antipollution, why are they still buying high phosphate detergents?

(4) Grocery store owner

-must stock all different products so a consumer may purchase according to individual choice.

-obligation to provide an outlet for manufactured products.

-must not let viewpoint overpower the wants of consumers.

-competitive reasons force me to stock favorite laundry aids.

b. A purchaser of brightly-colored tissue products which contain nonbiodegradable dyes is angry because the store she patronizes stocks only white tissue now. This is a discussion among any number of the four or more possible role players.

(1) Angry purchaser

-these products brighten up the bathroom decor.

-if they are banned, so should other luxury items that pollute worse.

-these products are much softer.

-somebody has to buy them.

(2) Anti-pollution crusader

-unnecessary pollution created.

-white tissue products do the job just as well.

-individuals should fight pollution to the best of their ability.

-such products are a waste of money.

(3) Manufacturer

-color is a way of brightening life.

-nobody is obliged to buy them.

-dye pollution from fabric mills, etc. is worse.

-manufacturing not stopped for economic reasons.

(4) Store owner

-color discretion is not right.

-comparable products that pollute less are still stocked.

-unsightly dye pollution is created in manufacturing - let us stop as much as we can.

-convince manufacturers such products are unnecessary luxuries.

c. A boatowner is upset with the new law concerning watercraft sewage disposal. He discusses it with a friend.

(1) The Law

-illegal to discharge sewage from watercraft into water.

-head may be sealed permanently and still comply with the law.

-all users of the state's waterways must comply.

(2) Boatowner

-silly law to bring sewage back to land where it will receive inadequate or no treatment.

-pollution control device is too expensive for the seldom-used head.

-out-of-state boaters are being cheated.

(3) Anti-pollution crusader

-better to have sewage concentrated than discharged throughout the waterways.

-other states will be encouraged to form better standards.

-obligation of all boaters to comply.

d. The role plays should then be analyzed:

-did the person play his role all the way through?

-could a concensus be attained?

-were any dependencies among various roles cited?

-were resolutions suggested; could they be suggested?

VI. Limitations

1. In a community group, the problem might arise if participants are not acquainted. The leader must be prepared to help resolve this problem, as a study of water pollution requires real teamwork. The discussion approach which this particular paper deals with should help overcome this obstacle a bit.

2. Students may have trouble understanding problems of fighting pollution. It is important that they understand the viewpoints of those involved as professionals. This is an area where they assume the role of a designated position. In a given situation they are to work out a problem verbally, trying to adhere to their role under group obervation. It is interesting and often advantageous to have the students exchange roles about halfway through. The examples below are representative of typical problems encountered in an effort to fight pollution. They are accompanied by points that often occur in the situation. There are undoubtedly supplements. The points given are not paralleled.

VII. Bibliography

This paper was put together by drawing on experience. No specific references were consulted. To initiate and sustain an activity such as this, the best resources are current mass media.

H. An Anti-pollution Club

I. Introduction

This activity is designed for high school students who are interested in starting a club dealing with different facets of pollution.

II. Questions

1. Lead to the activity by asking:

   a. What problems of pollution in your area would you like to see remedied?

   b. How could student action help resolve that solution?

2. Initiate the activity with questions such as:

   a. What specific aspect of possible action would students be most interested in?

   b. What type of student or school organization would be most effective and useful to enable students with their crusade?

   c. What angle of consideration of this aspect would be most effective in dealing with the problem?

3. Continue the activity with:

   a. Could an outside institution help the organization in any way?

   b. Could increased publicity further spur or expand the program?

   c. Have all of the facets (i.e., side effects, sources, relationship to the total pollution scope, consequences, etc.) been dealt with?

   d. Are there any similar problems in the area?

   e. Are there any other schools or organizations that might need help or could benefit from your organization's experiences?

4. Consider evaluating students with questions such as:

   a. What did your group accomplish?

b. How did the results, conclusions, or experiences compare with those anticipated?

c. How could the plan be improved?

III. Equipment

The equipment required will be determined by the activities of the club.

IV. Method

The method for starting an organization will vary depending on the school itself and the kind of program desired. Students interested in the numerous aspects of pollution (i.e., science, legislation, philosophy, etc.) should be encouraged to participate because differing skills are needed in any project. If the students show an interest in establishing a club or similar student organization, help them out by:

1. Finding out the procedures for establishing a club.

2. Defining the purpose of the club (write a charter).

3. Publicizing the club.

In defining purpose, the activities that the club hopes to carry out or the possible lines of action should be considered.

After the club has been functioning for a length of time, it might be advisable to sit down as a group and list or outline the activities the group has engaged in. This outline should include the failures as well as the successes. From this outline, a short explanatory program of what the club is doing could be evolved very easily.

The program could utilize any posters and/or charts and anything else that the club has produced to explain and exemplify pollution.

A 10 to 30-minute slide program with a narrator and sufficient subject matter can be very effective. It could be presented to students in other schools to encourage them to form their own club.

V. Club functions

1. Cleanup of polluted areas.

Organize a basic plan for the cleanup of community rivers, streams, and highways. Make use of volunteer community citizens. Review the sites to get an idea of how and what to clean up. Needed materials could include trash containers, vehicles for pick-up, and transportation. It is recommended that plastic or canvas bags be used for waste instead of paper bags.

2. Underground newspapers.

Underground newspapers are effective tools for the students to work with because they are not limited by the censorship of the administration. Organizing a paper that will be published regularly is a Herculean task. As the group starts work they have to raise money for supplies and decide on the purpose and format of the paper. Usually money can be obtained by soliciting students and organizations. Some problems are: interest has to be maintained; the paper has to eventually pay for itself; and the staff should be organized and committed.

3. Distribution centers (books).

As club activity, a booth can be set up and operated by the students to sell or distribute material concerning pollution. Buttons, posters, and stickers can be made by the students and sold for a profit. A number of "important" students can be selected to receive these materials free, in order to stimulate interest. Material which could be distributed could include pamphlets on water and other kinds of pollution which are free upon request from the Federal government; the Congressional Record which is informative; and school newspapers concerned with pollution subjects. This keeps a constantly changing pile of materials at the booth.

4. Erosion.

Find an erosion problem in your community that needs attention. Determine what would be involved to correct the problem. If it is a major undertaking, seek the help of the community. If it is a small project, gather the needed equipment and materials and set up a work day for the club and other interested students.

5. Colleges and Elementary Schools.

Contact colleges in the area to see how a cooperative (i.e., sharing data equipment, ideas, personnel) can evolve in an academic area. Contact elementary school teachers to see how your club activities can be shared with the younger students.

6. Communication.

Communication has an important role in any activity as it is necessary to make information public so that it can be an effective force in the school and community. The methods of communication available are unlimited. Inside the school, use the school newspaper or the distribution of dittoed sheets at information centers. Outside of the school the students could set up an underground newspaper and talk to the local radio stations and newspapers about time and space to discuss their activity.

7. Poster and Art Exhibits.

For any art exhibits, proper hanging space must be available. There are several exhibits made-up for exhibition in schools; one is available from Eastman Kodak Company. These exhibits are of photographs taken by students and judged by professionals, and rated 1st, 2nd, or 3rd. You can find out about these exhibits by asking the local Kodak shop; for other exhibits ask a local museum.

Poster contests can be sponsored in your school by the art or the science department. All you need to do is to arouse enough enthusiasm for the project so that you have enough contestants. One idea for promoting the enthusiasm is to make materials available to the students. Often, when some kind of prize is offered, more of the older students will participate. Otherwise, your best participants will be the students in the lower grades.

Having any kind of exhibit in the halls of a school building will help in bringing the students together. You will find a contest motivates some students who would not have been motivated otherwise.

8. Field Trips.

Field trips are interesting and useful to a club. But trips should be to areas of interest and have relevancy such as areas of established pollution. The date, time, and methods of transportation should be set up before the designated time. It is possible to get help or maybe permission from authorities if you write ahead of time or call to ask.

The purpose of the trip, either testing or knowledge-seeking, can be discussed beforehand to look for key points during the trip. In the case of testing water, legal complications should be taken into consideration.

VI. Past Studies.

1. A group of high school students in St. Louis (University City High School) set up a political newspaper, which helped to initiate some changes within the school structure.

   Limitation: Initial costs and motivation of students to 'stick it out'.

2. State-wide cleanup of streams, river, and highways in Vermont.

   All communities were asked to help. General agreement for future involvement evolved. People became aware of the pollution problem and worked for a common goal.

3. Paper drive by students of the Vermont Academy which was publicized beforehand for people to call in and ask for pick-ups. The paper was sold to a factory that reuses it.

4. In North Quincy, Mass., students volunteered to help beautify a mental retardation center. Donations were given by local florists and American Legion Post. Other students from different schools also helped.

   Limitations: Follow up is necessary to care for plants (project was stopped by school closing).

5. At Germantown Academy, a group of 40 to 50 students was formed to lobby the Pennsylvania State Legislature. Students soon found out that they could not be effective unless they had the facts. Several subcommittees were formed to look into the interaction of Federal agencies, state agencies, and local authorities. Further interest developed in writing the history (economic and social) of each polluter in the watershed. For this activity small groups of 2 and 3 investigated the corporations by consulting the Sanitary Water Board's health violation records, interviewing corporation executives and engineers, and reading annual reports and other public relations material. The resulting write-ups and block diagrams were circulated among all lobby members. Letters were written to legislators and their reactions noted in the Academy Science Journal. As a by-product of the investigations and letters, the school now receives 2 copies of the Congressional Record, White House press releases on ecology and pollution, and Federal legislation documentation (public laws). Many of the students reacted by showing deep interest in working within the system to accomplish anti-pollution programs. The material they had studied in history, they acknowledged, was an important part of their background which they had not realized before.

VII. Limitations

Often financing a club is difficult. Selling buttons and stickers is a good way to raise quick money; but some projects are expensive and donations must be sought from local lumber companies, manufacturers, furniture companies, florists, chemical plants, scientific, electronic firms, and even the Army Reserve.

It is important to maintain the program after it is once started. Make sure that you are not doing too many things at once; if some activities begin to fade due to the lack of manpower, try to interest the students in joining the more active project. Change the pace occasionally with non-related money-raising projects, such as a car wash. Be sure that your activities are varied. There should be at least one major action program in operation. Be sure to inject new ideas as the old activities are resolved.

Occasionally a school administration does not endorse student programs which it feels are destructive to the normal school routine. You might overcome this if you can get the administration not only to attend the meetings, but also to participate in the projects. It will help build a closer relationship.

Sometimes transportation, as well as distance, is a factor. Make sure vehicles are available, that time is available to complete the project.

If space is a limiting factor, make use of homerooms, study halls, etc.

VIII. Bibliography and References on Community Action Groups

Hall, D. M., Dynamics of Group Action, The Interstate Printers and Publishers, Inc., Danville, Ill., 1964. This is a handbook on group behavior. If you are originating a club or group, you will be interested in the problems of establishing goals and objectives. It will help you to understand the how, why, who, when, what, and where. It will give you a background in both the theory and practice of group work.

Mann, John, Changing Human Behavior, Charles Scribner's Sons, New York City, 1965. This book illustrates the problems created by advance technology. In order to survive, we must change. The author gives the reader a background in significant attempts to assess the effectiveness of currently-used behavioral change procedures. Chapter 7 is especially good in the following areas; the effect of group size, composition of groups, group power structure, the effects of group discussion, the effects of group interaction, the influence of objective feedback, principles of

behavior change in the small group, and group dynamics. Chapter 8 deals with effects of mass media and the lab as opposed to the field setting. Chapter 9 concerns attitude changes. Intergroup contact and implications of social action are discussed in Chapter 10.

Martyn, Henry, Roberts Rules of Order, Robert Scott and Foresman, Chicago, Ill., 1915.

Social and Political Factors

I. How to Win Friends from Skeptics, Critics, and Doubtful School Administrators Without Really Trying

I. Introduction

This activity is designed to get students involved in a campaign to elicit interest, help, and support from people in a school system (chiefly administrators) who may not be in sympathy or agreement with the focus on an environmental approach to education. These activities are intended to demonstrate that the cost and public relations aspect may serve to enhance such a program rather than hinder its development.

II. Questions

1. Pose the following questions to the students to initiate or lead into a discussion relating to problems in those schools where a gulf exists between students, teachers, and administrators regarding the implementation of a viable environmental program.

   a. How might a small group of students communicate effectively with their principal, headmaster or similar administrator?

   b. What problems seem to underlie the difficulty (cost, public relations, scheduling)?

   c. What angle of consideration of this particular aspect cited would be most effective in dealing with the specific problem?

   d. How do you think that student action might help solve the problem and what limitations do you anticipate?

III. Equipment

Materials for writing and illustrating should be available to the student as well as certain statistical data relevant to environmental education, books, and newsworthy articles which would assist the student in carrying out this type of activity.

IV. Procedure

The method for seeking assistance and support from school administrators will vary depending upon the inherent problems of that institution and the type of environmental program desired by that school. Those students interested in specific aspects of pollution should be encouraged to take an active role in this activity.

Social and Political Factors

Several procedural approaches are described below. One or more of them may be used as indicated by the problem in the school, perhaps combinations of two or more procedures may be used, or procedures not developed here but devised by the group to fit the particular situation.

1. Use of existing clubs, organizations, or groups.

   Make a checklist of all the extracurricular clubs and organizations in your school and select those groups which would be used to promote the cause of environmental education. Here are a few suggestions.

   a. Art Clubs might be asked to sponsor a photography contest on pollution or pollution sculpture display in the school library. This would bring attention and interest.

   b. Science or Biology Club might be asked to form a splinter group called the Ecology Action Group which could actively campaign for the type of school program desired. They could distribute printed material on the merits of environmental education, generating further interest by use of bulletin board displays, posters, or conducting an all school assembly to "educate" all on the aims and goals of the specific program wanted at their school.

   c. Debating Clubs might devote an entire school term to debating issues related to the pollution problem. School Publications would ideally serve as an effective instrument to disseminate information and keep the community up to date on progress of the "campaign." A special column on Environment in the newspaper, various pictures of worthwhile and pertinent activities accomplished by the school's participants could add much to the overall support of such an endeavor.

2. Large Group Activity.

   a. There is no better way to impress people of the significance of a particular need than the large group activity to improve or call attention to something.

   b. Those students most interested or skilled in matters of organization might like to coordinate an all campus or all school cleanup. This would require committees to handle such areas as publicity, manpower, collection, sites, and disposal.

   c. A clean-up activity might be followed in a month or two by a beautification project undertaken by a smaller group or

groups. The local newspaper could be called in to help the cause by a well-placed feature article employing several pictures.

3. Improvisation of Equipment.

Since the cost of any program is a main obstacle to overcome in the eyes of an administrator, those activities which show how experiments may be done at minimal expense are important. Students who are familiar with certain procedural techniques described in the guide should be asked to demonstrate how alternate methods may be used. Drawing from examples in the Bacteriology of Water section and the Hydrologic Cycle part, substitutions of more sophisticated equipment may be shown.

4. Public Relations.

a. Many schools are concerned about their public image. The probability of conflicts and the subsequent loss of prestige make many an administrator hesitant about the school's direction in a full-fledged program of environmental education.

b. Through the use of questionnaires, students may seek public information about certain issues relating to pollution. For example, sewage treatment in the school's area may be the topic for one questionnaire, or the district water supply may be another timely topic for polled opinion.

c. Radio programs and P.T.A. discussions by the students might be effective for large-scale communication. Involvement of parents, such as a car pool for necessary transportation, would bring in a very important interest group and, at the same time, create an awareness of the sincere effort by the students in achieving their goals.

d. A very successful method of arousing public interest is the local newspaper. Students who have had journalistic experience should be encouraged to write weekly articles and to document their news items with actual accounts of student activities which are concerned with the environmental crisis.

V. Past Activities

1. Germantown Academy in Fort Washington, Pa.

Students at this school solicited certain business concerns in their community for help. Financial donations and specific equipment were given in many cases. In others, a cooperative

arrangement was worked out whereby the industry provided some service for the school in return for student services. For instance, potato sacks were given to students for use in erosion control. Military surplus was solicited for possible useful materials and equipment.

2. The George School in Newtown, Pa.

   Students at George School made a study of the Neshaminy Watershed. The results were of great public interest in the region and a copy was sent to President Nixon. Response to the study from federal and state officials was great. Such publicity would give impetus to any school program.

3. Mount Hermon and Northfield Schools in Massachusetts.

   Water quality parameters on the Connecticut River were studied in depth by several classes at these schools. Their work received attention from the Connecticut River Watershed Council, and consequently, they were asked to prepare a document for publication. One student working on an independent project made a thorough study of effects of biodegradable detergents on fish and other organisms. This brought widespread response from many companies and governmental offices. The value of these student-oriented activities is obvious when you are seeking support from school administrators.

4. Quincy High School in Quincy, Mass.

   Innovating relevant curricula into the school system takes time, effort, and special study. However, at this public high school, teachers and students worked together to design an anthropology course which would include physical anthropology for half the course. Later a course on Environmental Studies was developed which was presented by the Social Science Department and the Science Department employing a team approach to the teaching.

5. Douglas High School, Baltimore, Md.

   When some opposition to the implementation of an environment program in this school appeared, the City Science Supervisor was invited to see the students at work on their selected projects. This approach has strong persuasive power in convincing school officials.

   A student-authored booklet, "A Study of the Gwynns Falls Stream" was distributed to interested area teachers and school administrators.

VI. Limitations

1. Perhaps the greatest obstacle to be encountered in attempting to implement an environmental studies program is that of scheduling. Many schools are so regimented that it may be difficult for students and teachers to find the time needed for these activities. Since such a diversity of specific problems may arise here, it would be beyond the scope of this document to attempt a solution to all of them.

2. It may be possible to offer "time-trades" with other teachers. They may, for example, be much more willing to give up some of their lab or classtime in exchange for some of yours. It may be possible to convince athletic departments that an outside activity such as an all-school cleanup may be a worthy substitute for gym classes one day. Such tactics as these are only beginnings, but as enthusiasm grows among the students, faculty, and administration the possibilities are endless until finally the whole school may choose to revolve around an environmental theme.

3. One must also consider the possibility of alienating the local industrial polluters. This can be avoided by taking a positive rather than a negative approach to the pollution problem. It is better to ask, "How can we work together to alleviate the problem?" If tact is used, you may find that industry is as interested as you are in working toward a solution and may even contribute in helping solve problems. A strong word of caution might be given to those who are impulsive and impatient in their dealing with the public at large.

   "Resolving in essence the quest of human survival and the quality of human life on a planet of fragile hospitality - this is an issue which must become of immediate concern to all segments of society." Ecotactics, Part VII.

VII. Bibliography and Resources

Abelson, H. I., Persuasion, Springer Publishing Co., New York City, 1959.

Hall, D. M., Dynamics of Group Action, The Interstate Printers & Publishers, Inc., Danville, Ill., 1964.

Hillcourt, William, Field Book of Nature Activities and Conservation, G. F. Putnam's Sons, New York City, 1961.

Social and Political Factors

Hovland, C. I., A. A. Lumsdaine, and F. D. Sheffield, Experiments on Mass Communications, Princeton University Press, 1949.

Mann, John, Changing Human Behavior (Chapter 8, "Attitude Change Produced by Interpersonal Influence"), Charles Scribner's Sons, New York City, 1965.

Mitchell, John C., and C. L. Stallings (eds.), Sierra Club Handbook for Environment Activists: Ecotactics, Pocket Books, New York City, 1965.

Phillips, Edwin A., Field Ecology, D. C. Heath & Co., Boston, 1965. This is a BSCS Lab Block for high school students.

The Hampshire Environmental Information Center (HEIC) in cooperation with the Coalition for Environmental Quality (CEQ), University of Massachusetts, Amherst, Mass. This Center is intended to provide the Northeast area with one centralized point for the collection and dissemination of information related to environmental matters.

J. Moviemaking

I. Introduction

Movies are an innovative, motivational teaching technique which stimulate student interest, learning, and creativity. A movie project provides students with the opportunity to interact with peers and teachers to develop skills in the various areas involved in this type of activity and to increase understanding of the subject being covered. With adequate planning a moviemaking project can be introduced at any level, elementary through college. The complexity of the project depends on the age group involved.

II. Questions

1. Elementary level - The moviemaking project should be an integral part of a specified unit of study designed to make it more meaningful to the students.

   a. How would you like to make a movie about _____?

   b. What are some of the things we might have in our movie?

   c. What are some things our movie should tell people?

   d. What are some of the jobs we must do to make the movie?

   It might be feasible at this time to discuss the specific area or areas the film should include and a format of possible scenes.

2. High school level - The questions and discussions will be at a higher level of complexity.

   a. What is the aim of the movie?

   b. What effect is the movie trying to create?

   c. What message is to be made by the film?

   d. What equipment will be needed for the project?

   e. What time limitations are involved?

   f. Should we film all the facts on the subject being covered?

   g. Who is going to do the filming?

Social and Political Factors

The moviemaking project at this level provides an excellent opportunity for teamwork, because the students can become involved in the more refined areas of this type of activity.

III. Equipment

1. Movie camera
2. Film
3. Light meter
4. Tripod
5. Editing equipment
6. Projector and screen
7. Lighting equipment
8. Notebooks

IV. Procedure

1. Decide on suitable areas for filmmaking activities.
2. Plan an itinerary that will provide as much sequence as possible.
3. Break students into teams to work on various aspects of the movie. Students should be working in their interest area. Teams might be assigned to:
   a. Care and cleaning of equipment.
   b. Arrange for lighting.
   c. Arrange for filming on private land (good public relations experience).
   d. Do the filming.
   e. Arrange for or do film development.
   f. Edit the film.

V. Previous Studies

Several groups in the Water Pollution Program (WPP) at Tilton School were successful in making suitable movies on water pollution. These can be obtained by contacting the program

coordinator. The paragraph below was written after 2 days of filming. A list of scenes filmed also appears.

"The purpose of this movie is to follow a river from its headwaters to the Atlantic Ocean, showing the effects of human activites on the river. As we started to do this, we noticed we could divide the river into three parts. The first part is at the headwaters of the Fowler River which flows from Mt. Cardigan to Newfound Lake. In this section there are no human activities to affect the river. At Newfound Lake, the first influences of human activities are noticed as the lake is widely used for recreation. At this point the second phase of the movie starts. The outlet of Newfound Lake runs into the Pemigewaset River a few miles downstream. The Pemigewaset, polluted at this point, runs through Bristol to Franklin, where it meets the Winnipesaukee River and becomes the Merrimack River. The second phase ends up with the Merrimack flowing to Concord. Along this phase we see the introduction of human activities which will later increase. The third phase follows the Merrimack from Concord through all the towns along the river, until it empties into the Atlantic Ocean. Along this part of the river we observe the effects of heavy human activity upon the river. To give a better picture of what we wish to portray, we will be using one movie and two slide projectors running at timed intervals with the movie projector.

"Slides: the slides will be taken to show the area where the scene was shot. They will be used as a transition element, pulling some of the scenes together.

"Scenes That Have Been Shot

Scene 1. Sunrise on Mt. Cardigan. Shot at two frames per second. The first 30 seconds will be seen without slides as the sun jumps up.	Time: 90 seconds
Scene 2. Water dripping from a rock. This shows the water as it first seeps down the rocks.	Time: 45 seconds
Scene 3. Water pool. Shot from just below scene 2.	Time: 15 seconds
Scene 4. Moss and Stream. The stream joins with another.	Time: 26 seconds
Scene 5. Water bugs in pool. Used zoom to capture bugs.	Time: 20 seconds
Scene 6. Waterfall	Time: 20 seconds

Scene 7. Bullfrog and bubbles.
Just below falls. Time: 15 seconds

Scene 8. Welton Falls trail.
First shot on the Fowler River.
This stream is much larger than
those in the previous scenes. The
slides will serve as a transition. Time: 15 seconds

Scene 9. Small waterfalls along Fowler. Time: 25 seconds

Scene 10. From bridge to Fowler.
As in scene 8 there is a great jump
in the size of the stream. So
slides will be used as a transition. Time: 15 seconds

Scene 11. From lichen to suds.
Focus through lichen to suds. Time: 11 seconds

Scene 12. Spider web Time: 20 seconds

The scenes listed above were shot for part 1. Those that follow are for part 3.

Scene 1. Pan bridge to boats off pier.
Newburyport. Time: 20 seconds

Scene 2. Boats in bay off pier.
Newburyport. Time: 15 seconds

Scene 3. Shooting toward Plum Island.
Newburyport. Time: 15 seconds

Scene 4. Below Rt. 495 bridge of river
and trees at Haverhill. Time: 15 seconds

Scene 5. At Lawrence, looking upstream
from bridge on south side. Time: 15 seconds

Scene 6. At Lawrence, effluent and
steam pipes taken from bridge. Time: 15 seconds

Scene 7. At Lawrence, effluent pipe
taken from bridge. Time: 15 seconds

Scene 8. Looking upstream from bridge
on the north side. Time: 15 seconds

Scene 9. At Lawrence, looking down-
stream from bridge on north side. Time: 15 seconds

Social and Political Factors

"In a communications class, some juniors in high school made movies as a substitute for term papers. In a high school science class, students made a documentary movie on pollution and the environment.

"We have found in our experiences that one must focus on a scene for at least 12 seconds, as it takes a viewer that long to comprehend and enjoy the scene."

VI. Limitations

In some schools the cost of the equipment may be prohibitive. Thorough investigation of various sources indicates that some companies are quite willing to donate necessary equipment. The local camera store might be a possible source.

Students using the equipment should be carefully versed in its operation.

VII. Bibliography

Hughes, Robert, Film Book I, the Audience and the Filmmaker, Grove Press, Inc., New York City, 1959. This is a book for both teacher and student. It is "concerned with the situation of the serious filmmaker - how he works and what he is up against." The chapter which presents an interview with Fellini is most exciting.

Monier, P., The Complete Techniques of Making a Film, Amphoto, New York City, 1960. This is a book for the individual who has never picked up a camera before. It can be as a reference by junior high school students and older.

Peters, J. L. M., Teaching and the Film, International Documents Service, UNESCO, New York City, 1966. This book on the techniques of filmmaking can be used by the high school student.

K. Making Film Loops

I. Introduction

The film loop is a good way to stimulate interest and discussion on any topic; loops are 5 minutes long. If the student participates in the making of one of these on the water pollution problem, he is able to transmit his feelings to others by another communication media.

II. Questions

1. To lead into the activity ask students:

   a. Are the movies and other audiovisual aids that we have representative of this locality?

   b. What do you think would make a better presentation?

   c. Where do you think we should go to make a film loop?

2. To initiate activity ask students:

   a. Who would like to try to make a film loop?

   b. What do you think will make this an effective film loop?

3. To continue the activity ask students:

   a. How could this benefit other persons in our community?

   b. What can we do to make this available to other people?

4. To evaluate the students' performance consider such questions as:

   a. Did everyone contribute to this activity?

   b. Is the loop representative of the community's pollution problem?

   c. Is this loop representative of the pupils' concept of the pollution problem?

III. Equipment

1. Super 8mm or 8 mm movie camera

2. Film

3. Light Meter

4. Tripod

5. Editing equipment

6. Film loop projector and screen

7. Flood lights (if necessary)

Some companies will donate equipment or money to schools that are planning to have the students make movies.

IV. Procedure

1. Make a survey of your community to find suitable areas.

2. Plan an itinerary that will provide as much sequence as possible.

3. Make a definite plan and format for taking the film footage.

4. Edit your film.

5. Have a loop made of the edited film (send it out for loading).

6. Add sound track if desired.

V. Previous Studies

At Germantown Academy Biology 1 and 2 students did loops to demonstrate standard methods in biology laboratory techniques. These loops are now used by the students to prepare for lab.

VI. Limitations

1. Photographic equipment of good quality should be available.

2. The cost of needed materials may be prohibitive for some situations.

3. Individuals undertaking this project should have an adequate knowledge of the problem areas in the community.

4. There should be a thorough understanding of the limitations of camera that is to be used for this project.

VII. Bibliography

Hughes, Robert, Film Book I, the Audience and the Filmmaker, Grove Press, Inc., New York City, 1959. This is a book for both teacher and student. It is "concerned with the situation of the serious filmmaker - how he works and what he is up against." The chapter which presents an interview with Fellini is most exciting.

Monier, P., The Complete Techniques of Making a Film, Amphoto, New York City, 1960. This is a book written for the individual who has never picked up a camera before. This book can be used by junior high school students and older.

Peters, J. L. M., Teaching and the Film, International Documents Service, UNESCO, New York City, 1966. This is a book on the techniques of film making, which can be used by high school students.

Social and Political Factors

L. Nonreturnable Containers

I. Introduction

This activity allows students to identify and react effectively to the problem of nonbiodegradable containers. Basic questions are provided; however, it is projected that questions will be posed by students that will require considerable class discussion. This activity may be carried out by junior and senior high students.

II. Questions

1. To lead to the activity ask:

   a. What varieties of nonreturnable containers are produced?

   b. What disposal methods are used by private and public communities?

   c. Does disposal present a problem? (If so, specify.)

2. Initiate the activity by asking:

   a. How can our concern for this problem be channeled?

   b. Is an advertising campaign the method to follow?

   c. Can our aid help mitigate the problem?

3. Continue the activity with:

   a. What public agencies and companies should be contacted for information?

   b. Is it plausible to appeal to the public through small projects under the auspices of various organizations such as the school?

   c. In what manner can the greatest success be achieved?

4. Evaluate the students by considering:

   a. Is success for this type of project possible on a large scale?

   b. Has personal involvement increased?

   c. Has community concern and cooperation increased at all?

III. Equipment

1. Trash cans filled with various types of nonreturnable containers

2. Photos of dumps or other areas used for the deposit of these containers

3. Maps and data for recording survey

IV. Procedure

1. Large group opening of class-teacher will utilize the discussion from Part II and/or provide articles for the students to read and evaluate in small groups and report on to the large group. (Articles identifying the problem posed with nonbiodegradeable containers.)

2. The teacher will invite the students to form their own group to evaluate the problem of nonbiodegradeables in their community. Areas for investigation might include: pathways for container wastes; compilation of material examples of nonbiodegradeables (NBD); companies that make, sell, and service NBD containers for our community; and an overview on the recycling of NBD materials.

3. Small group activity to plan approaches to the various offenders in order to communicate directly with them and discuss from the standpoint of either recycling or non-production ways to correct the problem.

V. Past Studies

A group of students at Germantown Academy became aware of the possibilities of recycling and started a chain letter to others urging a boycott of nonreturnable beverage containers. They also prepared a model legislative package for use on a state level.

VI. Limitations

1. The students must be encouraged continually to make their investigations seriously, particularly when approaching businessmen and manufacturers.

2. It is important for the student to value what he is investigating. The investigation should be of the student's own volition, and the teacher must allow for individual differences in approach to the issue.

3. The students must not be led into thinking change will occur overnight; however, they should, on the other hand be encouraged to be persistent in their efforts and thorough in their followup.

VII. Bibliography

Periodicals nowadays feature nonbiodegradeables frequently. If a file is begun on the subject by clipping newspapers and weekly news journals, a supply of information will develop quite quickly.

M. Anti-pollution Art

I. Introduction

This activity gives students a chance to express their personal attitudes towards pollution through creative art forms. Students will become more aware of the environmental crisis, and through their art, pass this awareness on to others. This activity can be used with any age group and requires no background or artistic ability.

II. Questions

1. To lead into the activity ask some questions similar to the following:

   a. How can we communicate our concern about the pollution problem to others?

   b. Could posters, collages, and other art forms be useful in communicating this concern?

2. To actually start the activity ask:

   a. What materials could be used in making this art?

   b. Should we run an antipollution art contest?

3. To continue the activity, ask questions like:

   a. Should we use slogans, humor, and cliches in our posters?

   b. If we run a contest, who will be involved? Just the class, one grade, the entire school, the whole community?

   c. Should there be a prize as an incentive for this contest?

4. To evaluate the students' efforts:

   a. Who is doing the activity, and with how much interest and enthusiasm is he going about it?

   b. How well has each student planned his project?

   c. Are the participants working?

III. Equipment

1. Litter (have the students collect this themselves)

2. Glue

3. Magic markers

4. Poster paper

5. Paints and brushes (Note: if posters are to be displayed outdoors, be sure to use weatherproof paint.)

6. Lots of enthusiasm and imagination

IV. Procedure

1. Be enthusiastic and interested about this project and your students will be too. Start off by taking your class to the scene of actual pollution: a nearby river, pond, beach, etc.

2. Have them observe the pollution and react to it, then start collecting the trash, some of which may be used in the actual making of their art projects.

3. Plan the project and collect any additional materials to be used in individual projects.

4. Begin to create an expression of your attitudes about pollution, using unique materials and ideas.

V. Previous Studies

1. One school recently held an environmental art contest for Earth Day (1970) in which not only posters and collages were entered, but also an assortment of oddities ranging from mobiles to a piece of artwork made using an old toilet. The contest was judged by certain faculty and student members of the environmental pollution class at the school, and prizes consisted of humorous, yet anti-pollution type gifts, such as waste paper baskets and fly swatters (instead of DDT).

2. The team from Beta Group, Tilton School in New Hampshire, decided that the items of metal trash were heavy enough to require welding. "Some of the collection we had to work with resembled parts of animals and plants to us. Pieces were spread out on the floor and arranged and rearranged by trial and error. We adopted the theme that pollution

is killing our natural flora and fauna, so in the future man might only be able to enjoy synthetic plants and animals made from these pollutants.

"We produced a crane or heron-type bird, a cattail, a turtle, and a skull, and crossbones. We made a sign by bending wire to form the words: pollution era-flora and fauna. These we stapled to a plank with a tacker stapler and balanced the sign on another item from the collection."

VI. Limitations

1. Few posters will be produced if students are not enthusiastic or if the activity is not publicized enough.

2. Posters placed outdoors become weather-beaten, colors may run.

3. If a contest is held, it could last too long.

4. Students should be allowed ample time to plan and work on their projects.

5. A contest with prizes would probably be more suitable for younger students (up through junior high) than for high school and up.

6. Heavy metal items may require welding, but are worth examining for other methods of joining. Welding could be done in the school maintenance shop, the vocational education shop or any privately-owned shop where the operator can be interested in helping the group with the project.

7. Cast iron pieces are difficult and costly to weld to steel pieces.

VII. Bibliography

Lynch, John, How to Make Collages, Viking Press, New York City, 1961.

Rottger, Ernst, Creative Paper Design, Reinhold Book Corp., New York City, 1968.

Schwartz, Therese, Plastic Sculpture and Collage, Hearthside Press, Great Neck, N. Y., 1969.

Seyd, Mary, Designing with String, Watson-Guptill, Inc., New York City, 1967.

N. Modelmaking

I. Introduction

This activity interests the students in making models of buildings, plants, and equipment. In this project, for all grades, it is intended that the students will do research on models thus learning about the control of pollution.

II. Questions

1. Lead to the activity by asking: what buildings or equipment can be found that help control pollution?

2. Initiate the activity with:

   a. How could you build a model of this kind?

   b. What materials could you use to make this?

   c. Would you make an actual working model or a cardboard one?

3. Continue the activity with:

   a. How would you make it work if you make a working model?

   b. What would a model like this show people who do not know about sewage plants, buildings, and equipment?

4. To evaluate students, ask:

   a. Is the model well constructed for the time allotted?

   b. If it is a working model, does it work correctly?

   c. Does the student know how it works; could he explain the process?

   d. Does the student feel he has gained an understanding of why we have such plants?

III. Equipment

1. Working model

   a. Cement mixture

   b. Sand, rocks, etc.

c. Motor to run mixing device

d. Aeration device

e. Settling tank

f. Glass tubing

g. Glue (waterproof)

h. Paint

i. Labels

2. Nonworking model

a. Cardboard and boxes

b. Paint

c. Glue

d. Glass tubing

e. Wood splints

f. Pins

g. Settling basin (small washing basin)

h. Sand and gravel

i. Labels

IV. Procedure

1. Make or get a blueprint of your idea.

2. Do research as to how it works and material needed for construction.

3. Construct the model.

4. Paint parts as necessary.

5. Label parts.

Social and Political Factors

V. Previous Studies

Models often serve as the best illustration of things too large to see all at once. At Germantown Academy, two topographical maps (approximately 32 x 8 feet each) are under construction to show the entire Wissahickon Valley watershed and the school campus. When completed, the model will be mounted on the side walls of the science lecture hall. Several overlays will be used to illustrate biological, bacteriological, chemical, social, and political aspects of the watershed.

VI. Limitations

1. Materials may be hard to work with.

2. Glue may be hard to work with (watery, not flowing, etc.).

3. Time may be too short.

4. Small models take a long time to filter materials, thus patience is needed.

5. Projects may leak.

VII. Bibliography

"Aquarius . . . New Concept in Water Treatment," Neptune Micro Floc, Inc., Neptune Meter Co., Oregon.

Goodman, Brian, Package Plant Criteria Development, National Sanitation Foundation, Michigan, 1966.

Municipal Sewage Treatment Processes, U. S. Department of Health, Education, and Welfare, Washington, D. C.

Sewer and Sewage Treatment Plant Construction Cost Index, FWPCA Division of Construction Grants, Washington, D. C.

O. Student Planning of a Pollution Assembly

I. Introduction

This activity is designed to motivate students to plan a slide show on their local pollution problems to be shown at a school assembly. Such an assembly might act as a springboard to further activities on a larger scale if it is successful in bringing an awareness of local conditions to the student body. An assembly of this kind can be planned and produced by students at any level. Since it is possible to classify pollution into four categories: air, water, sight, and sound. With minor variations, this activity could be done with a tape recorder concentrating on sound pollution.

II. Questions

1. Lead to the activity by asking:

   a. Is the student body as a whole aware of our local pollution problems?

   b. What might we do to make them aware?

   c. Does merely telling them about pollution have as great an effect as showing it to them?

   d. Would a slide show, illustrating pollution in our city, town, be interesting to the students?

2. Questions which initiate the activity:

   a. Which sights in our area are particularly offensive?

   b. What pictures would really have an effect on the students in our school?

   c. Have any areas become polluted recently so that they might remember them as they were before?

   d. Are there any areas of potential natural beauty which have been spoiled by pollution?

3. Questions which continue the activity:

   a. Should we focus it on one site, showing it from many angles, times of the day, etc., or should we expand to cover many sights in the area?

b. Are there rivers that become more polluted as you pioneered downstream so that you could show a progression from beauty to pollution?

c. Should we have a sound track to accompany the slides?

d. Should we break up into groups in order to produce the show (i.e., editors, directors, photographers, sound coordinators, projection men, tape or record technicians, etc.)?

4. Questions which help the teacher evaluate the students' efforts:

a. Does the student try to produce a show which will have an effect on others or is he merely doing what he thinks is interesting? (Of course, he could be doing both successfully.)

b. How did the students and teachers in the audience react?

c. Did any long-term projects result from the assembly?

d. Were these or other students motivated to become involved in further assembly programs in the school?

III. Equipment

1. Cameras

2. Projector and screen

3. Tape recorder or record player (if a sound track will accompany slides)

IV. Procedure

1. The organization should be accomplished in the classroom. The activity can be accomplished in two ways depending on your circumstances. A class field trip approach may be utilized to take the pictures or students may be organized to take the pictures on their own time after school.

2. The students should agree on the total impact they wish to create on the audience and conscientiously strive for it. Most of this will occur during editing and arranging of the slides and coordinating of sound.

3. Sufficient time must be allowed for the slides to be developed and returned.

4. A date must be arranged for the assembly so that the students have a goal and real purpose to work towards.

5. After slides are obtained, the real work begins. They must be arranged and edited to create the desired effect. It may sometimes even be necessary to cut out good slides if there is an overabundance; one or two slides of certain scenes are sometimes more shocking than a dozen. The level of sophistication in coordinating sound and slides will vary according to available equipment and the students' talents; however, they should be aware that the two do interact with each other and if used carefully can become a real asset to the production.

6. There may or may not be any introduction or narration, depending again on the total effect desired by the students.

V. Past Studies

Young people seem to enjoy nothing more than working with cameras these days and the results of their efforts are often surprising. A group of students at Tilton School produced a film and slide show titled "The River" which they eventually showed to the participants of the water pollution program and which they plan to enter in an amateur film contest.

These students took about a week to complete filming. They began with a spring at the top of Cardigan Mountain in New Hampshire and followed the path it took to reach the Atlantic Ocean. The beginning slides included beautiful pastoral scenes, but these soon gave way to scenes of extreme pollution. As the spring became a stream and the stream a river, it passed the Franconia Paper Mill, which in 1954 contributed 96% of the pollution in the Pemigewasset River. Moving through Franklin, N. H., the Pemigewasset becomes the Merrimack River, and the students continued taking scenes of pollution in Concord, Manchester, and on into Massachusetts. After the picture taking was finished and the slides had been returned, we edited and added sound with a tape recorder. (Later this became a multi-media show and the students added a motion picture film in the center, showing their slides on both sides of it.)

VI. Limitations

Most schools have slide projectors as well as tape recorders or record players. Many suitable cameras are available or, if not, either the teacher, the students, or their parents can usually make one or several available for use. The class may decide to share the cost of having the slides developed or the school may have money available for this purpose. If none of the

above is true, try asking the local camera store to lend you a camera and necessary equipment. In short, equipment is not a limitation. However, some problems may be encountered in travel if the sites chosen are not within walking distance. The problems here depend on the size of the class of the group actually doing the photography. Car pools might be organized among the parents and the group can be broken down into smaller units. Perhaps each unit could be in charge of photographing only one site thus reducing the total number who must visit each site.

VII. Bibliography and Resources

Blaker, Alfred A., Photography for Scientific Publication, W. H. Freeman and Co., San Francisco, Calif., 1965. This is especially good for techniques on small objects, insects, etc.

Boucher, Paul Edward, The Fundamentals of Photography, (3rd ed.), Van Nostrand Publishers, New York City, 1955. This is a good book for the fundamentals of working a camera and is also available in 4th edition, 1963.

There are many good books on the fundamentals of photography - your selection need only take into account the level of sophistication of your equipment.

P. Role Playing

I. Introduction

This activity is designed to familiarize students of 7th grade level and up with the function of local government and how they can take part in a town's decision making process. The setting is the local Town Hall where a special meeting has been called to consider the proposal that motor boating be banned on a nearby lake.

II. Questions

1. To lead into the activity, ask:

   What type of people would you expect to find present at a local town meeting on this issue?

2. To initiate and continue the activity, ask:

   a. Why would these people act and think as they do?

   b. Where could you find information on each character role?

   c. Which character would you like to be (followed by character assignments)?

3. To continue the activity, ask the students:

   Why they are playing the roles the way they are?

4. To evaluate the activity, ask the students to write a reaction paper. Note whether they really understand what was going on. Recapitulate the activity with the students to assure that they followed the development.

   If a tape recording has been made, this will be helpful. If more than one class has been recorded, play the tapes so that the classes may compare their activities.

III. Equipment

A tape recorder

IV. Procedure

1. Students are asked to imagine what various special interest actions could be expected to be in attendance at the town meeting and what statistics and facts these people might use to support their position.

2. Students are encouraged to identify with one of these factions by imagining themselves in this role for a few days prior to the actual meeting. See past studies in Section V.

3. Follow these tips on parliamentary procedure:

   a. Always wait until the moderator has recognized you before you begin to take the floor.

   b. Always stand when speaking.

   c. Always be courteous as you present your argument. Do not state opinions without being able to draw examples and give proof. Be accurate about dates and statistics.

   d. Do not ask a question directly to or speak to other members in the audience - always put such matters through the Chair.

   e. If you propose an amendment to the article in question, do not forget that the amendment must be prepared as a motion, seconded and then voted upon separately before going to the original question for ratification.

   f. Address the moderator as Mr. Chairman or Mr. Moderator.

   g. If there are many people trying to be recognized at the same time, you must stand and wait until you have an opportunity to speak.

   h. You may through the Chair ask for an opinion from any of the local town officials (i. e., town counsel, local board of health official, local planning board official, town engineer).

V. Past Studies

Procedures outlined in Section IV were carried out. Discussion of the motor boating ban article was lively and enjoyable and lasted for an hour and 15 minutes. Suggested characters which were used in this particular role play were:

1. Chamber of Commerce president or member: enthusiastic about the possibilities for making money on tourist trade in the area. Feels that preventing people from using powered craft at the lake will cause people who plan to develop property around this region into motels, ice cream stands, hamburger stands, and other franchises to lose the money they invested.

2. Members of a rapidly organized group who call themselves "The Lake Boat Owners and Water Skiers Federation" (sports loving, "Pepsi-generation" types).

3. Local members of real estate and brokerage firms feel that both they and people from cities would be discriminated against.

4. A representative from your school (pick your own character).

5. A private lot and boat owner who has recently received permission through the planning board to build a cottage on the lake. He feels that such a ruling would be unfair to him since he assumed that when he invested the majority of his life savings in this recreational area that there would be no restrictions on his recreational activities.

6. An old resident who is basically fed up with newcomers intruding more and more into what had been to him an area of peace and tranquility for as long as he can remember.

7. A poorly-motivated individual who is a rather shady character and has a personal financial interest in selling a product which he claims will eliminate oil scum.

8. Local representative of the John Birch Society who sees this bill as another example of unnecessary social control which is detrimental to the American traditional concept of personal freedom.

9. Representative of local Conservation Committee who wishes to preserve the natural beauty and environmental quality of the area.

10. Moderator of the town meeting.

Participants found useful in their role participation, the brief guide to parliamentary procedure which is included in the procedure section.

VI. Limitations

1. Students may have no experience in role playing or parliamentary discussion. It may be useful to spend 10 minutes in a dry run dealing with the suggested issue.

2. A student with a rather forceful personality is needed as the moderator.

3. Students must have the time to obtain a thorough knowledge of their role and how it relates to the issue in order to guarantee enthusiastic participation.

VII. Bibliography

If possible, select games the students are familiar with and use the rule books as a basis of discussion.

☆U.S. GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE: 1972 514-146/30 1-3

A CURRICULUM ACTIVITIES GUIDE TO

WATER POLLUTION AND ENVIRONMENTAL STUDIES

UNITED STATES ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY

APPENDICES

VOLUME 2

A CURRICULUM ACTIVITIES GUIDE

TO

WATER POLLUTION

and

ENVIRONMENTAL STUDIES:

APPENDICES

U. S. ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY
OFFICE OF WATER PROGRAMS
MANPOWER DEVELOPMENT STAFF
TRAINING GRANTS BRANCH

1972

For sale by the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C., 20402 - Price $2.25

This guide was prepared by the Tilton Water Pollution Program, financed by Grant No. 1TT1-WP-41-01 and supplemental grants from Training Grants Branch, Office of Water Programs, Environmental Protection Agency and by a grant from the Ford Foundation. The work of editing and compiling the guide was done by:

John T. Hershey
Head, Science Department
Germantown Academy
Fort Washington, Pennsylvania

Albert L. Powers
Head, Science Department
Brewster Academy
Wolfeboro, New Hampshire

Stephen P. McLoy
Teacher of Political Theory
Tilton School
Tilton, New Hampshire

Alan D. Sexton
Teacher of Science
George School
Newtown, Pennsylvania

Information on revisions and additionally planned volumes of the guide may be obtained from:

Training Grants Branch
Office of Water Programs
U. S. Environmental Protection Agency
Washington, D. C. 20460

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Appendix

1. WATER QUALITY PARAMETERS A-1

A. Chemistry A-1

1. Acid Base Parameters A-1

a. Acidity A-1
b. Alkalinity A-9
c. pH A-13

2. Dissolved Gases A-14

a. CO_2 . . . . . A-14
b. Chlorine A-14
c. Dissolved Oxygen A-15

3. Dissolved and Suspended Solids A-19

a. Chloride A-19
b. Hardness-Calcium, Magnesium, Total A-21
c. Iron A-24
d. Nitrate A-25
e. Nitrite A-26
f. Phosphate A-26
g. Sulfate A-28
h. Turbidity A-30

4. Oxygen Demand A-31

5. Interpretation A-37

6. Bibliography A-44

B. Bacteriology A-45

1. Total Coliform A-45

2. Fecal Coliform A-46

3. Fecal Streptococci A-48

234

4. General Procedures A-49

a. Sterilization A-49
b. Preparation of Media A-50
c. Preparation of Solutions A-53
d. Collection of Water Sample A-55
e. Filtration Volumes - Selection and Dilution . . A-55
f. Preparation of Filter for Incubation A-59
g. Incubation A-62
h. Counting Techniques A-63
i. Disposal of Cultures A-65

5. Bibliography A-65

C. Aquatic Biology A-67

1. The Basis of the Biological Evaluation of Pollution A-67

2. The Identification of Aquatic Organisms A-68

3. Biological Field Methods A-96

a. Benthos A-96
b. Periphyton or Aufwuchs A-105
c. Plankton A-105
d. Nekton A-106
e. Sample Data Sheets A-107

4. Biological Laboratory Methods A-123

a. Benthos A-123
b. Periphyton or Aufwuchs A-123
c. Plankton A-124
d. Nekton A-125
e. Bioassays and Biomonitoring A-125
f. Diversity Indices A-127

5. The Significance and Interpretation of Biological Data A-128

6. Bibliography A-140

D. Engineering and Physics A-142

1. Mapping A-142

Appendix

2. Flow A-144

a. Velocity A-145
b. Volume A-146
c. References A-146

E. Computer Applications A-148

1. Stream A-148

2. DIV A-154

3. DIVERS A-158

4. DPLØT A-161

5. ANALYZE A-165

6. STR-CLAS A-173

2. IMPLEMENTATION A-186

A. Cost A-186

B. Scheduling A-187

C. Motivation A-187

3. LIMITATIONS A-189

A. Time and Transportation A-189

B. Methods and Equipment A-189

C. Dealing with Owners A-190

4. EVALUATION A-191

5. BIBLIOGRAPHY A-193

A. Core References A-194

B. Additional References A-197

236

Appendix

C. Periodicals A-198

D. Movies A-199

E. Equipment A-204

6. WATER POLLUTION AND ENVIRONMENTAL GLOSSARY A-206

7. LABORATORY AND/OR FIELD SAFETY A-249

A. General Comments A-249

B. Bacterial Studies A-250

C. Chemistry A-251

D. Field Trips A-251

237

Appendix I Water Quality Parameters

This appendix is included as a technical reference aid to teachers using this guide. It is organized in four parts: (A) Chemistry, (B) Bacteriology, (C) Aquatic Biology, and (D) Engineering and Physics.

A. Chemistry

Chemical parameters are quite specific, can be quantitated relatively quickly and precisely, and can be related to water quality requirements. It is seldom feasible or worthwhile to apply all analytical procedures to a given water sample. However, certain analyses are performed more or less routinely on water samples and are included in this section.

Each part includes an identification of the selected parameter and its common sources. This is followed by a description of the chemistry involved in the more common approaches to the analysis of that parameter. The procedures include references to commercial testing kits and, in some instances, detailed instructions for those who do not have access to commercial kits.

Commercial kits provide effective approaches to rapid and reasonably accurate analyses, especially when time, facilities and lack of trained personnel are limiting factors. Consequently, the procedures include references to the following commercial units:

Delta Model 50 Portable Laboratory, Delta Scientific Corp., Lindenhurst, New York 11757

Hach DR-EL Portable Engineer's Laboratory, Hach Chemical Co., Ames, Iowa 50010

LaMotte Model #AM-21, LaMotte Chemical Products Co., Chestertown, Maryland 21620.

These kits have been identified only because they proved satisfactory during the development of this program. This endorsement does not imply superiority to other units that may be commercially available.

An annotated bibliography appears at the end of this section. The listings include those references which should be readily available when investigating chemical parameters of pollution.

1. Acid-Base Parameters

a. Acidity

Acidity, a measure of the ability of a water sample to neutralize hydroxide (OH^-) ions, is subdivided into free (mineral), un-ionized (weak acid) and total forms. The chemical species which neutralizes the hydroxide ion is

identified as the hydrogen (H^+) ion and is present in all water samples.

Some of the substances which contribute to acidity (i.e., serve as sources of hydrogen ions) are depicted in Fig. 1. Direct hydrogen ion donors are depicted within the circle while those outside the circle provide hydrogen ions directly.

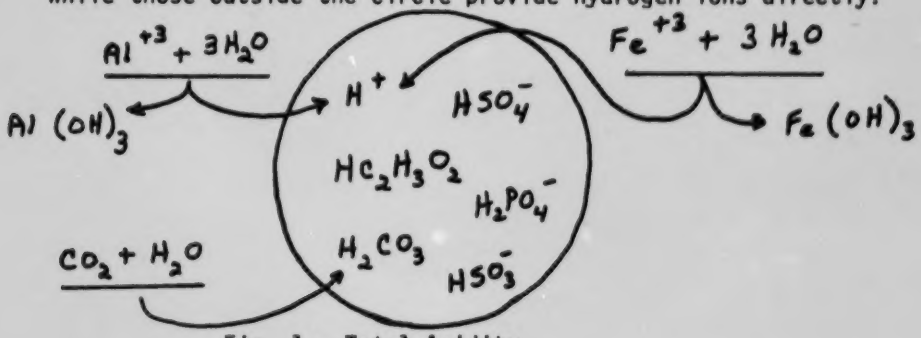


Fig. 1 - Total Acidity

1) Free Acidity

All acids contain hydrogen; however, certain acid compounds readily dissociate to form H^+ ions in water solution.[1] This dissociated (free) form of the hydrogen ion is known as free acid (Fig. 2) and is a component of industrial wastes and drainage from sulfide-rich terrain.

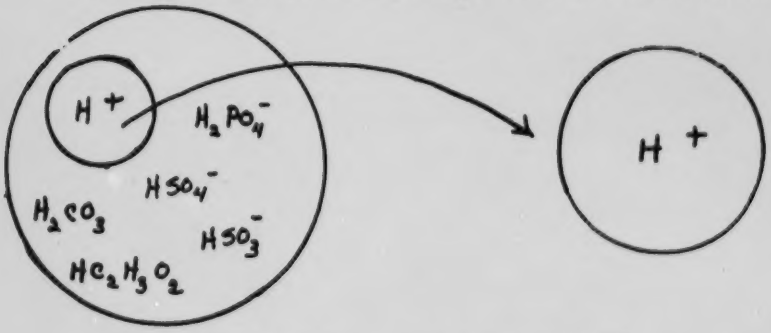


Fig. 2 - Free Acidity vs. Total Acidity

[1] The H^+ is bound with water in forms such as H_3O^+ but will be considered as H^+ throughout this guide.

When hydroxide ions are added to an acidic water sample, they react with the free acid to form water, thus resulting in a decrease in the free acidity (Fig. 3). The quantity of hydroxide ions needed to reach the methyl orange end-point is considered a measure of free acidity.

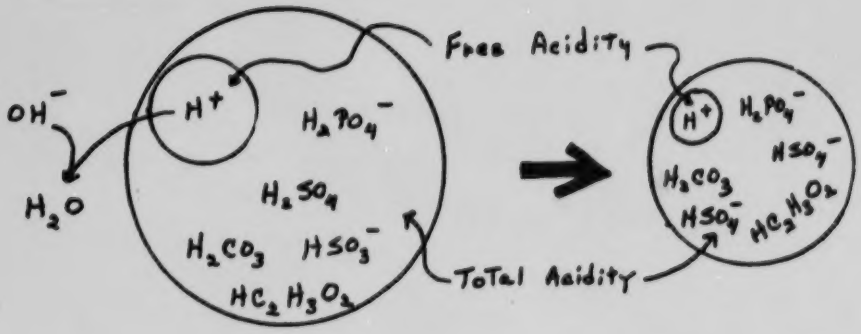


Fig. 3 - Free Acid Titration

a) Procedure

(1) The Hach and LaMotte kits do not provide instructions for free acidity determinations. However, it is possible to extend their CO_2 procedures to include free acidity measurements by titrating to a methyl orange end-point before going on the phenolphthalein end-point as follows:

1. Prepare the sample as described in Step 1 of the kit procedures.

2. Add 1 drop of methyl orange indicator (see (3) below). If the solution is orange-yellow, the free acidity is not measurable. Continue with step 2 of the kit procedure if a bound acidity value is desired.

3. Titrate with the titration reagent designated for the kit's CO_2 procedure until the orange-yellow end-point is obtained. If chlorine residuals interfere with the end-point determination, add 1 drop 0.1M sodium thiosulfate to a new sample and repeat stages 2 and 3.

4. Record the volume of titrant used and calculate the free acidity in the same manner as described for the CO_2 procedure. Both kits use sodium hydroxide as the titrant according to the following reaction:

$$Na^+ + OH^- + H^+ + X^- = Na^+ + X^- + H_2O$$

(X^- = any anion of a titrateable acid)

(2) The Delta kit has a free acidity procedure which utilizes the reaction just described but substitutes bromcresol green indicator for methyl orange. It is also possible to adapt the Delta CO_2 procedure to a free acidity determination as described in (1).

(3) An alternate procedure to (1) is available as follows:

Equipment:

25 ml graduated cylinder

medicine droppers

50 ml Erlenmeyer flask

burette or 1-ml pipette graduated in 0.1 ml units

Reagents:

Methyl Orange Indicator: Dissolve 0.5 g methyl orange in 1 liter of distilled water.

0.1M Sodium Thiosulfate: Dissolve 2.5 g $Na_2S_2O_3 \cdot 5\ H_2O$ in 100 ml of distilled water.

0.02M NaOH: Prepare 1M NaOH by dissolving 4 g NaOH in 100 ml of FRESHLY BOILED distilled water. Then dilute 2 ml of the stock solution to a 100 ml volume with FRESHLY BOILED distilled water.

Method:

1. Measure 10 ml of sample into the 50 ml Erlenmeyer flask.

2. Add 1 drop of methyl orange indicator. If the solution is orange-yellow, the free acidity is not measurable and should be reported accordingly.

3. Titrate the sample with .02M NaOH. Record the ml needed to reach the orange end-point. If chlorine residuals interfere with the end-point determination, add 1 drop 0.1M sodium thiosulfate to a new sample and repeat stages 2 and 3. (A reference for the end-point can be prepared by adding 1 drop of methyl orange to 10 ml of pH 4.5 solution prepared by combining 1.36 g $NaC_2H_3O_2 \cdot 3H_2O$, sodium acetate, and 10 ml 1M $HC_2H_3O_2$ with distilled water to make 100 ml solution.)

Calculations:

For uniformity, acidity is expressed as $CaCO_3$ equivalents, even though no $CaCO_3$ may be present. The equation for calculating free acidity is

$$\text{mg } CaCO_3/l = \frac{(A)\ (\text{Molarity of NaOH})}{\text{sample volume}} \cdot 50{,}000$$

If: Molarity of NaOH = 0.02M

Sample Volume = 10 ml

A = ml of 0.02M NaOH needed to attain the methyl orange end-point,

Then: mg $CaCO_3/l$ = A x 100

2) Un-ionized (Bound) Acidity (CO_2 Determination)

The acids in the larger circle of Fig. 2 account for un-ionized acidity. However, CO_2 is primary contributor to un-ionized acid levels in most samples ($H_2O + CO_2 = H_2CO_3$). Carbon dioxide commonly enters

water via absorption from the atmosphere and as an end-product of both aerobic and anaerobid biological oxidation and respiration.

Once the free acidity is decreased sufficiently by reaction with hydroxide ions, weak acids such as carbonic acid begin to release their hydrogen as free hydrogen ions (Fig. 4).

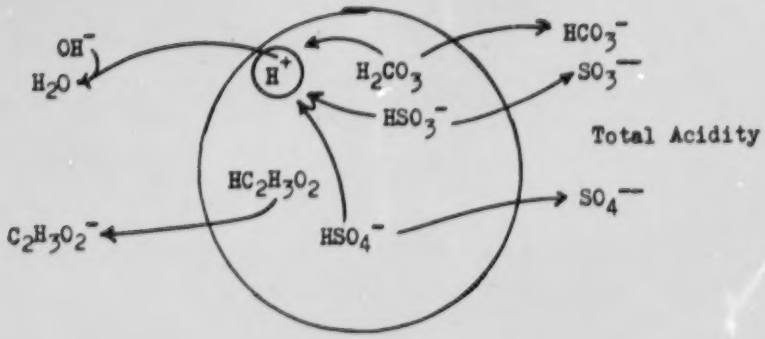


Fig. 4 - Weak Acid Titration

When enough hydroxide ions are added to reach the phenolphthalein end-point, these substances will yield most of their bound hydrogen. Consequently, a quantitative evaluation of un-ionized acidity is achieved by calculating the amount of hydroxide added.

a) Procedure

(1) The Hach, LaMotte, and Delta procedures are actually evaluations of total acidity (free and un-ionized). The free acidity in water which has a pH greater than 4.5 is not measurable. However, if the pH is less than 4.5, free acidity determinations must be completed and then subtracted from the total value obtained by means of this procedure. The reactions are:

$$2\ NaOH + H_2CO_3 = 2H_2O + Na_2CO_3 \qquad (1)$$

$$H_2O + Na_2CO_3 + CO_2 = 2\ NaHCO_3 \qquad (2)$$

Reactions (1) and (2) are employed if NaOH is the titrant. Only reaction (2) is employed if Na_2CO_3 is the titrant.

(2) The following procedure is suggested as an alternate.

Equipment:

See (3) under Free Acidity.

Reagents:

Phenolphthalein Indicator: Place 0.5 g phenolphthalein in 50 ml denatured ethanol and dilute to 100 ml with distilled water.

0.1M Sodium Thiosulfate: Refer to Free Acidity, part (3) for preparation.

0.02M NaOH: Refer to Free Acidity, part (3).

Method:

1. Measure 10 ml of the sample into the 50 ml Erlenmeyer flask.

2. Add one drop of phenolphthalein indicator. (If the solution turns pink, there is no measurable acidity.) Titrate with 0.02M NaOH until the pink phenolphthalein end-point is reached.

Calculations:

Acidity is expressed as mg/l $CaCO_3$. The un-ionized fraction may be calculated according to the following equation:

$$\text{mg } CaCO_3/l = \frac{(B)\ (\text{Molarity of NaOH})}{\text{sample volume}} \cdot 50{,}000$$

If: Molarity of NaOH = 0.02M

Sample Volume = 10 ml

B = ml of 0.02M NaOH needed to attain the phenolphthalein end-point after completing the methyl orange titration

Then: mg $CaCO_3$/l = B x 100

3) Total Acidity

Total acidity includes all hydrogen ion donors measured by titration of a water sample to the phenolphthalein end-point.

a) Procedure

(1) The CO_2 procedures in the Delta, Hach and LaMotte kits will give total acidity evaluations without modification.

(2) An alternate approach is to combine the alternate procedures suggested for free unionized acidity as follows:

1. Titrate to the methyl orange end-point and calculate free acidity if desired (see (1) on page A-6)

2. Add phenolphthalein and titrate to the phenolphthalein end-point (see (2) on page A-7)
Calculate the total acidity as mg $CaCO_3$/l = C x 100, where C = total volume of titrant used.

4) Reference

Standard Methods for the Examination of Water and Wastewater, (12th ed.), American Public Health Association, New York, 1965, pp. 46-47.

b. Alkalinity

Alkalinity is an indicator of the ability of a given water sample to neutralize or accept hydrogen (H^+) ions. Some of the substances which comprise or contribute to alkalinity within the pH range of 4.5 to 11 are depicted in Fig. 1.

The circle on the left of Fig. 1 includes several substances which accept hydrogen ions directly during alkalinity measurements (titrateable alkalinity). The circle on the right includes substance which undergo chemical changes such as the hydrolysis of water which produce hydrogen ion acceptors. Those chemical species within the overlap of the two circles may serve in both capacities. Hydroxide, carbonate, and bicarbonate ions are normally the predominating members of their respective groups.

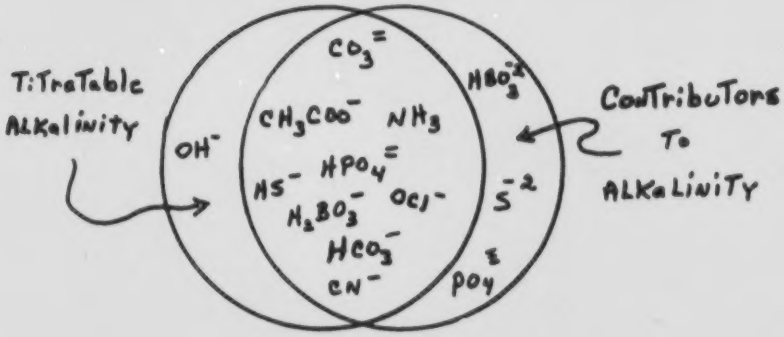


Fig. 1 - Components of Alkalinity
(pH 4.5 to 11)

Alkalinity is determined by titrating samples which are alkaline to phenolphthalein to the phenolphthalein end-point with sulfuric acid. This serves as a measure of the "phenolphthalein alkalinity" which includes nearly all hydroxides and half of the carbonates present. Titration is then continued beyond the phenolphthalein end-point to the methyl orange or bromcresol green-methyl orange. This step of the titration neutralizes the remaining half of the carbonates and the bicarbonates. The addition of the sulfuric acid volume needed to reach the phenolphthalein end-point to the amount needed to reach the methyl orange end-point leads to a calculation of the "total alkalinity."

Appendix 1

Sometimes it is desirable to attempt a calculation of the concentrations of individual contributors to alkalinity. Simplified calculation procedures summarized in Table 1 are based upon the following concepts:

(1) Hydroxides, carbonates, and bicarbonates are usually the major sources of alkalinity in natural waters.

(2) Hydroxides and bicarbonates are incapable of existing together in the same solution. (Assumed, but not true.)

(3) The hydroxide supply is essentially exhausted by titration to the phenolphthalein end-point.

(4) One-half of the carbonates is titrated upon reaching the phenolphthalein end-point.

(5) The bicarbonates and the remaining half of the carbonates are titrated when proceeding from the phenolphthalein end-point to the methyl orange end point.

Table 1. Alkalinity Relationships

TITRATION RESULT	HYDROXIDE ALKALINITY	CARBONATE ALKALINITY	BICARBONATE ALKALINITY
P=T	equals T	0	0
$P < 1/2T$	0	2P	T-2P
P=1/2T	0	T	0
$P > 1/2T$	T -2 (T-P) or 2P-T	2(T-P)	0
P=0	0	0	T

P = Phenolphthalein Alkalinity T = Total Alkalinity

1) Procedure

a) Refer to Delta, Hach, and LaMotte kits. The reactions are classical acid-base neutralizations.

$H^+ + X^- = HX$ (X^- = any anion of a weak acid)

b) The following procedure using available laboratory materials is suggested (1).

Equipment:

25 ml graduated cylinder

medicine droppers

50 ml Erlenmeyer flask

burette or 1 ml pipette graduated in 0.1 ml units

Reagents:

Methyl Orange Indicator: Dissolve 0.5 g of methyl orange in 1 liter of distilled water.

Phenolphthalein Indicator: Place 0.5 g of phenolphthalein into 50 ml of denatured ethanol and dilute to 100 ml.

0.1M Sodium Thiosulfate: Dissolve 2.5 g of $Na_2S_2O_3 \cdot 5H_2O$ in 100 ml of distilled water.

0.01M Sulfuric Acid: Add 3 ml of concentrated H_2SO_4 (18M) to 1 liter of distilled water, yielding 0.05M H_2SO_4. Dilute 20 ml 0.05M H_2SO_4 to 100 ml yielding 0.01M H_2SO_4.

Method:

1. If present, remove free residual chlorine by adding 1 drop of sodium thiosulfate to a 100 ml sample.

2. Measure a 10 ml sample into the titration flask and add 1 drop of phenolphthalein. If solution is not pink, no free alkalinity is present. Skip step 3 and proceed to step 4.

3. Add 0.01M sulfuric acid to the sample with the pipette or burette. Record the number of mls needed to reach the pink end-point. Use this number in the calculation of phenolphthalein alkalinity.

4. Add 1 drop of methyl orange indicator.

5. Continue to titrate with 0.01M sulfuric acid until the methyl orange end-point is reached. Record the volume (ml) used and combine this value with the volume (ml) obtained in step 3. Use this value for the calculation of total alkalinity. (A reference for the end-point can be prepared by adding 1 drop of methyl orange to 10 ml of pH 4.5 solution prepared by combining 1.36 g $NaC_2H_3O_2 \cdot H_2O$ and 10 ml 1M $HC_2H_3O_2$ with water to make 100 ml solution.)

Calculations:

For uniformity, alkalinity is expressed as mg $CaCO_3$/l even though there may be no $CaCO_3$ present. The equation for the phenolphthalein alkalinity is

$$\text{mg } CaCO_3/l = \frac{A \times (\text{Molarity of } H_2SO_4) \times 100{,}000}{\text{Volume of Sample}}$$

where A equals ml of the titrant used to reach the phenolphthalein end-point and the concentration of the sulfuric acid is expressed as <u>molarity</u>.

This can be reduced to:

$$\text{mg } CaCO_3/l = A \times 100$$

if a 10 ml sample is used and the sulfuric acid is 0.01M.

In the same way, the total alkalinity is calculated as

$$\text{mg } CaCO_3/l = B \times 100$$

where B is the TOTAL number of ml needed to reach the methyl orange end-point.

2) Reference

<u>Standard Methods for the Examination of Water and Wastewater</u>, (12th ed.), American Public Health Association, New York, 1965, pp. 48-50.

c. pH

pH is a measurement which reflects the instantaneous free hydrogen ion concentration in a water sample. Free hydrogen and hydroxide ions exist in equilibrium in all aqueous solutions. If these ions are present in equal amounts, the sample is described as neutral and has a pH value of 7. If the hydrogen ion concentration is less than the hydroxide ion concentration, the solution is said to be basic and has a pH value greater than 7. If the hydrogen ion concentration is greater than the hydroxide ion concentration, the solution is acidic and has a pH value less than 7 (Fig. 1).

acidic									basic					
$[H^+] > [OH^-]$									$[H^+] < [OH^-]$					
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14

neutrality ($[H^+] = [OH^-]$)

Fig. 1 - pH Relationships

It is essential to regognize that pH is not a measurement sensitive to the presence of substances which may contribute to the total acidity or alkalinity of a given sample. Consequently, it must not be confused with the results of total acidity and alkalinity determinations. Samples which possess a neutral pH may possess high acidity and/or alkalinity values. Because natural waters are buffered by the CO_2, HCO_3, CO_3 system to a pH range of 6.5 to 7.5, marked deviations from neutrality are generally the result of industrial or acid mine contamination.

The pH of water samples is usually determined by either colorimetric or electrometric techniques. Colorimetric procedures rely upon chemical substances which undergo color changes with change in pH. There are numerous reagents which demonstrate this phenomenon; however, each is effective as a pH indicator within a limited pH range only. A versatile pH measurement system must contain numerous indicators covering the entire pH spectrum. These indicators are either impregnated on paper strips,

used separately in solution form, or combined to create a "universal" or "wide-range" indicator solution.

Electrometric techniques yield the greatest accuracy. They employ meters which, by means of a glass electrode, detect differences in electric potential which occur with differing pH values. Once the meter is properly calibrated, pH readings are read directly from the instrument scale.

Procedure:

1) Refer to the Delta, Hach or LaMotte kits. All three utilize colorimetric procedures.

2) As alternatives to the kits, the following procedures are recommended:

   a) Purchase universal indicator or a good quality pH paper from any chemical supply house and use according to the accompanying instructions.

   b) Use a pH meter. Models differ in operation; therefore, instructions for their use must be obtained from the manufacturer. The pH of a given sample should be obtained propmptly to prevent changes due to reactions with CO_2 from the air or loss of CO_2 to the air.

2. Dissolved Gases

   a. CO_2 - See end of this reference section for material.

   b. Chlorine (residual)

   Both free and combined forms of chlorine are used as disinfectants in attempts to curb waterborne diseases. Chlorine does not occur naturally in water but may enter through sewage treatment effluents and industrial wastes.

   In the quantitative determination of chlorine, an organic compound orthotolidine is oxidized in acid solution by both free and combined forms of chlorine. This produces a yellow colored compound holoquinone, which is measured colorimetrically.

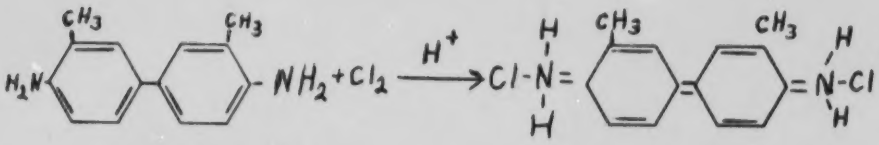
   An alternate method which corrects for color interferences is known as the orthotolidine-arsenite method. Total residual chlorine is measured in the usual way with orthotolidine as described above. A second test which serves as a blank is prepared by introducing sodium arsenite solution before adding the orthotolidine. The arsenite, being a much stronger reducing agent than orthotolidine, reduces both free and

combined chlorine. This prevents their reaction with the orthotolidine. Any color present in this second test is due to interference by other chemical substances and the reagents being used. The total residual chlorine level can be calculated as follows:

Total chlorine residual (Test 1)	and	Interfering Color (Test 2)	=	Total Residual Chlorine

1) Procedure

a) Refer to Delta kit. For clear waters, Delta uses the orthotolidine method. The reaction is as follows:



orthotolidine

A holoquinone (yellow)

For turbid waters, Delta uses the orthotolidine-arsenite method as described above.

b) Refer to Hach kit. Because of color fading, Hach has developed a modified orthotolidine reagent called O-ToliVer which stabilizes the final color for longer periods of time. The reaction is similar to that in the Delta kit.

c) Refer to the LaMotte kit. It uses the orthotolidine method as described above.

c. Dissolved Oxygen

Dissolved oxygen is an essential substance for the support of most aquatic life. Its concentration in water (normally very low compared with that in air) varies with fluctuations in such factors as temperature, types and concentrations of dissolved and suspended solids, biotic activity, and agitation of the water. Both depressed and elevated (supersaturated) dissolved oxygen levels are encountered in aquatic studies. In view of our understanding of the biological role of DO, deleterious effects of low or nonexistent levels of DO are hardly surprising. Harmful effects accompanying DO supersaturation of water supplies have not been so readily

anticipated. However, fish have demonstrated low tolerance to DO supersaturation as indicated by an increased incidence of mortality and disease in such waters (1,2).

Regardless of the test used for determination of DO, the sampling procedures must avoid aeration and warming. Moreover, the test must be done immediately or the oxygen must be fixed if chemical and biochemical influences are to be avoided. The Azide-Winkler method, an accurate and feasible test for DO, eliminates interference by nitrite ions through the use of sodium azide. Dissolved oxygen is fixed by the addition of manganese sulfate and an alkali-iodide-azide reagent. In this reaction, the oxygen oxidizes manganous ions to manganese oxyhydroxide; $Mn\ O(OH)_2$. Under acid conditions (obtained by adding concentrated sulfuric acid or the less dangerous solid form of sulfamic acid), the manganese oxyhydroxide oxidizes iodide ions to produce free iodine. The amount of free iodine produced is equivalent to the dissolved oxygen originally present. Following titration to a pale straw color with sodium thiosulfate, starch is added and the titration is continued until the blue color disappears. With clean water samples, the titration may be delayed under acid conditions for up to 6 hours. Prompt titration is required for polluted water.

1) Procedure

a) Azide-Winkler method (in lab without kit)[3]

(1) Equipment

4-5 ml pipettes

burette, in 0.1 ml units with a 50 ml capacity

BOD bottles, 300 ml capacity

Erlenmeyer flask, 250 ml

(2) Reagents

Manganese Sulfate Solution: Dissolve 480 g $MnSO_4 \cdot 4H_2O$ in distilled water, filter and dilute to 1 liter.

Alkali-iodide-azide Reagent: Dissolve 500 g NaOH and 150 g KI in distilled water and dilute to 1 liter. To this solution add 10 g NaN_3 dissolved in 40 ml of distilled water. This reagent should not give a color with starch solution when diluted and acidified.

Concentrated Sulfuric Acid: Use concentrated reagent grade acid (H_2SO_4). Handle carefully!

Starch Solution: Prepare a paste of 5-6 g soluble starch in a small amount of distilled water. Pour this paste into 1 liter of boiling distilled water, allow to boil a few minutes and let settle over night. Use the clear supernate.

Sodium Thiosulfate Solution: Dissolve 24.82 g $Na_2S_2O_3 \cdot 5H_2O$ in boiled and cooled distilled water and dilute to 1 liter. Preserve by adding 0.4 g of NaOH per liter.

Working Sodium Thiosulfate Titrant 0.0375M: Prepare by either diluting 375 ml sodium thiosulfate stock solution to 1 liter or by dissolving 9.30 g $Na_2S_2O_3 \cdot 5H_2O$ in freshly boiled and cooled distilled water and dilute to 1 liter. (For standardizing the sodium thiosulfate, refer to Standard Methods, p. 407.)

b) In the field

(1) Fill a 300 ml glass stoppered bottle with sample water by allowing the sample to enter through a glass or rubber tube which extends to the bottom of the bottle. An overflow displacing the bottle contents 2-3 times is necessary to ensure that the test sample has not been exposed to the air. Stopper the bottle immediately upon removing the tube. Be sure that no bubbles are trapped within the bottle.

(2) Add 2 ml manganese sulfate to the collecting bottle by means of a pipette inserted just below the surface of the liquid.

(3) Add 2 ml alkali-iodide-azide reagent in the same manner.

(4) Stopper with care to exclude air bubbles and mix by inverting the bottle several times. When the precipitate settles shake again and allow to settle.

Note: The oxygen is fixed according to the following reaction.

$$Mn^{++} + 2\ OH^- + 1/2\ O_2 \longrightarrow MnO(OH)_2 \quad \text{(eq. 1)}$$

(golden brown flocculant)

c) In the lab

(1) Add 2.0 ml concentrated H_2SO_4 with the pipette above the surface of the liquid; stopper and invert several times to dissolve the precipitate.

Note: With the addition of sulfuric acid, the proper low pH conditions are obtained for the destruction of interfering NO_2^- by the sodium azide which was added in the alkali-iodide-azide reagent above. The following reactions occur:

$$NaN_3 + H^+ \longrightarrow HN_3 + Na^+ \qquad \text{(eq. 2)}$$

$$HN_3 + NO_2^- + H^+ \longrightarrow N_2 + NO_2 + H_2O \qquad \text{(eq. 3)}$$

Under the same pH conditions, the Mn^{+4} oxidizes I^- to produce free I_2 as follows:

$$Mn\,O(OH)_2 \cdot 3H_2O + 2\,I^- + 4\,H^+ \longrightarrow Mn^{++} + I_2 + \qquad \text{(eq. 4)}$$

(2) In an Erlenmeyer flask, titrate the 300 ml sample with 0.0375M sodium thiosulfate to a pale straw color.

(3) Add 2 ml of starch solution. A blue color forms indicating the presence of molecular iodine, I_2. Continue titrating until the molecular iodine is reduced to iodide ions as indicated by the disappearance of the blue color.

Note: The reaction is

$$2\,S_2O_3^{--} + I_2 \longrightarrow S_4O_6^{--} + 2\,I^- \qquad \text{(eq. 5)}$$

(4) Record the total amount of sodium thiosulfate used.

2) Calculations

1 ml of 0.0375M $Na_2S_2O_3$ is equivalent to 0.2 mg DO per 300 ml sample as follows:

According to (eq. 5), $S_2O_3^{--}$ loses 1 electron so that 1 liter of 0.0375M $Na_2S_2O_3$ will lose 0.0375 moles of electrons (or 1 ml will lose 3.75×10^{-5} moles of electrons). To change 1 mole of molecular oxygen (O_2) to O^{--} requires 4 moles of electrons. 3.75×10^{-5} moles of electrons will reduce approximately 9.4×10^{-6} moles of molecular O_2.

Since 1 mole of O_2 has a mass of 32 g, 9.4×10^{-6} moles has a mass of 0.0003 g or 0.3 mg. Each milliliter of sodium thiosulfate used in the titration of a 300 ml sample indicates the presence of 0.3 mg O_2/300 ml or 1 mg O_2/liter (1 ppm).

Summarizing: Each ml of sodium thiosulfate added in steps 3 and 4 equals 1 mg/l DO (1 ppm).

3) As an alternative to the laboratory method described above, refer to either the Hach or LaMotte kits. They utilize chemical principles outlined for the laboratory method with exceptions as follows:

   a) Hach: Substitutes phenylarsene oxide (PAO) for the sodium thiosulfate titrant.

   b) LaMotte: Utilizes an unmodified Winkler procedure; consequently, it is subject to interference by nitrite ions.

4) References

   (1) McKee, J. E. and H. W. Wolf, Water Quality Criteria, (2nd ed.), State Water Quality Control Board, Pub. #3-A, Sacramento, Calif., 1963, p. 181.

   (2) Ibid.

   (3) Standard Methods for the Examination of Water and Wastewater, (12th ed.), American Public Health Association, New York City, 1965, pp. 415-419.

   (4) Carbon Dioxide prior to Chlorine Refer to Section 2), Un-ionized (Bound) Acidity, Acid-Base Parameters (see page A-5).

3. Dissolved and Suspended Solids

   a. Chloride

The chloride ion is a component of many salts and most living organisms. Because chloride salts are usually soluble, ions find their way into natural waters by phenomena such as erosion and leaching. Examples of other common chloride sources include sea water intrusion, human and animal sewage, fertilizers, industrial wastes, and winter salting of highways.

Gradually add mercuric nitrate or silver nitrate solution to a water sample containing an indicator. The mercuric or silver ions combine with the chloride ions until the chloride supply

is essentially depleted. At this point, mercuric or silver ions form a colored complex by reacting with the indicator. The amount of mercuric nitrate or silver nitrate solution added indicates the chloride ion concentration.

1) Procedure

a) Refer to the Hach, Delta, or LaMotte kits if they are available. These kits utilize the following reactions:

Hach Kit: (1) $Hg^{++} + 2Cl^{-} = HgCl_2$

(2) Hg^{++} + Diphenylcarbazone = purple complex

Delta & LaMotte Kits:

(1) $Ag^{+} + Cl^{-} = AgCl$

(2) $2\ Ag^{+} + CrO_4 = Ag_2CrO_4$ (red color)

b) If a commercial kit is not available, the following procedure which uses the above reactions is suggested.

Equipment:

burette, 25 ml

porcelain evaporating dish, 250 ml

glass stirring rod

assorted beakers, graduates, one-liter volumetric flasks, and bottles as needed

five ml pipette

Reagents:

Silver Nitrate, 0.0141M: Dissolve 2.396 g silver nitrate ($AgNO_3$) in distilled water and dilute to 1 liter in a volumetric flask. Standardize against 0.0141M sodium chloride solution. One ml silver nitrate solution equals approximately 0.500 ml Cl^{-}.

Sodium Chloride, 0.0141M: Dissolve 0.8241 g of sodium chloride (NaCl) in distilled water and dilute to 1 liter in a volumetric flask. One ml sodium chloride solution equals 0.500 mg Cl^{-}.

Potassium Chromate Indicator: Dissolve 50 g potassium chromate (K_2CrO_4) and dilute to 1 liter with distilled water.

Method:

1. To standardize the silver nitrate, add 20 ml of 0.0141M sodium chloride to 1 ml of potassium chromate indicator in a porcelain evaporating dish. Titrate as per step 4 below. Then calculate the normality constant as follows:

$$\frac{\text{ml } AgNO_3}{20} \times 500 = \text{Normality constant}$$

2. Place 100 ml sample or a smaller quantity diluted to 100 ml with distilled water in a porcelain evaporating dish.

3. Add one ml of potassium chromate indicator with a pipette.

4. Add silver nitrate solution from a burette, stirring the dish contents until a uniform pinkish-yellow end-point is reached. Record the ml of silver nitrate added.

5. Repeat steps 2, 3, and 4 above using 100 ml of distilled water as a blank in place of the sample.

6. Calculate the final result as follows:

$$\text{mg/l } Cl^- = \frac{(\text{ml } AgNO_3 \text{ for sample} - \text{ml } AgNO_3 \text{ for blank})\ (\text{Normality Constant})}{\text{ml original sample}}$$

2) Reference

Water Pollution Control Federation, Simplified Laboratory Procedures for Wastewater Examination, WPCF Publication, No. 18, 1968, pp. 45-46.

b. Hardness--Calcium, Magnesium, Total

Hardness is a water quality parameter which limits the lathering or foaming ability of soaps and increases the tendency of a water sample to produce scale in pipes, heaters, and boilers. Hard water is caused by the presence of divalent ions such as

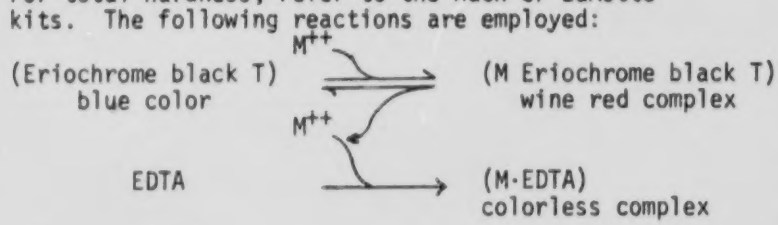
Calcium (Ca^{++}) and magnesium (Mg^{++}). Additional ions (e.g., Sr^{++}, Mn^{++}, Fe^{++}) can cause hardness but are present only in limited amounts in most water supplies. If their concentrations are elevated, they should be included in calculations of total hardness. All of these cations enter water sources via industrial wastes, sewage, and contact with soil and rock formations.

The chemical determination of total hardness involves the titration of a water sample to which an indicator, such as Eriochrome black T, has been added. The substance EDTA is used as the titrant because of its ability to complex with divalent cations. Prior to titration, the indicator forms a red complex with Ca^{++} or Mg^{++}. During titration within a specific pH range, the red indicator releases its bound cations to the EDTA and reverts to its blue pigment. Total hardness is calculated from the amount of EDTA needed to reach the blue end-point.

In the determination of calcium hardness, magnesium is precipitated as magnesium hydroxide by the addition of alkali. The rest of the procedure is completed as outlined above. Magnesium hardness is calculated by subtracting the calcium value from the total hardness figure.

1) Procedure

a) For total hardness, refer to the Hach or LaMotte kits. The following reactions are employed:



M^{++} = any divalent cation

EDTA = ethylenediamine tetraacetic acid

b) For calcium hardness, refer to the Hach, LaMotte or Delta kits. Following the addition of sodium hydroxide or potassium hydroxide to precipitate magnesium hydroxide, the following reaction occurs:

$$Mg^{++} + 2\ OH^{-} = Mg\ (OH)_2$$

The reactions obtained from the Hach and LaMotte kits were described above. While the Delta kit uses different

reagents, it appears to utilize a similar process.

c) Magnesium hardness may be calculated by determining the difference between the total hardness and calcium hardness value.

d) As an alternate procedure, calcium hardness may be evaluated in a rough quantitative fashion by the following precipitation procedure according to the reaction:

$$Ca^{++} + C_2O_4^{--} = CaC_2O_4 \begin{matrix}(s)\\(solid)\end{matrix}$$

Equipment:

2 test tubes

4 dropping pipettes

Reagents:

Stock 0.01M Ca^{++} Solution: Add 1.11 g of $CaCl_2$ to 100 ml of distilled water and dilute to 1 liter.

Working Ca^{++} Standard (80 ppm Ca^{++}): Add 20 ml of the stock solution to 80 ml of distilled water.

Concentrated Ammonia Water.

4% Ammonium Oxalate: Dissolve 4 g of $(NH_4)_2C_2O_4$ in 50 ml of distilled water and dilute to 100 ml.

Method:

1. Prepare a reference sample containing Ca^{++} by placing 20 drops (1 ml) of the working Ca^{++} standard into Tube 1.

2. Place 20 drops of the water sample into Tube 2.

3. Add two drops of concentrated ammonia water to both tubes.

4. Add 4% ammonium oxalate dropwise until a reaction is observed. Do not add more than 5 drops.

5. Compare the amount of precipitation in Tube 2 with that in Tube 1. Report your result as being greater than or less than 80 ppm.

2) Reference

Standard Methods for the Examination of Water and Wastewater, (12th ed.), American Public Health Association, New York City, 1965, p. 149.

c. Iron

Ionic forms of iron occur in water as either the iron (II) or iron (III) form. Iron (II) is easily oxidized to iron (III) which reacts with hydroxides to form insoluble iron (III) hydroxide, thus keeping iron concentrations in most water supplies at low levels. While toxic to many organisms, elevated iron concentrations support iron bacteria (which may cause corrosion) in pipe lines or structures with formation of slimes, pits, encrustations, and other undesirable effects. Dissolved iron originates from soils or rock formations during leaching and erosion processes effected by acidic water flows. Also, there is evidence which suggests that iron enters water sources through changes produced in environmental conditions as a result of biological reactions.

In quantitative iron studies, it is necessary to convert all of the iron (III) to the soluble iron (II) form. This is accomplished by dissolving any precipitated iron (III) hydroxide by the addition of hydrochloric acid and reducing the iron (III) species to iron (II) through the action of hydroxylamine, a strong reducing agent. The water sample is then treated with 1,10-phenanthroline which combines with the iron (II) to form an orange-red complex suitable for colorimetric evaluation.

An alternative procedure involves the conversion to iron (II), as described, followed by the addition of ethylenediamine which buffers the water sample and complexes* heavy metals which might give erroneously high results. 2,2,2-tripyridine is added to yield a reddish-purple iron (II) complex for colorimetric study.

1) Procedure

Refer to the Hach, Delta, or LaMotte kits. The following reaction sequences are used:

$$Fe(OH)_3 + 3\ H^+ \longrightarrow 3H_2O + Fe^{+++}$$

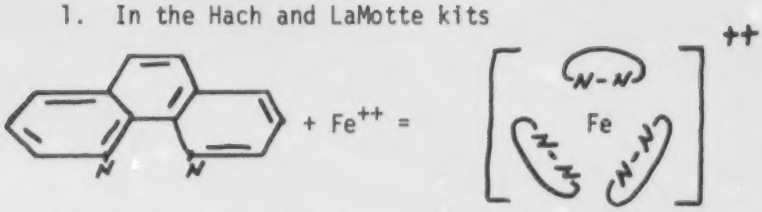
$$4\ Fe^{3+} + 2\ NH_2OH = 4\ Fe^{++} + N_2O + H_2O + 4\ H^+$$

* binds up

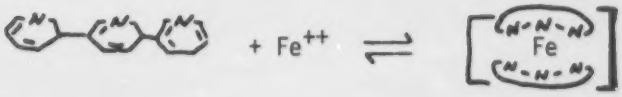
261

These are followed by:

1. In the Hach and LaMotte kits



2. In the LaMotte kit:



2) Reference

Sawyer, C. N.,and P. L. McCarty, Chemistry for Sanitary Engineers, (2nd ed.), McGraw-Hill Book Co., New York City, 1968, pp. 446-448.

d. Nitrate

Nitrate ions are end-products of the oxidation of nitrogen or nitrogen compounds. They are formed by (1) the nitrogen fixation activity of certain bacteria and algae, (2) the oxidation of atmospheric nitrogen during electrical storms, and (3) the oxidation of nitrogenous compounds (ammonia, nitrates, proteins, certain organics) in both water sources and aerobic sewage treatment systems. Their use in fertilizers as a source of nitrogen for plant protein synthesis constitutes a source of pollution, as excess amounts are carried into water supplies by percolation and runoff.

In the suggested procedures, nitrates are measured by reduction by cadmium to nitrite ions followed by reaction with sulfanilic acid to form a diazonium salt. The salt is reacted with 1-naphylamine hydrochloride to form a red-colored azo dye.

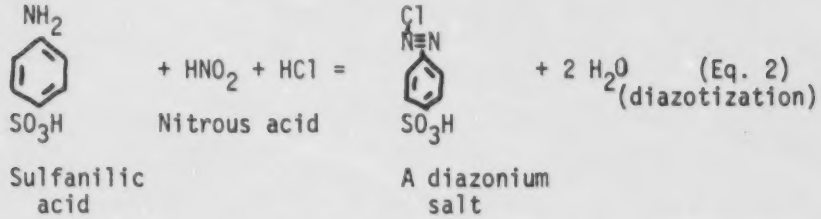
The presence of nitrite ions in the original water sample will cause falsely high nitrate values. A correction is achieved by measuring the nitrite level separately (see Nitrite) and subtracting the resulting nitrite value from the nitrate value obtained in the cadmium reduction method just described.

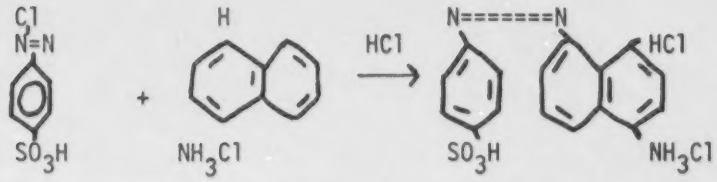
1) Procedure

Refer to the Hach, Delta, or LaMotte kits.

Their reactions are:

$NO_3^- + Cd = NO_2^- + CdO$ (reduction of NO_3^-) (Eq. 1)





e. Nitrite

Nitrites are intermediates in the chemical or biological modification of nitrogenous compounds such as ammonia, nitrates, certain organics, dyes, and proteins. Accordingly, they may occur in water supplies containing such substances.

Nitrites are measured by conversion to a diazonium salt through reaction with sulfanilic acid. Upon reaction with 1-naphthylamine hydrochloride, a red-colored dye develops which is easily measured by colorimetric procedures.

Procedure

Refer to the Hach, Delta, or LaMotte kits. The chemistry is described by Equations (2) and (3) of the Nitrate Ion section.

f. Phosphate

The phosphate ion exists in both organic and inorganic forms. With the exception of bottom sediments, and samples containing algae and suspended particles which may possess organic phosphorous as a major phosphorous form, emphasis is placed on analystical evaluations of the inorganic forms outlined in Table 1.

Table 1. - Inorganic Phosphates

Polyphosphates*	Orthophosphates*
(meta) $(MPO_3)x$	MH_2PO_4
(pyro) $M_4P_2O_7$	M_2HPO_4
(tri) $M_5P_3O_{10}$	M_3PO_4
(tetra) $M_6P_4O_{13}$	

* M = any monovalent cation

These determinations are considered significant because of our increased awareness of the role of phosphates in life processes (ATP, enzyme function, buffering) combined with their extensive use in fertilizers, detergents, water softeners and as nutrients in the biological degradation of sewage.

The suggested procedures detect only orthophosphates; consequently, it is necessary to convert the polyphosphates to the ortho form if a reliable measure of the inorganic phosphates content is to be obtained. This process occurs in all aqueous systems but may take from hours to several days for completion under field conditions. In the laboratory, the conversion is hastened by boiling the sample in an acidic solution. If organic phosphorous is to be included in the analysis, it must be converted to the orthophosphate form through oxidation by sodium persulfate (refer to Standard Methods).

Detection of the orthophosphate form is accomplished by reacting it with ammonium molybdate to form ammonium phosphomolybdate. This product is subsequently reduced to molybdenum blue by reaction with stannous ions.

1) Primary Procedure

Refer to the Hach, Delta, or LaMotte kits if they are available.

a) $PO_4^{-3} + 12\ (NH_4)_2\ MoO_4 + 24\ H^+ = (NH_4)_3PO_4 \cdot 12MoO_3 + 21\ NH_4^+ + 12\ H_2O$

b) $(NH_4)_3PO_4 \cdot 12MoO_3 + Sn^{++} =$ (molybdenum blue) $+ Sn^{+4}$

2) The following alternative procedure for orthophosphate only is suggested. The reactions just described are utilized.

Equipment:

2 test tubes

3 medicine droppers

Reagents:

Stock 0.001M Phosphate Solution: Add 0.136 g KH_2PO_4 to distilled water making total volume 1 liter.

Working Standard ppm H_2PO_4: Add 10 ml of stock solution to 990 ml of distilled water.

Ammonium Molybdate - Nitric Acid Reagent: Dissolve 15 g of ammonium molybdate in 300 ml of distilled water. Add 100 ml of nitric acid 1:1 dilution of concentrated HNO_3 and saturate with ammonium nitrate.

Method:

1. Prepare a reference sample containing phosphate ions by placing 20 drops of working standard in Tube 1.

2. Place 20 drops of the water sample into Tube 2.

3. Add 10 drops of the ammonium molybdate-nitric acid reagent to each tube.

4. Add a few crystals of stannous chloride to both tubes. A blue color should appear if orthophosphate ions are present.

5. Compare the intensity of the blue pigment in Tube 2 with that of Tube 1. Report your results as having less than or greater than 1 ppm orthophosphate.

g. Sulfate

The sulfate ion, a complex of sulfur and oxygen, is capable of serving as an oxygen donor for biochemical oxidations occuring under anerobic conditons. This action results in the conversion of the sulfate ion to the sulfide form which equilibrates with hydrogen ions to form hydrogen sulfide. The latter substance possesses an objectionable "rotten egg" odor and is capable of being oxidized by sulfur bacteria to form sulfuric acid. The sulfate ion is derived from sewage,

industrial and agricultural effluents, erosion, and percolation of water through pyrite or sphalerite ore deposits.

Analytical techniques for sulfates are based upon the formation of insoluble barium sulfate by the addition of barium ions. The resulting solid may be collected, dried, and weighed or may be kept in colloidal suspension by the use of a conditioning reagent containing hydrochloric acid, sodium chloride, glycerol, and other organic compounds and then measured by turbidimetric procedures. At least one titrimetric procedure is available which involves the gradual addition of barium chloride to a water sample containing an indicator. The barium ions precipitate with the sulfate ions until the sulfate ion supply is essentially depleted. Excess barium ions then combine with the indicator to produce a color change. The sulfate level is calculated from the amount of barium chloride needed to achieve the end-point.

1) Procedure:

a) Refer to the Hach or Delta kits. They utilize the following reactions:

(1) Hach kit (Turbidimetric Procedure)

$$Ba^{++} + SO_4^{--} = BaSO_4 \text{ (solid)}$$

(2) Delta kit (Titrimetric Procedure)

$$Ba^{++} + SO_4^{--} = BaSO_4 \text{ (solid)}$$

THEN Ba^{++} + Indicator = orange-red complex

b) An alternative rough quantitative procedure is suggested as follows.

Apparatus:

2 test tubes

4 medicine droppers

Reagents:

Stock 0.01M $MnSO_4$ Solution: Add 1.7 g $MnSO_4 \cdot H_2O$ to 100 ml distilled water and dilute to 1 liter.

Working SO_4^{--} Standard (96 ppm SO_4^{--}): Add 10 ml of stock solution to 90 ml of distilled water.

6M Hydrochloric Acid: Dilute concentrated HCl (12M) to 1/2 its original concentration.

0.1M Barium Chloride: Dissolve 2.08 g $BaCl_2$ in 50 ml of distilled water and dilute to 100 ml.

Method:

1. Prepare a reference sample containing SO_4^{--} by placing 10 drops of the working standard into Tube 1.

2. Place 10 drops of the water sample in Tube 2.

3. Add 2 drops of HCl and 1 drop of $BaCl_2$ to each test tube.

4. Formation of a white precipitate or cloudiness indicates the presence of SO_4^{--}. Compare the amount of cloudiness or precipitation in Tube 2 with that in Tube 1 and report your result as greater or less than 96 ppm SO_4^{--}.

h. Turbidity

Turbidity limits light penetration within a body of water by causing incident light to be scattered or absorbed rather than transmitted appreciable distances through the sample. Turbid water is caused by the presence of suspended organic and inorganic solids derived from erosion, surface drainage systems, and domestic and industrial wastes. It exerts a negative influence on photosynthesis and water temperature by reducing the amount of light reaching subsurface areas and can, by itself, kill fish and other organisms. Increases in turbidity may follow a chain reaction sequence by providing bacteria and other microorganisms contributing to turbidity with an abundant supply of nutrients required for growth and reproduction.

Turbidity is measured by comparing the interference to the passage of incident light in the questioned sample with that in a standard reference. Although the accuracy of photometric or nephelometric techniques is questionable, such procedures are convenient for approximating turbidity and are used in most commercial kits.

Procedure:

1) Refer to Hach or Delta kits.

2) The following procedure which measures the depth of light

penetration can be used to supplement photometric determination of turbidity. The depth of light penetration is affected by turbidity, but also color.

a) Equipment (a home-made Secchi disk costs about $.50)

(1) calibrated rope

(2) tempered plywood aide, 20 cm in diameter, with alternate white and black quadrants

(3) eye-bolt, washers

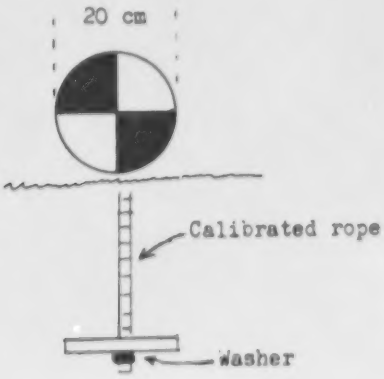


Figure 1.

b) Method

(1) Lower disk and record depth of disappearance.

(2) Lower disk below the recorded point and then slowly raise it. Record the depth at which the disk first becomes visible.

(3) Average the two readings. Secchi disk readings range from a few centimeters to over 40 meters.

4. Oxygen Demand

Biochemical Oxygen Demand (BOD)

BOD values reflect the quantity of molecular oxygen required for the decomposition of organic compounds by aerobic biochemical processes. Consequently, BOD values serve as an index of the pollution strength of wastes by measuring the amount of oxygen which may be removed from water supplies as these wastes are being aerobically stabilized.

The BOD determination is a bioassay procedure requiring (1) excess O_2, (2) favorable physical conditions, (3) essential nutrients, (4) suitable organisms, and (5) time. While 20 days are usually required to approach complete waste stabilization, the length of the assay is set at 5 days. The shorter period usually allows for the measurement of a substantial fraction of the total BOD. It also minimizes interference by autotrophs, particularly nitrifying bacteria, which aerobically metabolize inorganic nitrogen. These organisms usually require more than 5 days to become established in a fresh sewage sample but may start promptly in a stream, lake, or effluent sample. Aerobic stabilization of inorganic nitrogen does create an increased oxygen demand; however, attempts to evaluate this parameter according to the following procedures are not valid.

Aerobic stabilization of nitrogen components is becoming increasingly important in impounded waters but is not normally included in the described procedure.

1) Procedure for unchlorinated water

If the sample has been chlorinated, it is recommended that the BOD not be performed. A good job of chlorination renders the BOD meaningless. However, a dechlorination and reseeding procedure is described in the next section for those who desire to attempt it.

Equipment:

burette, graduated in 0.1 ml units with a 50 ml capacity

BOD bottles, 300 ml capacity

Erlenmeyer flask, 250 ml

10 ml measuring pipette

large-tipped volumetric pipette

incubator, controlled at 20° C

Reagents:

Manganous Sulfate Solution: Refer to the procedure for DO.

Alkaline Iodide-Sodium Azide Solution: Refer to the procedure for DO.

Sulfuric Acid: Use concentrated reagent-grade acid (H_2SO_4). Handle carefully, since this material will burn hands and

clothes. Rinse affected parts with tap water to prevent injury.

Sodium Thiosulfate Solution: Refer to the procedure for DO.

Starch Solution: Refer to the procedure for DO.

Distilled Water: Water used for solutions and for preparation of the solution water must be of highest quality. It must contain no copper or decomposable organic matter. Ordinary battery distilled water is not good enough.

Phosphate Buffer Solution: Dissolve 8.5 g KH_2PO_4, 21.75 g K_2HPO_4, 33.4 g $Na_2HPO_4 \cdot 7H_2O$ and 1.7 g NH_4Cl in distilled water and make up to 1 liter. The pH buffer should be checked with a pH meter (or pH paper).

Magnesium Sulfate Solution: Dissolve 22.5 g $MgSO_4 \cdot 7H_2O$ in distilled water and make up to 1 liter.

Calcium Chloride Solution: Dissolve 27.5 g anhydrous $CaCl_2$ in distilled water and make up to 1 liter.

Ferric Chloride Solution: Dissolve 0.25 g $FeCl_3 \cdot 6H_2O$ in distilled water and make up to 1 liter.

Dilution Water: Add 1 ml each of phosphate buffer, magnesium sulfate, calcium chloride, and ferric chloride solutions for each liter of distilled water. Store at a temperature as close to 20°C as possible. This water should not show a drop in DO of more than 0.2 mg/l after incubation for 5 days.

Method:

a) The percent dilution to be used must be determined. To make this calculation, one should understand that dilution water at room temperature contains approximately 8 mg/l of dissolved oxygen (DO). Consequently, if the oxygen demand of the sample to be tested is greater than 8 mg/l, dilution of the sample has to be made. It is desirable to have at least 1 mg/l of initial oxygen left after 5-day incubation. Table 1 ia an aid to estimate the dilutions to use.

Appendix 1

*Initial DO=7 mg/l				*Initial DO=8 mg/l			
Percent Dilution (%)	Sample added to 300-ml. Bottle (ml)	BOD Range Min. (mg/l)	BOD Range Max. (mg/l)	Percent Dilution (%)	Sample added to 300-ml. Bottle (ml)	BOD Range Min. (mg/l)	BOD Range Max. (mg/l)
1	3	210	490	1	3	240	560
2	6	105	245	2	6	120	280
3	9	70	162	3	9	80	187
4	12	53	123	4	12	60	140
5	15	42	98	5	15	48	112
6	18	35	82	6	18	40	94
7	21	30	70	7	21	34	80
8	24	26	62	8	24	30	70
9	27	24	56	9	27	27	62
10	30	21	49	10	30	24	56
15	45	14	33	15	45	16	37
20	60	11	25	20	60	12	28
25	75	8	20	25	75	9.6	22
50	150	4	10	50	150	4	12

*Initial DO is the concentration of dissolved oxygen in mg/l of the mixture of the dilution water and the sample immediately after initial mixing.

Table 1. An Aid in Selection of Percent Dilution for BOD Determination

Raw sewage usually contains about 100 to 300 mg/l BOD so that 1- and 2-percent dilutions generally are used; settled sewage BOD's usually range from 50 to 200 mg/l, and 2- and 3-percent or 3- and 4-percent dilutions are common; trickling filters use 5- and 10-percent; for activiated sludge effluents, use 10-, 20-, or 50-percent depending upon how good the effluent is. Very strong sewages or industrial wastes are diluted 1 part wastewater to 10 parts dilution water before making the dilutions of 1- to 2-percent. In this way a range of 1,000 to 3,000 mg/l BOD is covered. However, the inexperienced operator is advised not to try to analyze industrial wastes.

b) Fill two 300 ml BOD bottles about half-full with dilution water.

c) Using a large-tipped pipette, measure the precalculated amount of sample into the two 300 ml BOD bottles.

d) Fill each bottle with dilution water and insert stoppers the same way. See that all air bubbles are excluded.

e) Fill two additional bottles with straight dilution water and insert stoppers the same way.

f) Incubate one bottle containing the diluted sample and one bottle containing only dilution water.

g) Determine the initial DO levels of the diluted sample and of the dilution water by running dissolved oxygen determinations on the two remaining bottles.

h) After 5 days, run a dissolved oxygen determination on the incubated bottles. Record the DO contents. (The increase or decrease of DO in the bottles with just dilution water is intended to serve only as a measure of dilution water quality. There should be no increase or decrease more than 0.5 mg/l when compared to the initial DO value of the dilution water.)

Calculations:

BOD values are calculated as follows:

$$\frac{100 \times (\text{Initial DO of diluted sample} - \text{DO of sample after 5 days})}{\text{Percent of sample added}}$$

$$= \text{mg/l (5 day BOD)}$$

2) Dechlorination and Reseeding Procedure[3]

Whenever BOD determinations are to be made on chlorinated water samples, sufficient reducing agent must be added to remove the chlorine. After dechlorination, the sample must be "reseeded" with organisms.

Method:

a) Secure an unchlorinated sample of raw sewage or primary effluent about 24 hours prior to the time when you expect to set up dechlorinated and seeded samples for determination of BOD. Collect about one liter of unchlorinated sample and let stand at room temperature

overnight. Pour off the clear portion of the sample and use it for the "seed."

b) Check for the presence of chlorine in the composite sample proceeding as follows:

(1) Carefully measure 100 ml of well-mixed sample into a 250 ml Erlenmeyer flask.

(2) Add a few crystals of KI to the sample and dissolve the crystals.

(3) Add 1 ml of concentrated H_2SO_4 and mix well.

(4) Add five drops of starch.

1. If no blue color is produced and chlorine is absent, the BOD of the composite may be determined without further treatment. In this case, all of the chlorine has been "used up" by the water and it may be assumed that a sufficient number of organisms remains so that the full BOD will be exerted.

2. If a blue color is produced, titrate the composite sample with 0.025M $Na_2S_2O_3 \cdot 5H_2O$ to the end-point between the last trace of blue color and a colorless solution. Make the titration very slowly, counting the drops of sodium thiosulfate used and recording the number.

c) To dechlorinate a sample for BOD testing, measure out another 100 ml portion of the well-mixed composite into a clean 250 ml Erlenmeyer flask. Add the number of drops of 0.025M sodium thiosulfate determined necessary for dechlorination in step b4 above. Mix well. Use this sample for determination of BOD. If more sample is needed, place a larger sample into a clean container and add a proportionate number of drops of the sodium thiosulfate for dechlorinating.

d) For seeding of the sample, add 1 ml of the aged seed (step a above) to each of the BOD bottles containing dechlorinated sample.

e) Set up samples of the seed for determination of the BOD using 2, 3, and 4 percent (3, 6, and 9 ml seed) and determine the 5 day depletion due to 1 ml of seed.

Calculations:

If the sample has been dechlorinated and reseeded as described, the 5 day BOD should be calculated as follows:

$$\frac{B - (A + C)}{D} \times 100 = \text{5 day BOD expressed as mg/l}$$

where

A = 5 day DO depletion of seed sample/ml seed
B = Initial DO (mg/l) of diluted sample
C = DO (mg/l) of sample after 5 days
D = Percent of sample used

3) References

1. Water Pollution Control Federation, Simplified Laboratory Procedures for Wastewater Examination, WPCF Publication, No. 18, Washington, D. C., 1968, pp. 38-40.

2. Ibid., pp. 41-43.

5. Interpretation

Aided by natural selection, existing aquatic ecosystems have evolved through geologic time. Organisms have adapted to their environments to the extent that the components of these environments are now the very factors upon which they depend. Deviations from this make-up, especially if sudden, may adversely affect the organisms living there.

Even within a given locale, the environmental conditions which one observes are limitless. Consequently, universal favorable concentrations of dissolved solids, gases, etc., are either exceedingly difficult or impossible to identify. Since toxicity of chemicals varies not only with the types and ages of the organisms concerned but also with duration of exposure, temperature, accompanying dissolved and suspended substances, flow rate, etc., even generalizations concerning concentrations at which specific substances become toxic are not feasible. Because of these difficulties, favorable, tolerable and toxic concentrations are now indicated in this manual on the premise that such information is, at its best, of little significance or, at its worst, misleading.

The following activities are recommended as aids in the interpretation of chemical data (1).

a. Sample the ecosystem periodically over a long period of time. Identify norms and note all biological and chemical changes, especially those which occur suddenly. Evaluate your data in terms of the entire ecosystem. Chemical determinations are of limited significance alone.

b. Determine, in the laboratory, environmental factors which are favorable or tolerable.

c. Use bioassay techniques to identify responses of organisms to various concentrations of potential toxicants and try to determine permissible levels for the ecosystem under study.

d. Test the laboratory findings in the field to evaluate their validity.

To facilitate interpretation of test results, two tables are included which emphasize those factors which are known to either interfere with chemical tests (Table 1) or influence toxicity (Table 2).

Appendix 1

	Acidity	Alkalinity	Aluminum	Bromide	Chloride	Chlorine	Chromium	Copper	Cyanide	Fluoride	Hardness	Calcium	Magnesium	Hydrogen Sulfide	Iodide	Iron (II)	Iron (III)	Manganous
Acidity			X[e] .1			X[e] .2										X[e] .1		
Alkalinity						X[e] .2						X[e] .3	X[e] .3					
Aluminum						X .5				-X .5		+X .04						
BOD						X[e]												
CO_2	+X[f]		+X[f]				+X[f]	+X[f]						+X[f]		+X[f]		
Chloride				X[d] .5			X[e] .10							X[e] .5	X[d] .5		X[e] .5	
Chlorine																	+X[d] .3	+X[d] .01
DO						+X[e] .13										-X[e] .13		
Fluoride	-X 5000		-X .1		+X 7000													
Hardness (EDTA)																		
Ca^{++} (EDTA)	X[c] .30		X .5					X .2									X .20	X .20
Hydrogen sulfide																		
Iron							X[a]	X[b] .5	X[a]									
Mn^{++}					X[a] .16													
Nitrate								-X									X[e]	
Nitrite																	X[e]	
pH (colorimetric)						X[c]										X .04		
Phosphates							-X[b]											
Sulfate																		

KEY Effect of Interference on Numerical result → X ← Footnote

MODE OF INTERFERENCE

Maximum level (mg/l) before interference occurs

Table 1. - Test Interferences*

| | | |

Appendix 1

Footnotes: Table 1.

1. Unhydrolyzed aluminum and/or iron (II) sulfate cause difficulty in determining the end-point. Performance of the titration at boiling temperature alleviates this problem.

2. Free chlorine may be removed by adding 1 drop 0.1M $Na_2S_2O_3 \cdot SA_2O$ to the titration sample.

3. Calcium carbonate and magnesium hydroxide precipitates cause fading end-points and should be removed by filtration.

4. The presence of toxic substances such as heavy metals may interfere with BOD determinations.

5. It also interferes in silver and mercuric nitrate tests.

6. It interferes in mercuric nitrate test.

7. It interferes in silver nitrate test.

8. pH must be in the range of 7-8. Errors are introduced above and below this range.

9. The presence of algae may result in erroneously high Cl_2 determination.

10. Temperature must be controlled at 20^oC; otherwise, the Cl_2 concentration will vary.

11. Interference is caused by manganic manganese.

12. Color corrections may be made by using the orthotolidine-arsenite method.

13. Azide modification of Winkler overcomes nitrite interferences. Refer to Standard Methods for additional modifications.

14. pH values greater than 10 favor precipitation of $CaCO_3$, thus causing drifting end-points which may yield low results (EDTA Method).

15. Phosphates do not interfere in the tripyridine method for iron determinations.

16. Periodate method for manganese determinations.

Appendix 1

MODE OF INTERFERENCE Table 1.

a. O interferes with reaction mechanism.

b. X interferes with phylometric readings.

c. - interferes with end-point determination.

d. Test does not differentiate.

e. It forms interfering ppt under conditions of test.

f. It disturbs carbon dioxide - carbonate equilibrium.

g. It alters reaction rate.

h. It alters concentration.

* The material for this table was obtained from Standard Methods for the Examination of Water and Wastewater. This reference should be consulted for further information.

Table 2. - Interrelationships of Chemical Species Affecting Biological Activity*

	+ Metallic CN	$CuSO_4$	Pb	Zn	Al	High pH	NH_3	low pH	Cu	High Hardness	Cl_2	$ZnSO_4$	$CdSO_4$	Hg	$NaNO_2$	$NaNO_3$	CN	low DO	Acidity	Temp Inter	CO_2	Low H	Alkalinity	Ca
Acidity																								
Alkalinity		−																						
Ca			−	−	−																			
$CO_3^{=}$						+																		
CO_2							−																	
Cl^-																								
Cl_2								+	+															
Cu										−	+	+	+	+	−	−	−	+						
CN^-								+	−									+	+	+				
Low DO			+	+			+		+								+				+			
Metals										−												+		
Fe^{+}_3																							+	
Mg																								−

(+) = Synergistic (-) = Antagonistic

*The relationships depicted in this table were cited in "Water Quality Criteria" by McKee and Wolf. This reference should be consulted for further information.

6. Bibliography

a. American Public Health Association, Standard Methods for the Examination of Water and Wastewater, (13th ed.), American Public Health Association, Inc., New York City, 1971. This includes detailed information concerning the identity, origin, and analysis of numerous chemical parameters. It is an indispensable reference for water pollution studies.

b. Federal Water Pollution Control Administration, Report of the Committee on Water Quality Criteria, Superintendent of Documents, U. S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C., 1968. This is a compilation of FWPCA water quality criteria recommendations and supporting information.

c. McKee, J. E.,and H. W. Wolf, Water Quality Criteria, (2nd ed.), Water Quality Control Board, Sacramento, Calif., 1963. Although dated, this is an outstanding compilation of the technical, social, and legal history of water quality criteria. Reviews of Federal and State policies as well as commentaries on an enormous number of chemical pollutants are included. 3827 references are cited.

d. Sawyer, C. N.,and P. L. McCarty, Chemistry for Sanitary Engineers, (2nd ed.), McGraw-Hill Book Co., New York City, 1968. This is a lucid presentation of the theory and methods of sanitation chemistry intended for the reader possessing a solid foundation in elementary chemistry.

Appendix 1

B. Bacteriology

There are numerous types of bacteria and most environments are capable of supporting some bacterial life. Certain bacteria, including those used in food processing or those found in the soil, which enable plants to obtain nutrients, are beneficial. Some bacteria, however, cause food to decay and are responsible for various diseases.

Water can contain many types of bacteria in large numbers Some of these bacteria are harmless to man, but certain types, termed pathogenic, cause diseases such as typhoid fever, dysentary, and cholera. The possible danger of disease dictates that water be free of pathogenic bacteria. Because the cultivation of pathogenic forms is difficult and requires trained personnel, a group of more easily cultivated bacteria is used to indicate the possible presence of pathogens. These indicator organisms include total coliform, fecal coliform, and fecal streptococci organisms.

1. Total Coliforms

Total coliforms include a group of rod or stick-shaped organisms characterized by their ability to ferment a specific sugar (lactose) at 35°C within 48 hours. Although coliforms are introduced to water supplies via water runoff from soil, drains, etc., they are considered significant as indicator organisms because of their predominance in the intestinal tracts of warm-blooded animals. While not all animal wastes contain pathogens, the excrement of diseased animals and animals serving as carriers of pathogens do present health hazards.

The total coliform density is roughly proportional to the amount of excremental waste present. With exceptions, elevated coliform populations are suggestive of significant contamination by excrement of warm-blooded animals. Several factors which cause fluctuations in total coliform populations are summarized in Table B-1.

Table B-1 Factors Influencing Total Coliform Levels

Higher	Lower
1. Sewage intrusion	1. pH changes
2. Nutritive effluents (containing sugar, dairy wastes, etc.)	2. Temperature changes
3. Storm drain overflows	3. Land runoff (prolonged rain)
4. Land runoff (initial storms)	4. Toxic wastes

Coliform population limits have been set by federal and state health services. These limits vary with the designated use of the water supply and are quite variable within such designations.

Table B-2

Water Quality Criteria with Respect to Total Coliform Populations

Class of Water	Mass.	N.H.	Vt.
a. Drinking water	1 *	1 *	1 *
b. Water of highest quality, designated for ingestion after disinfecting supplies.	50	50	50
c. Suitable for bathing and recreation; irrigation and agricultural uses, good fish habitat; good aesthetic value; acceptable for ingestion filtration and disinfection.	1,000	240	1,000
d. Suitable for recreational boating; irrigation of crops not consumed raw; habitat for wild life and fish; certain industrial cooling and processing use.	Unspecified	--	--
e. Suitable for aesthetic enjoyment, power, navigation, and certain industrial cooling and processing uses.	Unspecified	--	--

*This is a national standard specified by U.S.P.H.S.(1962)

2. Fecal Coliform

Fecal coliform, a component of the total coliform population, is characterized by its ability to reproduce on a special medium (M-FC) at a temperature of 44.5 to 50°C. Because non-fecal coliforms may grow below 44°C and fewer fecal coliforms grow above 45°C, temperature maintenance within the specified tolerance is critical.

Appendix 1

Fecal coliforms are gaining notoriety as pollution indices because of their relatively infrequent occurrence except in association with fecal pollution. Moreover, because survival of the fecal coliform group is shorter in environmental water than for the coliform group as a whole, high fecal coliform levels indicate relatively recent pollution.

When accompanied by fecal streptococci counts, fecal coliform values may aid in the differentiation of animal from human waste (Table B-3). However, caution must be exercised in the interpretation of such data because of technical difficulties in performing precise counts.

Table B-3

Average Individual Density Per Gram of Feces (Indicator Microorganisms From Some Animals)

Animal	Fecal Coliform Million	Fecal Streptococci Million	Ratio Fecal Col./Fecal Strep.
Man	13.0	3.0	4.4
Duck	33.0	54.0	0.4
Sheep	16.0	38.0	0.4
Chicken	1.3	3.4	0.4
Cow	0.23	1.3	0.2
Turkey	0.29	2.8	0.1
Pig	3.3	84.0	0.04

It is anticipated that national standards for water use will be established according to population densities of fecal coliform as shown in Table B-4.

Table B-4

Water Quality Criteria With Respect to Fecal Coliform Population

Kind of Water	Recommended Numbers of Fecal Coliforms
1. Water designated for Primary Contact Recreation	1. Should not exceed a mean of 200/100 ml
2. Water other than for Primary Contact Recreation	2. Should not exceed a mean of 1000/100 ml
3. General Recreational Surface Water	3. Average not to exceed 2000/100 ml

Primary Contact Recreational Activities are defined as those activities in which there is a prolonged and intimate contact with the water involving considerable risk of ingesting water quantities sufficient to pose a significant health hazard.

The Food and Drug Administration recommends that the surface waters above shell fish beds shall not have fecal coliform counts above 70/100 ml.

3. Fecal Streptococci

Fecal streptococcus, as used in this discussion, refers to any streptococcus commonly found in significant numbers in the feces of human or other warm-blooded animals. Fecal streptococci are spherical organisms which generally occur in pairs or short chains when viewed microscopically. They are capable of reproducing at 45°C and, in some instances, at 10°C on a selective medium containing sodium azide and other inhibitors.

Because fecal streptococci do not occur in pure water or virgin soil, their presence in water supplies indicates the existence of warm-blooded animal pollution. Their validity as an index of pollution is enhanced by their inability to reproduce in water supplies. Moreover, fecal streptococci are resistant to salts; therefore, this group could have special value for salt water investigations.

Fecal streptococci determinations, when accompanied by fecal coliform studies, serve as a valuable tool in the differentiation of animal from human wastes (Section 2, Table B-3). In intestinal wastes of human origin, the ratio of number of fecal coliforms to number of fecal streptococci tends to be greater than four. In comparison, when such ratios are determined for intestinal wastes from nonhuman sources, the values tend to be markedly less than 0.7. When interpreting fecal streptococci data, the following three points should be considered.

a. The presence of fecal streptococci in untreated water indicates the presence of fecal pollution by warm-blooded animals.

b. In samples where the source and significance of the coliform group have been questioned, the presence of the streptococcus group should be interpreted as indicating that at least a portion of the coliform group is derived from fecal sources.

c. Because of the uncertainties in die-off rates, the absence of fecal streptococci does not necessarily mean that water is bacteriologically safe.

4. General Procedures

a. Sterilization

It is necessary to sterilize all necessary equipment in order to assure that only bacteria from the collected water sample will be counted. Therefore, the following instructions must be followed closely.

Equipment:

autoclave or pressure cooker

Items for immediate sterilization:

1) for preparation of media (Procedure b)

Petri dishes (number determined by sampling needs)

2) for sample dilution (Procedure e)

1 100-ml graduated cylinder

3 1-ml pipettes

3 125-ml pipettes

3 125-ml flasks

distilled water

3) for filtration (Procedure f)

1-, 5-, 10-ml pipettes (number determined by sampling needs)

Items to be sterilized as needed:

1) for preparation of media (Procedures b and e)

collection of bottles containing 0.2 ml 10% sodium thiosulfate ($Na_2S_2O_3 \cdot 5H_2O$)

2) for preparation of solutions (Procedures c and f)

phosphate buffer in closed container

Method:

1) All glassware and distilled water should be autoclaved. Use 15 lbs. of pressure at 121°C for 15 minutes. The openings of all flasks and cylinders should be wrapped with aluminum foil. Do not autoclave plastic parts or culture media without consulting the manufacturer's instructions.

2) Plastic parts can usually be sterilized by boiling in a water bath for 3 minutes.

3) Filter membranes come presterilized. However, after use, they may be washed off in 95% ethanol, autoclaved at 12 lbs. for 12 minutes for reuse.

   Note: Reuse membranes for the same media only.

4) Petri dishes (Millipore) are presterilized. For reuse, they should be soaked in liquid household bleach for 10 minutes and rinsed thoroughly under running water. Then they should be immersed in 70% isopropyl alcohol for 10 minutes and dried. Following assembly, they may be stored for later use.

b. Preparation of Media

After bacteria are collected and filtered from the water sample, they must be allowed to grow at precise temperatures into visible colonies which can be counted easily. To facilitate growth, the proper nourishment (culture medium) must be provided. Total coliform, fecal coliform, and fecal streptococci require different types of culture media, prepared as follows:

Equipment: (Note glassware need not be sterile.)

3 125-ml flasks

3 100-ml graduated cylinders

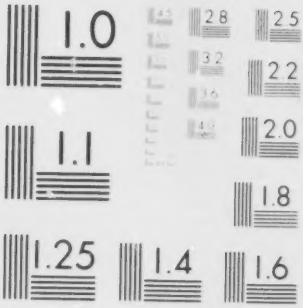
2 2-ml pipettes

2 glass stirring rods

1 balance

1 heat source

1-VZ



MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART
NATIONAL BUREAU OF STANDARDS-1963-A

Reagents and Media:

Dehydrated M-Coliform Broth (MF Endo Broth)

Dehydrated M-FC Broth Base

Dehydrated M-Enterococcus Agar

Agar

Ethanol (95%)

Rosolic Acid

Sodium Hydroxide

Distilled Water (300 ml)

Procedure:

The following methods describe the preparation of agar media for use without pads. This approach is more convenient for preparation of multiple plates. If absorption pads and broth are preferred, omit the agar and add 2 ml of broth to each pad.

1) Total coliform using M-Coliform or MF Endo broth base

   a) Pipette 2 ml 95% ethanol into a 100-ml graduated cylinder and fill with distilled water to the 100 ml mark. Transfer this to a 125-ml flask.

   b) Add 4.8 g of dehydrated M-Coliform or MF Endo broth base and 1.5 g of agar to the diluted alcohol solution. Mix thoroughly. Note: MF Endo broth base can be purchased with agar already added. If this is done, follow the manufacturer's instructions for preparation.

   c) Cover flask with a foil cap and heat the mixture with agitation until it just begins to boil. (Do not reheat or prolong the heating. This reduces the selectivity of the media.)

   d) Cover the bottom of each sterile petri dish with the broth. This should be done while the broth is still warm. It will gel as it cools, allowing the filter membrane to be placed directly on it. Three or 4 dishes are normally prepared for each

water sample (refer to Section e). Petri dishes prepared in this way may be refrigerated for 24 hours.

2) Fecal coliforms using M-FC Broth base

a) Dissolve 0.8 g NaOH in 50 ml distilled water

b) Dissolve 0.1 g rosolic acid in 10 ml 0.2M NaOH prepared in Step a.

c) Place 3.7 g M-FC Broth and 1.5 g agar into a 125-ml flask.

d) Pipette 1 ml 1% rosolic acid solution (prepared in (b)) into a 100-ml graduated cylinder and add distilled water to the 100 ml mark. Pour this mixture into the flask containing the agar and broth base.

e) Place a foil cap on the flask and heat, with continuous agitation, to the boiling point. Remove from the heat immediately to avoid destruction of the selectivity of the medium.

f) Cover the bottom of each sterile petri dish with the warm medium. Dishes prepared according to these instructions may be refrigerated for one week.

3) Fecal streptococcus using M-Enterococcus agar

a) Add 4.2 g M-Enterococcus agar to 100 ml distilled water.

b) Heat to boiling. Remove from the heat immediately to avoid destruction of the selectivity of the medium.

c) Cover the bottom of each sterile petri dish with the warm medium. The prepared dishes may be stored in a cool, dark place for 1 week.

References:

(1) Microbiological Analysis of Water, Millipore Corp., Bedford, Mass., 1969, pp. 3 and 5.

(2) Millipore Experiments in Microbiology, Millipore Corp., Bedford, Mass., 1969, pp. 17-19.

(3) U. S. Department of the Interior, Current Practices in Water Microbiology, U. S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C., 1969.

c. Preparation of Solutions

1) Sodium thiosulfate

Chlorine is added to public water supplies and sewage treatment effluents to kill bacteria. When collecting water samples, it is necessary to "deactivate" any chlorine present to avoid killing bacteria after they are trapped in the collection bottle. If this is not done, false data suggesting low or absent quantities of bacteria may be obtained. Sodium thiosulfate is used to "deactivate" the chlorine and may be prepared and stored. When needed, the correct amount of sodium thiosulfate is added to the collection bottle and is autoclaved to assure sterilization.

Equipment:

1 1-ml pipette

1 125-ml flask

250-ml collection bottles (number determined by sampling needs)

metal foil or paper

Reagents:

Sodium Thiosulfate ($Na_2S_2O_3 \cdot 5H_2O$)

Distilled Water

Procedure:

a) Dissolve 10 g $Na_2S_2O_3 \cdot 5H_2O$ in 50 ml distilled water and dilute to 100 ml.

b) Add 0.2 ml of this sodium thiosulfate solution to each 250-ml bottle. If glass stoppered bottles are used, place a thin strip of paper in the neck to avoid "freezing" of the stopper.

c) Seal cap and neck with foil and autoclave using 15 lbs. pressure at 121°C for 15 minutes. After the bottles are sterilized, they should remain sealed until the time of collection. Label each bottle to identify it as sterilized and ready for use.

2) Phosphate buffer

The collected water samples are to be poured through a membrane filter to trap the bacteria in a later step. It is necessary to rinse the funnel with a sterile phosphate buffer solution to assure that all bacteria are washed onto the membrane. The phosphate buffer may be prepared at any time and sterilized when needed for use.

Equipment:

1 500-ml flask

1 1-liter flask

1 1-liter glass bottle (preferably with glass stopper)

2 2-ml pipettes

pH meter or close range pH paper

Reagents:

Potassium Dihydrogen Phosphate (KH_2PO_4)

Sodium Hydroxide

Distilled Water

Method:

a) Dissolve 34.0 g KH_2PO_4 in 250 ml distilled water and dilute to 500 ml.

b) Prepare a 1M NaOH solution by dissolving 4 g NaOH in 50 ml of distilled water and diluting to 100 ml.

c) Add the 1M NaOH drop by drop to the solution of KH_2PO_4 (Step a) until the pH is 7.2. Read the pH using a pH meter.

d) Dilute the adjusted solution to 1 liter with distilled water. Label the solution as "Stock Phosphate" and store for later use.

e) Add 1.25 ml of this phosphate solution to each liter of distilled water being converted to the "working" phosphate buffered water.

f) Autoclave the buffered water in a closed glass bottle using 15 lbs. pressure at 121°C for at least 15 minutes. Be sure to allow the autoclave pressure to drop slowly!

d. Collection of Water Sample

When collecting a water sample, it is important to select a location which is representative of the body of water. The collection of water too close to the shore or within stagnant areas may not yield a representative sample. A thorough analysis involves sample collection at varying depths (i.e., about every three feet). However, analysis for recreation usage requires only that a sample be taken one foot under the surface in the middle of the swimming area. For larger streams or rivers, a sterile device can be lowered from a bridge into the main current and filled. The sample must not be contaminated by surface scum or unnatural turbidity at any time during or after the collection.

Equipment:

250-ml sterilized collection bottles containing 0.2 ml sodium thiosulfate solution (added before sterilization)

Method:

1) Remove the foil hood and paper strip from the stopper of the sterile bottle.

2) Place the entire bottle under the water in an inverted position and turn it upright. Keep your hands clear of the water entering the bottle. In moving water, it is wise to keep your hands downstream relative to the neck.

3) Fill the bottle about 2/3 full and replace the stopper while the entire unit is still submerged. The air space is left in the bottle to allow adequate mixing of the sample later. The sample should be iced immediately after collection. Samples may be held a maximum of 6 hours in the field if necessary, and an additional 2 hours in the laboratory.

e. Filtration Volumes - Selection and Dilution

In using membrane filtration as a means of detecting bacteria in water, definite limitations arise concerning the number of countable bacteria colonies on each membrane filter. If too many colonies develop, some may be fused together making accurate counting impossible. If there are not enough, the count may not be representative. Therefore, certain ranges

of colonies on each membrane are used as criteria for selecting the dishes which will give the most accurate representation of the bacterial density population (Table B-5).

Table B-5 Recommended Ranges of Colony Counts for Membrane Filtration Techniques

Test	Number of Colonies	
	Minimum	Maximum
Total coliform	20	80
Fecal coliform	20	60
Fecal streptococci	20	100
Total bacteria counts	20	200

The selection of sample volumes which result in counts within the above ranges depends upon the actual bacterial population of the sample. A summary of relationships which exist between filtration volume bacterial levels within samples is presented in Table B-6.

Table B-6 Ranges Covered By Representative Filtration Volumes

ml sample	Bacterial count per 100 ml based on			
filtered	20 colonies	60 colonies	80 colonies	100 colonies
100	20	60	80	100
10	200	600	800	1000
1	2000	6000	8000	10,000
0.1	20,000	60,000	80,000	100,000
0.01	200,000	600,000	800,000	1,000,000

As indicated in the Table, a moderately polluted lake containing several thousand organisms/100 ml would require the filtration of at least 1 ml undiluted water.

1) Procedure for selection of filtration volumes

A direct calculation of the filtration volume can be made if there is prior knowledge of the bacterial population density in the water under study. The following relationship is utilized:

$$\text{Sample filtration volume (ml)} = 100 \times \frac{A}{\text{average count/100 ml}}$$

where A = mid-range number of colonies for an acceptable plate count which varies according to the organisms being detected as follows:

A = 50 for total coliform counts

A = 40 for fecal coliform counts

A = 60 for fecal streptococci counts

As a sample problem consider a stream with an estimated total coliform level of 25,000/100 ml. The calculation is: $100 \times \frac{50}{25{,}000 \text{ total coliform/100 ml}}$

thus giving a required filtration volume of 0.2 ml.

To avoid disappointing results, 3 or 4 different volumes should be analyzed to increase the likelihood that at least one membrane will possess an acceptable number of colonies. The following guidelines may aid in the selection of these varying filtration volumes.

a) Total coliform counts should be based on filtration volumes varying by a factor of 4 or less.

b) Fecal coliform counts should be based on filtration volumes varying by a factor of 5 or less.

c) Fecal streptococci counts should be based on filtration volumes varying by a factor of 5 or less.

If no prior bacterial data are available for a body of water under investigation, Table B-7 will be of assistance.

Table B-7 Filtration Volumes for Waters Not Previously Studied

Source	Filtration Volumes (ml) * Total Coliform	Fecal Coliform	Fecal Strep.
Unpolluted Raw Surface Water	1,4,15,60 (33-8000)	1,3,10,30 (67-6000)	1,5,25,100 (20-10,000)
Polluted Raw Surface Water	.02,.08,.15,.5 (4,000-400,000)	.1,.3,1.0,3.0 (670-60,000)	0.1,0.5,2.0 for Animal Pollution 1000-100,000 (0.2,1.0,5.0) or (400-50,000)
Sewage and Dilute Sewage	.0003,.001,.003 (200,000-27,000,000)	.003,.001,.003 (670,000-20,000,000)	0.2x,1x,5x Total Colif. for Animal Pollution 1x,5x,25x Total Colif. otherwise

* Ranges/100 ml covered by the recommended volumes are enclosed in parenthesis.

2) Procedures for dilution

NOTE: Dilution is necessary only if an acceptable count (see Table B-5) was not obtained by using different filtration volumes of the undiluted raw sample. If dilution is necessary, follow the procedures below, being sure to filter the total diluted volume.

The following procedure is for the preparation of a 1:1,000,000 dilution.

To choose the correct dilution, it is convenient to change the filtration volume to scientific notation involving a volume that can be easily pipetted. For example, 0.002 ml can be written as 0.2 ml x 10^{-2}. Then 0.2 ml of a 1:100 (or 10^{-2}) dilution can be pipetted for filtration.

Equipment:

3 1 ml pipettes (sterilized)

1 100 ml graduated cylinder (sterilized)

3 125 ml flasks (sterilized)

distilled water (sterilized)

Method:

a) Place 99 ml sterile distilled water into each of three sterile flasks.

b) Shake the sample bottle thoroughly to assure a uniform distribution of bacteria.

c) Add 1 ml sample water to Flask 1 containing 99 ml sterile distilled water. Mix well. This gives a dilution of 1:100.

d) Remove 1 ml of mixture from Flask 1 and place into Flask 2. Mix well. This gives a 1:10,000 dilution.

e) Remove 1 ml of mixture from Flask 2 and place into Flask 3. Mix well. This gives a 1:1,000,000 dilution.

(For higher dilutions, continue this procedure.)

f. Preparation of Filter for Incubation

Now that the glassware is prepared, the sample collected and diluted, and the petri dishes filled with medium, you are ready to catch and to grow the bacteria. When the water sample is passed through the membrane filter in the filtration apparatus, the bacteria in the water are trapped on the filter.

By removing the filter and placing it in a petri dish prepared with appropriate nutrients, the bacteria are ready for growth in the incubator. Because of the need to transfer the filter from the filtration apparatus to the petri dish, it is essential to follow the aseptic techniques outlined below.

Equipment:

filtration apparatus *

vacuum system (syringe, hand pump and fittings, or standard vacuum pump)

forceps without corrugations on the inside of the tips

methanol or ethanol

gas burner or alcohol lamp

large, wide container for boiling water bath (if filtration apparatus is not presterilized)

stand to support (lined) flask over burner

sterilized petri dishes containing nutrients

flasks with diluted samples of water being tested

25-ml graduated cylinder (sterilized) - one for each different water sample

presterilized membrane filters

sponge or cloth

100 ml beaker for soaking forceps

sterilized pipettes (number and capacity is determined by sampling needs)

* This procedure assumes apparatus to be unsterile, but autoclaving in advance is acceptable for Millipore Sterifil Filtration System.

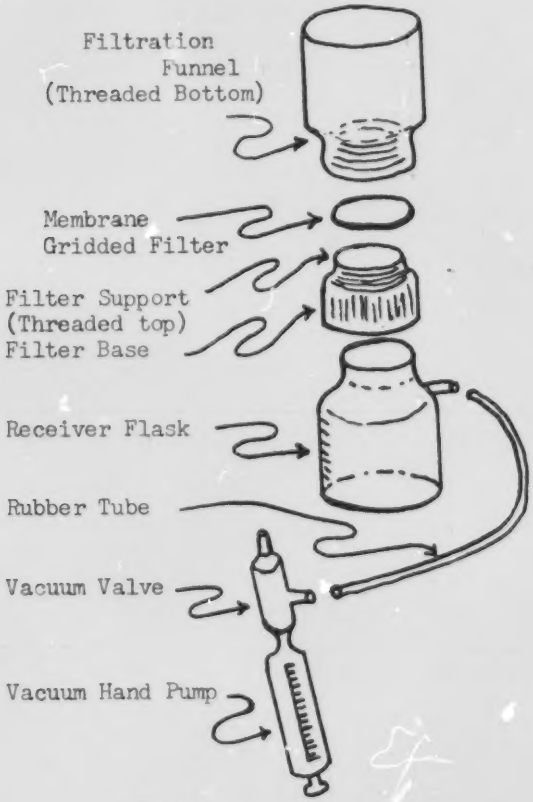


Figure B-1

Method:

1) Set up a boiling water bath by placing a large, wide-mouthed container, containing distilled water, on a stand above a gas burner.

2) Disinfect a laboratory table surface by swabbing it with alcohol. Allow the surface to dry before proceeding. Also swab the bottoms of apparatus to be placed on the table.

3) On the work surface, assemble the funnel unit and receiver flask and connect it to the vacuum system. (Fig. B-1)

4) Set out the petri dishes (raised-lettered side down) and collection bottles.

5) Pour about 20 ml of methanol or ethanol into a small flask and place forceps into the solution. Before using the forceps, they should always be placed briefly in a direct flame from a burner or alcohol lamp to burn off the excess alcohol. Allow them to cool slightly before touching the highly flammable membrane filter.

6) Immerse the filtration funnel and base in the boiling water bath for 3 minutes. After removing them from the water, attach them to the receiver flask. Loosen the funnel to allow placement of the membrane filter.

7) Using flamed forceps, remove a sterile membrane from a sealed package. Discard the blue wax packaging disk and reseal the filter envelope. Place the membrane, grid side up, over the porous plate of the filter support on the filtration apparatus. Carefully place the funnel over the filter base and lock it in place.

8) Pour 20 to 30 ml of sterile buffered water into the funnel. Check for leakage around the funnel base. (If any occurs, repeat Steps 7 and 8.) Leave the buffer solution in the funnel.

9) Shake the prepared sample thoroughly and, using the highest dilution first, pipette the predetermined volume (Procedure e) into the buffer solution in the funnel. (Be sure the pipette is sterilized.) If more than 20 ml of the sample is to be filtered, a sterile graduated cylinder may be used in lieu of the pipette.

10) Reduce the pressure in the receiver flask by creating a partial vacuum in it. Use either a hand pump (e.g., Millipore Vacuum System) or an electric pump.

11) Rinse the funnel by filtering three volumes of 20 to 30 ml of sterile buffered water through the membrane.

12) Loosen the filtration funnel. Remove the cover of a petri dish. Remove the filter membrane from the filter support with flamed forceps. Place the filter membrane, grid side up, on the medium in the petri dish, using a rolling motion to avoid trapping any air.

    Replace the lid on the dish and label it on the bottom, identifying the sample and the filtration volume.

13) Before preparing the next membrane, sterilize the forceps by putting them into the alcohol. Do not forget to flame them. (The rinse with the buffer solution is sufficient to clean the funnel.)

14) Starting with Step 7, repeat the procedures for the remaining sample volumes.

    Note: The buffer rinses (Step 11) clean the funnel sufficiently for all subsequent filtration unless analyzing water samples for drinking purposes.

g. Incubation

As pointed out in "Preparation of Media," bacteria need culture media to grow well. The bacteria also need warmth, moisture, and darkness to grow rapidly. Therefore, the petri dishes containing the bacteria are placed in an incubator to assure proper conditions.

Method:

1) Incubation of total coliforms

After preparation, invert the petri dishes containing total coliform cultures and place them in a standard incubator for 24 hours at 35$\pm$ 0.5^{o}C.

Note: The humidity within the incubator must approach 100%; however, when tightly sealed plastic petri dishes are used, a portion of the broth evaporates, raising the humidity within the dish itself to 100% and making

adjustment of the humidity outside the dishes unnecessary. If dish covers are loose fitting, the humidity can be maintained by placing a vegetable crisper containing wet towels in the incubator. The dishes are then placed on top of the towels and covered with the crisper's lid.

2) Incubating fecal coliform cultures

a) After preparation, invert the petri dishes containing fecal coliform cultures and place them in waterproof plastic bags (3 to 6 dishes per bag).

b) Submerge the bags in waterbath incubator and incubate at 44.5±0.2°C.

Note: The temperature of the waterbath is critical. Above 44.7°C. counts drop rapidly. Below 44.3°C specificity is lost. Therefore, no more than 20 minutes should elapse between filtration and incubation to prevent nonfecal coliform colonies from developing at lower temperatures. Submergence in waterproof plastic bags reduces the temperature equilibrium time considerably.

3) Incubating fecal streptococcus cultures

After innoculation, invert the petri dishes containing fecal streptococcus cultures. Place them in a standard incubator for 48 hours at 35±0.5°C.

h. Counting Techniques

If all the previous steps were carefully followed, bacterial colonies should now be visible for counting. The results of the count allow us to determine whether the water source is polluted and, if so, how badly.

Method:

1) Counting

a) Place the petri dish to be counted under the microscope after removing the lid. Lighting for the counts must be from a fluorescent light source as close to directly above the petri dish as possible; the image of the light source is reflected off the colony surfaces into the microscope.

b) Count colonies in an orderly back-and-forth sweep from top to bottom of the filter, using grids as channels. Be sure to avoid mixing any colonies or counting any colonies twice simply because they are

in contact with a grid-line. Count all colonies individually. Even if two or more are in contact, almost invariably, they show a fine line of contact. Other individual colonies may have grown to unusual shapes because of particles or fibres that may have found their way onto the filter membrane. A hand tally is convenient for counting the colonies.

Note: In dishes of total coliform colonies, the coliform colonies demonstrate a greenish metallic luster, or "sheen," which may cover the entire surface of the colony or may appear only in the center of the colony. (Any amount of "sheen" production denotes a coliform colony.) Noncoliform colonies are lighter and do not show this "sheen" even though they may be shiny. In the fecal coliform dishes, the fecal coliform colonies are blue and all other colonies are cream colored (any amount of blue is positive). Fecal streptococcus colonies have a reddish hue, while other colonies range from cream to clear.

2) Calculations:

The count from your membrane must be adjusted for the dilution of the sample and the volume filtered. Results should be in coliforms per 100 ml

Number of Coliform/100 ml

$$= \frac{\text{Number of colonies}}{\text{Vol. of filtration sample}} \times 100$$

For your calculations use the petri dish from the dilution that gives a direct count between 20 and 80. If there are too many colonies on all three dishes, the number is recorded as "T. N. T. C." (too numerous to count). The following shows sample data and calculation:

Sample	Dish #1	Dish #2	Dish #3
No. of coliform	TNTC	39	7
Dilution	1:100	1:10,000	1:1,000,000
Volume filtered	20 ml	20 ml	20 ml

Dish #2 is used for the calculation because the number of colonies was between 20 and 80.

Number of coliform/100 ml

$$= \frac{39}{20 \times 1/10{,}000} \times 100 = 1{,}950{,}000/100 \text{ ml}$$

i. Disposal of Cultures

Cultures, whether on filters or in any other medium should be handled with the utmost care, as if they were all potentially dangerous. When you have completed the experiment and observed the results, the cultures should be destroyed or deactivated, and the the petri dishes resterilized. This can be accomplished by the following procedure:

1) Using forceps, carefully remove the petri dish covers and place both covers and dishes into a large beaker or pan containing liquid household bleach for 10 minutes. Unless membranes are to be preserved or reused, they should also be soaked in the bleach.

2) If membranes are to be reused, they should be soaked in ethanol to destroy the colonies. Then sterilization should be completed according to page A-50, step 3.

3) Membranes may be preserved with colonies by drying on a paper towel. They may even be reconstituted with distilled water for later demonstrations.

5. Bibliography

a. American Public Health Association, Standard Methods for the Examination of Water and Wastewater, (13th ed.), American Public Health Association, Inc., New York City, 1971. This is an essential, comprehensive reference for water quality studies, which includes methods of qualitative and quantitative bacterial investigations.

b. Federal Water Pollution Control Administration, Report of the Committee on Water Quality Criteria, U. S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C., 1968. It summarizes FWPCA recommendations for water classification categories and criteria and serves as a valuable aid in the interpretation of test results.

c. McKee, J. E., and H. W. Wolf, Water Quality Criteria, (2nd ed.), Water Quality Control Board, Sacramento, Calif., 1963. This is a thoroughly documented coverage of nationwide water quality policies, biological effects of pollutants, and judicial action.

d. Pelczar, M. J., and R. D. Reid, Microbiology, McGraw-Hill Book Co., New York City, 1965. This elementary microbiology textbook includes introductions to the taxonomy, biochemistry, cultivation, control and ecological roles of microorganisms.

e. Microbiological Analysis of Water, Millipore Corp., Bedford, Mass., 1969. A variety of specific techniques for the isolation and identification of bacteria in water samples is presented.

f. Experiments in Microbiology, Millipore Corp., Bedford, Mass., 1969. It contains an illustrated introduction to membrane filtration and culturing techniques and theory and is supplemented by experiments oriented toward the beginning student.

C. Aquatic Biology

A biological investigation of an aquatic community should lead to an understanding of the extent to which it has been affected by man. In order to obtain this understanding, those doing the investigating must be able to assess the biological effects of pollution, to identify organisms, to understand and employ field and laboratory procedures, and to interpret the data which they collect. The following section contains information which will be useful to those conducting a biological investigation.

1. The Basis of the Biological Evaluation of Pollution

Pollutants may affect aquatic environments in two ways. Indirectly, they may produce modifications such as altering the food chain, changing the average annual temperature, or reducing the concentration of dissolved oxygen. Directly, pollutants may act physically or physiologically on the resident organisms.

Biological effects of pollutants may be studied by field observation, laboratory evaluation, or both. In the field, evaluations are usually based on comparisons with an actual or imaginary unpolluted reference or "control" site. For example, the aquatic life downstream from a point of pollution might be compared with that upstream from the source of pollution. Also, the quality of aquatic life in a polluted area may be compared to previous conditions in that area if "prepollution" studies had been made.

Likewise, laboratory evaluation almost always involves a comparison, or control, setup. For instance, the bioassay technique involves the exposing of some type of organism to a series of concentrations of some substance for a stated period of time under controlled conditions.

Qualitative and quantitative evaluations may be used to indicate the "health" of aquatic environments. The indicator concept is based on the idea that there must be some organism which is found only in polluted areas. This is true only for certain types of bacteria which are present in the intestines of warm-blooded aminals. Finding these bacteria demonstrates a strong likelihood that animal excrement is present. Higher forms of life which are pollution-tolerant may also be found in clean water; therefore, finding of these organisms does not necessarily indicate pollution. The species composition of an aquatic community is sensitive to environmental conditions and hence to pollution.

Quantitative data may refer to an entire aquatic community or only to selected or individual taxon. Numbers of individuals, quantity (biomass), or both may be investigated. Rate of production, food web interrelationships, and energy flow might also be investigated.

2. The Identification of Aquatic Organisms

Questions usually posed about an organism which is seen for the first time are "What is it?" and "What is its name?" Because there are over a million and a half kinds (species) of organisms known, a rather elaborate file reference system must be used for naming and classification.

The system of biological nomenclature consists of a series of groupings, or taxa (singular: taxon). Species is the foundation taxon. Similar species are grouped into genera (singular: genus), and similar genera are grouped into families. The system continues in a like manner to order, class, phylum (plural: phyla), and kingdom. Kingdom is thus the broadest, or most inclusive, taxon.

An investigator must make a decision, based upon the purposes for which he wishes to use his data, as to how precisely he wishes to identify the organisms which he observes. For some purposes he might want to know only how many kinds of organisms were present. In this case he could simply designate them as species (a), species (b), species (c), etc. These designations would be based upon careful observations of likenesses and differences of the organisms studied. This type of "classification" would be acceptable for beginning students. If more precision is desired, an investigator would probably make use of an identification key.

The following key to basic types of plankton and small aquatic organisms should enable the student to determine the general type of organism he is observing. He may then wish to proceed to a more complete key. Identification to species level will usually be very difficult and should only be attempted under the guidance of a taxonomist of recognized competence in the particular taxon in question.

Appendix I

Key To Types of Plankton And Other Aquatic Organisms*

Read each question in turn, refer to the specimen for the answer. If the answer is yes, proceed to the paragraph indicated in the "yes" column; if no, turn to the paragraph number in the "no" column. If you have made a mistake, the "no" column reference may send you back to reexamine some earlier decision.

If the answer is "yes," there may be no number given in the "yes" column, but there will be a name in capital letters which is the name of the group of organisms to which the specimen belongs, and a plate number is cited which illustrates one or more examples.

*This Key was prepared by Dr. H. W. Jackson, Training Program, Federal Water Pollution Control Administration, Cincinnati, Ohio.

	Yes	No
1. Is it necessary to use a microscope to see the organism?	3	2
2. Is the organism, or a mass of it, some shade of green or brown? (The shape is probably stringy, round or shapeless.)	9	13
3. Is the body relatively complex, with many tiny active hairs or other external structures and complicated insides?	11	4
4. Do the cells contain internal bodies (usually green or golden brown) called chloroplasts? (Sometimes these cells are contained inside outer covers which may hide them completely or partially. Sometimes they have red "eyespots" or long slender hairs called flagellae.)	6	5
5. Are the cells without any, or at least with very little visible, internal structure? Generally, these cells are bluish-green in color (especially a mass of them together) and are very minute. If so, they are Blue-Green Algae. See Plates I, II.	--	3

	Yes	No
6. Do these tiny plants consist of single cells or groups of cells which move about by means of one or more long slender hair-like "flagellae?" Red eyespots usually can be seen.* If so, they are Flagellates. See Plates V, VI. *One kind is large and filled with rust-red granules.	--	7
7. Are they golden brown in color, with a tendency to sharply angular edges? They may be cylindrical, thread-like or boat-shaped. Some may move in a hesitant manner. If so, these are Diatoms. See Plates VII, VIII.	--	8
8. These plants are all green. Do they consist of single cells or small clumps of 2 to 4 cells, but not long strings or filaments? (No flagellae or movement should be observed. If it is, return to 6.) These are Coccoid Green Algae. See Plate III.	--	9
9. The following plants (9 and 10) are all filamentous or thread-like, and consist of single cells; cylindrical, barrel-shaped, or roundish, attached end-to-end. Is green pigment (chlorophyll) contained in various shaped bodies within the cells (chloroplasts)? If the mass of filaments appears green or yellow-green to the naked eye, they are Filamentous Green Algae. See Plate IV.	--	10
10. Are the cells of the filament apparently without internal structure (although confused "pseudovacuoles" may sometimes be seen)? Larger oblong cells with heavy walls (heterocysts) or apparently empty cells (akinetes) may occur. Some types with smooth surfaces may move slowly but visibly. Mass of filaments appears some shade of bluish-green or red to the naked		

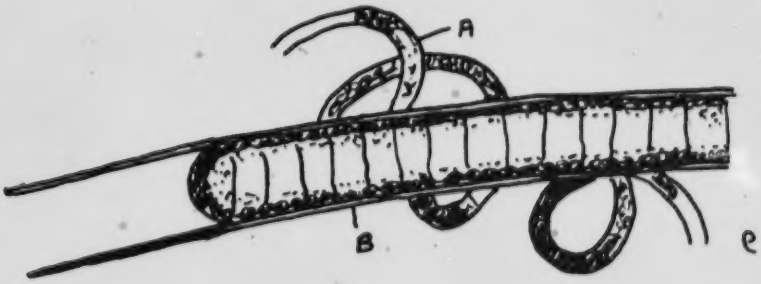
	Yes	No
eye, occasionally very dark. If as above, these are Filamentous Blue-Green Algae. See Plates I, II.	--	4
11. Is the body composed of a single cell or unit? It may be enclosed in a shell or sheath. It may bear cilia over all or part of the body; flagellated forms may also be encountered: Protozoa. See Plates IXa and IXb.	--	12
12. Is the noncolored body of the organism composed of many cells, with well organized internal structures? There are often one or two crowns of tiny hairs or cilia (which can rarely be seen individually) at one end. One common type crawls like an "inchworm," or "accordion"; others have flattened shells, spines, or other features, but there are no true legs. If as above, this is a Rotifer. See Plate X.	--	13
13. Does the specimen have jointed appendages (joints in the body can also usually be seen), usually with characteristic hairs or setae (may not be extended unless animal is active)?	14	3
14. Is the body completely enclosed in two minute clam-like shells? Jointed legs may be extended from between shells for swimming. These are microcrustaceans, Ostracods. See Plate XII.	--	15
15. Does the elongated, segmented, transparent body (which may range up to approximately 1/2 inch in length) have a head with two eyes? If so, this is a phantom midge larva, an insect: Chaoborus. See Plate XII.	--	16
16. Does the organism have a single eye and two shell-like projections that come down on either side of the legs? Eggs may be present in a large pouch inside the upper back part of the shell.		

	Yes	No
This is another microcrustacean, a water flea: Cladocera. See Plate XI.	--	17
17. Is there a single eye, the body relatively cylindrical, no side shells, usually tapering toward the rear? There may be segments (or joint) in the body. Two large front "legs" (actually antennae) are used for locomotion. This is another microcrustacean, a Copepod. See Plate XI.	--	18
18. Is the body similar to the above, but roundish or pear-shaped, smaller, and with no segmentation or joints in the body? There are three pairs of relatively large legs. This is the larva of a copepod called a Nauplius. See Plate XI.	--	11

Appendix I

Blue-Green Algae Myxophyceae

Oscillatoria spp., filaments (trichomes) range from .6 to over 60 μ in diameter. Ubiquitous, pollution tolerant.

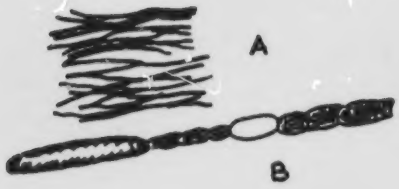


Lyngbya spp., similar to Oscillatoria but has a sheath. A, Lyngbya contorta, reported to be generally intolerant of pollution; B, L. birgei.

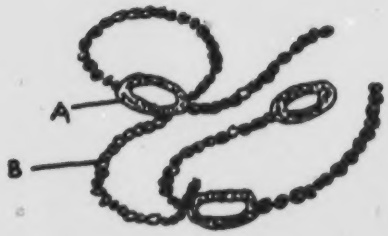
Plate I a.

Appendix I

Blue-Green Algae Myxophyceae



Aphanizomenon flos-aquae A, colony; B, filament



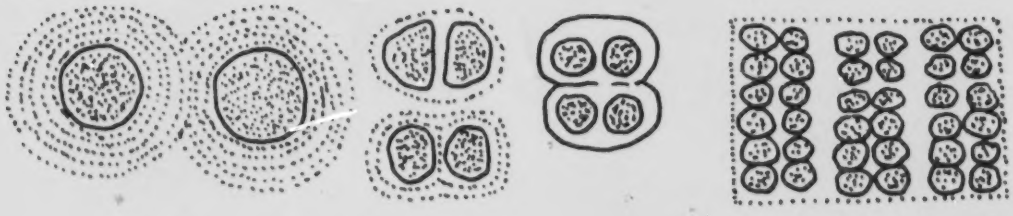
Anabaena flos-aquae A, akinete; B, heterooyst

Plate I b.

Appendix I

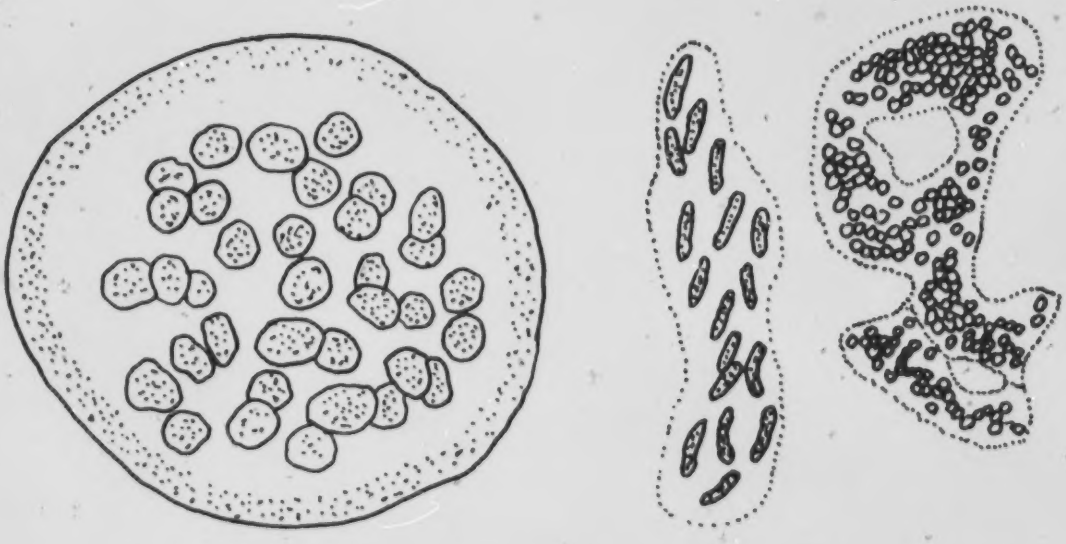
Some Blue-Green Algae

I. Nonfilamentous (coccoid) Blue-Green Algae:



Anacystis (Chroococcus) (X600)

Agmenellum (Merismopedium) (X600)



Coccochloris (Gloeocapsa)(X600)

Microcystis (X600)

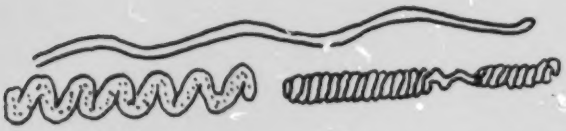
Polycystis (X825)

Plate II a.

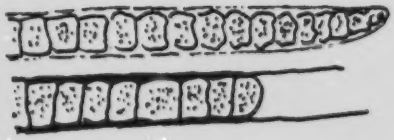
Appendix I

Some Blue-Green Algae

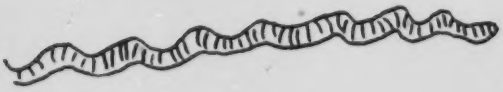
II. Filamentous blue-green algae:



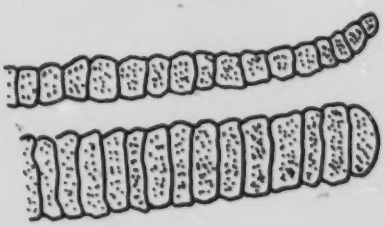
Trichomes of Spirulina. (X600)



Phormidium (with sheath) (X825)



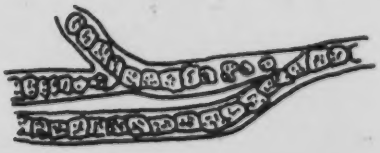
Trichomes of Arthrospira (X600)



Oscillatoria (without sheath) (X825)

Anabaena (X825)

True branching Hapalosiphon (X375)

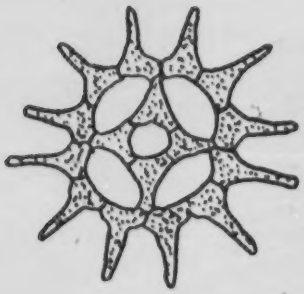


False branching Tolypothrix (X375)

Plate II b.

Appendix I

Nonmotile Green Algae: Coccoid
(Chlorophyceae)



Pediastrum

Species of the Genus Scenedesmus

S. caudatus

S. abundans

S. dimorphus

Plate III a.

Appendix I

Nonmotile Green Algae: Coccoid
(Chlorophyceae)

Desmids

Closterium

Cosmarium

Staurastrum

Plate III b.

Appendix I

Nonmotile Green Algae

(Chlorophyceae)

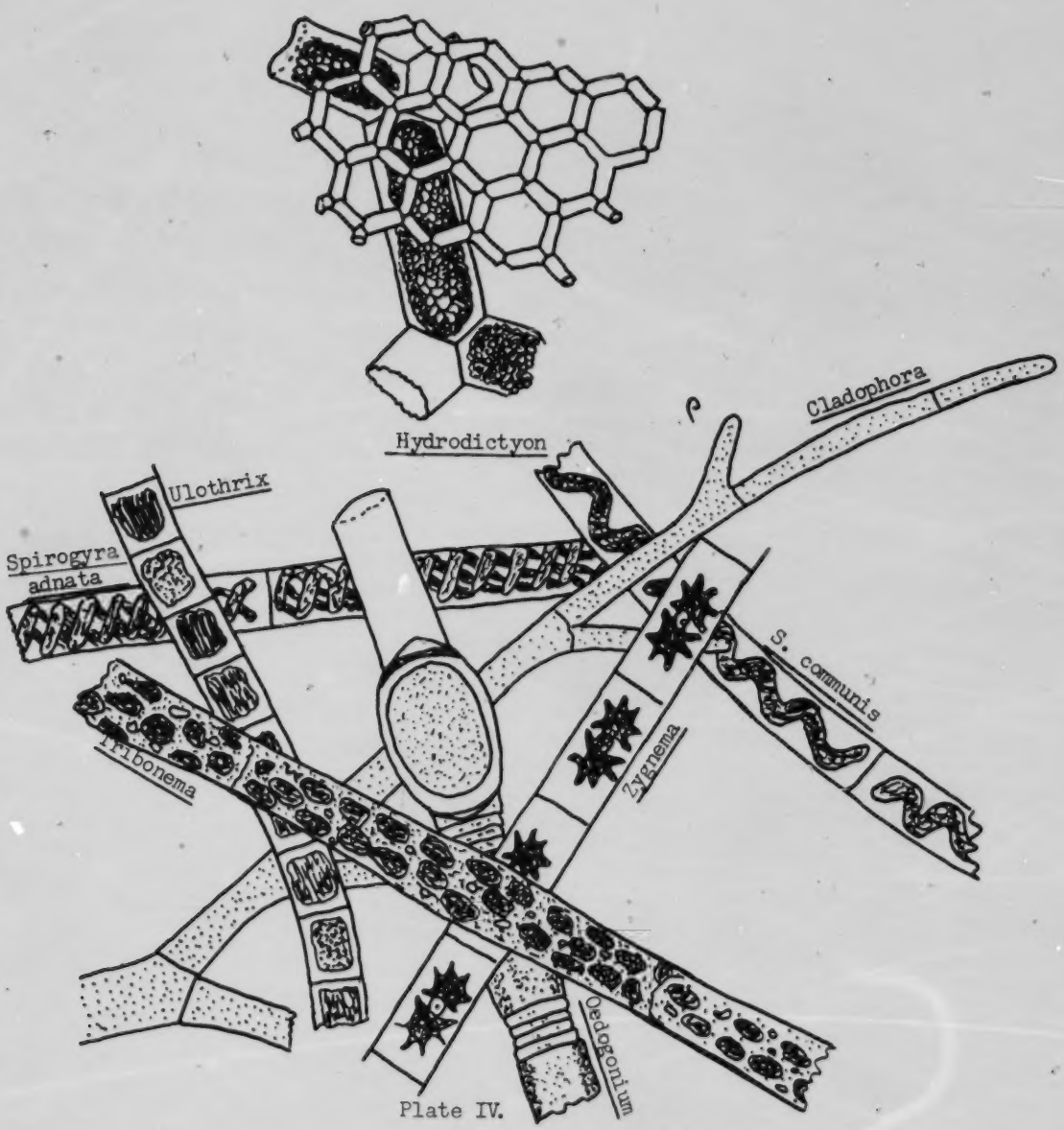


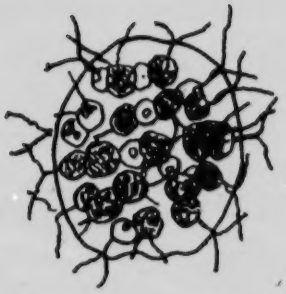
Plate IV.

Appendix I

Flagellated Algae

Goniaulax

Ceratium



Eudorina

Plate V a.

Appendix I

Flagellated Algae

Trachelomonas

Chlamydomonas

Mallomonas

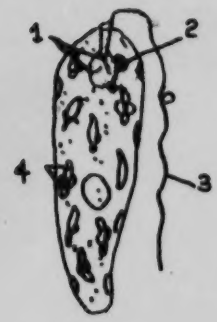
Dinobryon
A, form of colony; B, cell in lorica.

Plate V b. 319

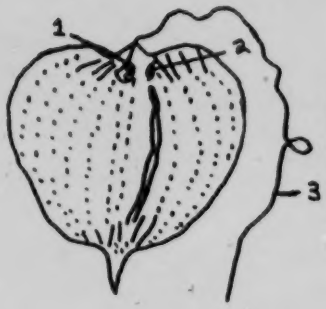
Appendix I

General Morphology Of Algal Flagellates

Greens

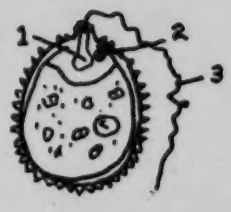


Euglena gracilis



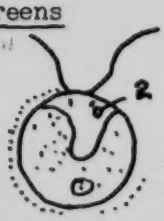
Phacus

Lepocinclis



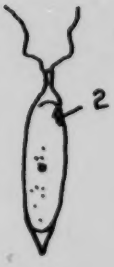
Trachelomonas

Greens

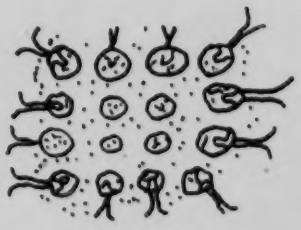


Chlamydomonas

Carteria



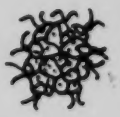
Chlorogonium



Gonium Sociale

Colony of Volvox

Gonium Pectorale Colony



Pandorina Colony

Plate VI a.

Appendix I

General Morphology of Algal Flagellates

Yellows

Chromulina

Synura

Dinobryon

Lorica

Browns

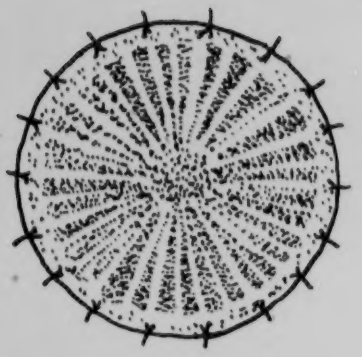
Peridinium

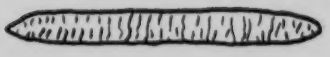
Gymnodinuim

Plate VI b.

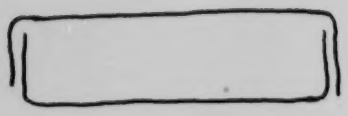
Appendix I

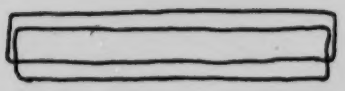
Diatoms - Bacillariophyceae





Valve views





Girdle views,
Stylized to show
basic diatom
structure.

A discoid or central
diatom such as
Stephanodisous

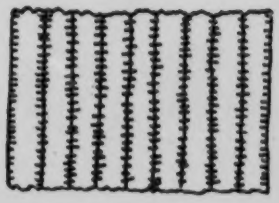
A pennate or navicular
datom such as
Synedra

Plate VII a.

Appendix I

Diatoms - Bacillariophyceae

A colony of Asterionella
(girdle views)



A colony of Fragillaria
(girdle views)

A

B

Gomphonoma
A, valve view; B, girdle view.

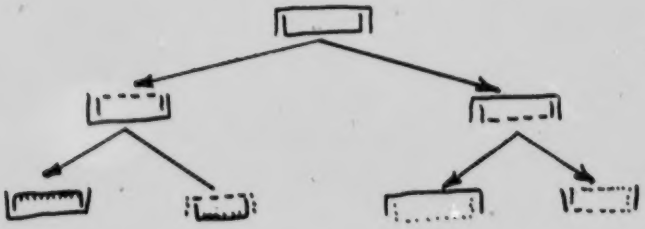


Diagram showing progressive diminution in the size of certain frustules through successive cell generations of a diatom.

Plate VII b.

Photomicrograph of Diatoms

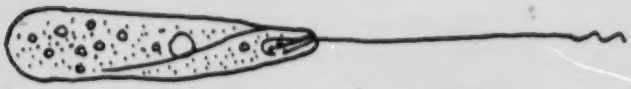
Plate VIII.

Appendix I

Phylum Protozoa

Class Mastigophora, the flagellates

Bodo
Pollution tolerant
19 μ



Peranema
(moderately pollution tolerant)
25 μ

Anthophysis
Pollution tolerant
6 μ

Colony of Poteriodendron
Pollution tolerant, 35 μ

Naegleria
(Pollution tolerant)
10 - 50 μ

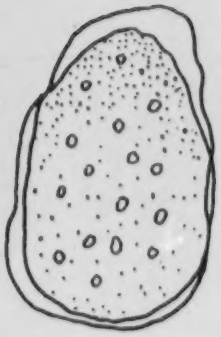
Plate IX a.

Appendix I

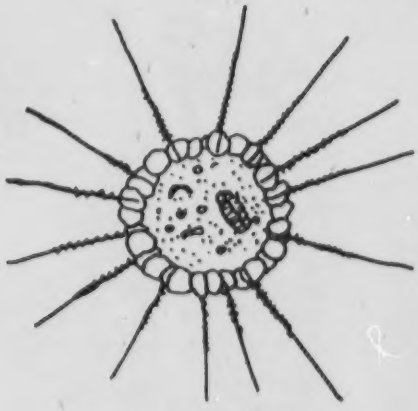
Phylum Protozoa

Class Sarcodina, the amoebas

Some forms often found as plankton:

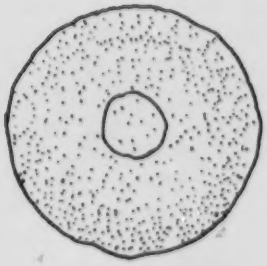


Ameba
45 μ

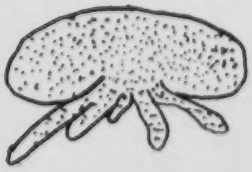


Actinosphaerium
(Pollution tolerant)
up to 300 μ

Top



Side



Arcella
(Pollution tolerant)
40 μ

Plate IX b.

Appendix I

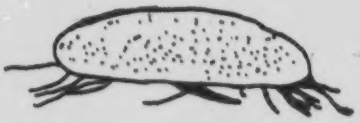
Phylum Protozoa

Class Ciliophora, the ciliates

Podophrya, a suctorian ciliate. Pollution tolerant. 20-50 μ

Euplotes
Pollution tolerant, 90 μ

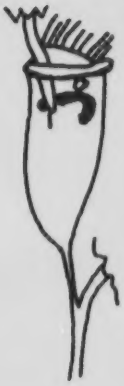
Central View



Side View

Colpoda
Pollution tolerant
20-120 μ

Holophrya, reported to be intolerant of pollution, 35 μ



Epistylis, pollution tolerant. Colonies often macroscopic.

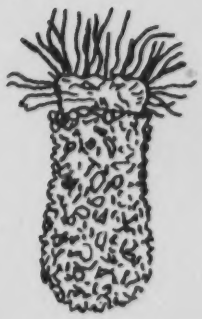
Plate IX c.

Appendix I

Phylum Protozoa

Class Ciliophora, the ciliates

Some forms often found as plankton:

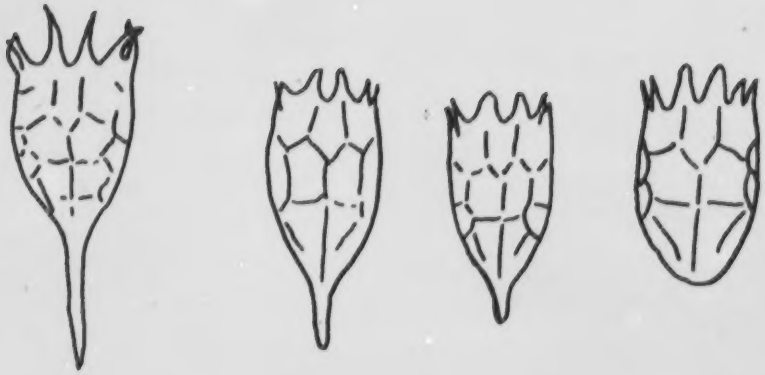


Vorticella	Codonella	Tintinnidium
(Pollution tolerant) Head 75 - 100 μ	60 - 70 μ	100 - 200 μ

Plate IX d.

Appendix I

Planktonic Rotifers



Various Forms of Keratella cochlearis

Philodino Rotaria type

Plate X a.

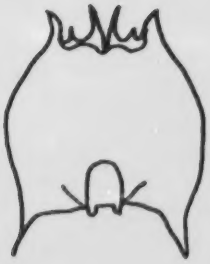
Appendix I

Planktonic Rotifers

Various Forms of Keratella Cochlearis

Synchaeta

Polygarthra

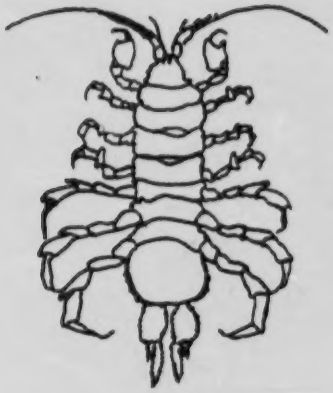


Brachionus

Plate X b.

Appendix I

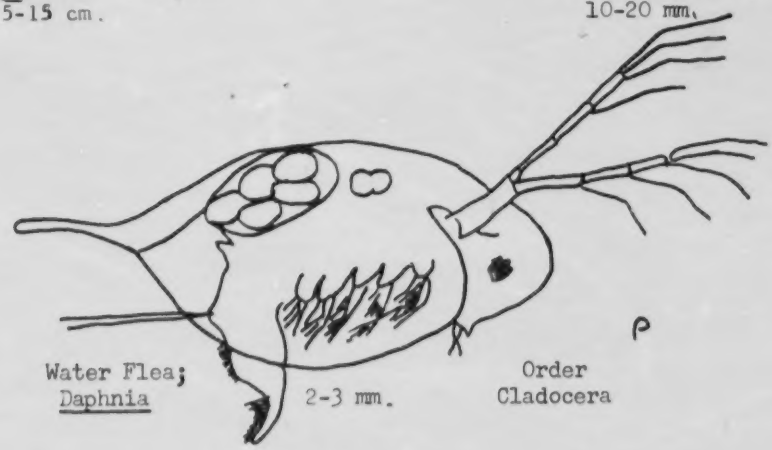
Class Crustacea



Fairy Shrimp;
Eubranchipus, Order
Phyllopoda
20-25 mm.

Crayfish, or crawdad;
Cambarus, Order Deoapoda
5-15 cm.

Aquatic Sow Bug; Asellus,
Order Isopoda
10-20 mm.



Water Flea;
Daphnia

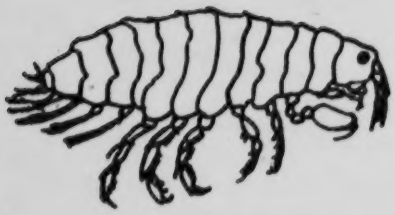
2-3 mm.

Order
Cladocera

Plate XI a.

Appendix I

Class Crustacea



Scud; Hyalella,
Order Amphipoda
10-15 mm

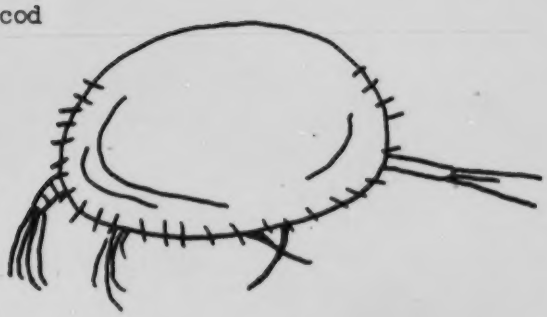
Fish Louse; Argulus,
a parasitic Copepod
5-6 mm

Copepod; Cyclops, Order Copopoda
2-3 mm

Plate XI b.

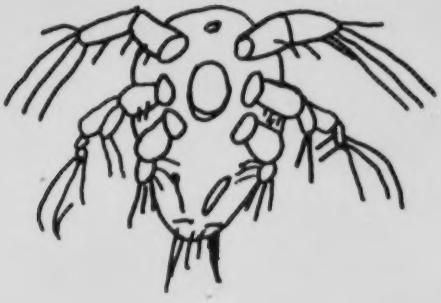
Appendix I

Ostracod

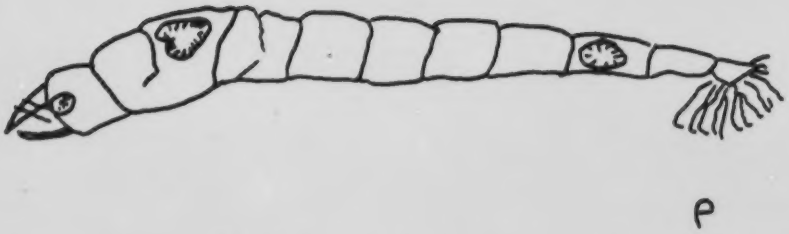


Left: Shell closed

Right: Appendages extended



A Nauplius larva of a Copepod



P

<u>Chaoborus</u> midge larva

Plate XII

3. Biological Field Methods

Biological field activities usually consist of two major activities: the collection of specimens and the recording of careful observations. Compact kits of field collecting equipment and materials greatly increase efficiency, especially if the collection site is remote from transportation. All collecting containers should be identified with location, station number, sample number, and the date. Much time may be saved by using data sheets or cards with uniform arrangement for entering the data. The same data sheet may include laboratory or field analysis. Sample data sheets are included at the end of this section. Field notes should be taken in pencil to preserve them in case they get wet.

Observations of the general biological and physical characteristics of the sampling site should be recorded before any sampling is done. Underwater swimming or the use of scuba may be valuable in certain locations for direct observation and collecting. Underwater and aerial photography may be useful.

Because of the diverse nature of aquatic organisms, different methods of collection are used for the various kinds. Aquatic mammals and birds usually require other approaches and are not included. Collection methods for oceanic, estuarine, or freshwater situations are similar. Marine organisms range to larger sizes than those of freshwater. Because of the corrosive nature of sea water, special care should be taken in the design and maintenance of collecting equipment. Site selection and collection schedules for marine sampling are influenced by such factors as tidal currents and salinity distribution rather than river currents, riffles, and pools. Lake collection usually shows less predictable flow patterns. Before going into the field, the investigator should decide on the size range of the organisms to be collected (microscopic, macroscopic) and the kind of organisms (invertebrates, vertebrates, vascular or nonvascular plants) which he will seek.

The following sections explain the collection methods for four groups of aquatic life:

a. Benthos

These are bottom dwelling organisms. They may be attached, crawling, or burrowing forms. Some of the collecting devices are shown in Plates I and II. In most instances, home-made equipment can be substituted for the standard research type. Hand picking of benthic organisms from rocks, sticks, etc., that have been picked out of the water is a fast and much used method for quickly

determining what is present and what might be expected in additional samples.

Patches of seaweed and eelgrass and shallow weedy margins are most often studied on a qualitative basis only. The apron net is used for collections in weed beds or in other heavy vegetation. It is simply a pointed wire sieve on a long handle with coarse screening on the top to keep out leaves and sticks. Poking it into and then withdrawing it from the weed masses is the method of operation.

Masses of weeds may be pulled out on the bank (with rakes, grappling hooks, etc.). The benthic organisms can then be observed as they crawl out.

Quantitative estimates of both plants and animals can be made by using a "stove pipe" sampler. This is a hollow tube which is forced down through the weed mass in shallow water and embedded in the bottom. The contents can then be removed and placed into a series of sieves for sorting.

A frame of known dimensions can be placed on the bottom, and the material within is then cropped out. This is especially good for larger plants and for large bivalves. It is also useful on sand and mud flats.

Handle-operated samplers, such as the Jackson, are effective for sampling a variety of bottoms down to the depth of the handles. Such samples are then washed through graded screens to retrieve the organisms.

The Ekman Dredge is a device which is used to collect bottom samples. It should be used in bodies of water which have muddy or sandy bottoms. It will not work well on gravel or rocky bottoms.

The dredge is lowered into the water until it comes to rest on the bottom. In shallow water, you can place it on the bottom; for deeper water, you lower it on a line or a stick. Next the spring mechamism is tripped. This is done by hand in shallow water and by using the messenger (a device which comes with the dredge) in deep water. After the spring is released, the jaws snap shut and enclose the sample. Finally, bring the dredge to the surface and empty the sample into a plastic bag. Refrigerate or cool the bag if the sample will not be studied within an hour. (Benthic organisms decompose rapidly in warm weather.)

Dump the sample out onto the top of a series of graduated mesh, brass screens. The screen with the largest mesh (size of openings) should be on the top and that with the smallest

on the bottom. Mesh sizes in between should be arranged in order of decreasing mesh size. Flood the sample with water. (Stirring the sample may be helpful.) This procedure will effect two sortings according to size, "soil" particles and macroinvertebrates. Use forceps to collect the macroinvertebrates. Count, identify, mass, and preserve them.

You may want to compute the density and the biomass of the macroinvertebrates and relate these to other parameters of your study. You may want to study the relationship between "soil" particle size and type and the macroinvertebrates present. An Ekman Dredge can be ordered from Wildlife Supply Company, Saganaw, Michigan and other companies. The cost is about $60.

The Petersen type, which grabs without weights, will take satisfactory samples in firm muds but tends to bury itself in very soft bottoms. It is seldom used in shallow water except as noted below.

The riffle (rift) is one of the most satisfactory habitats for comparing stream conditions at different locations. The hand screen is the simplest and easiest device to use, but the resulting collections are qualitative only. The screen is firmly placed in the stream bed. The upstream bottom is thoroughly disturbed with the feet. The current carries the organisms to the screen. The screen is then lifted, and the contents are dumped into a sorting tray or collecting jar.

The Surber Square Foot Sampler is one of the best quantitative collection devices for rifts. It is firmly planted on the bottom. The stones and other material within the square frame are carefully rubbed by hand to dislodge all benthic organisms. The current carries them into the net. A stiff vegetable brush is often useful, especially if the bottom materials are covered with moss. When bottom materials are picked up which are free from macroinvertebrates, the sampling is finished. Before removing the sampler from the water, the bottom should be "fanned" with the hand to kick up any macroinvertebrates which may have fallen straight down rather than being carried into the net. The organisms are then removed from the net and placed in a plastic bag or a collection bottle. To insure a representative sampling, 3 to 5 square foot samples should be taken at each location.

A Petersen type grab may be used in deep swift riffles. It is placed on the bottom and worked into place with the feet or with poles. After being closed, it is lifted by pulling on the rope in the usual manner.

A strong medium-weight dipnet is the closest thing to a universal collecting tool. Collections are made by sweeping through weeds, over the bottom, or in open water. The handle should be from 4 to 6 feet long and about the weight of a garden rake handle. The rim should be made of steel or brass. The size of the rim stock will depend on the size of the rim; it should be strong but not cumbersome. The netting should be the strongest available preferably with about a 1/16 inch mesh. Nets which are too fine plug up easily and cannot be moved quickly through the water. The net must be protected around the rim. This can be done by sewing canvas, leather, or pieces of old innertube around the rim.

When sampling from vessels, a crane or winch is often used. The general ideas described for shallow water often apply also to deeper waters. The Petersen type grab is probably the best all-around sampler for the greatest variety of bottoms at all depths, from shoreline down to over 10,000 meters. If hauled by hand, the grab should be fitted with 5/8 or 3/4 inch diameter rope in order to provide an adequate hand grip. It is best handled by means of wire ropes and a winch.

Drag dredges or scrapes (Plate I) are often used in marine waters. They have not been used to any great extent in freshwater studies.

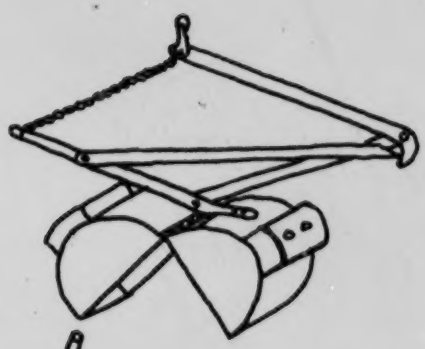
Since most biological communities are not evenly distributed, one should routinely take at least two, and preferably more, samples from any one site.

Artificial substrates (growing surfaces) are also used in studying benthic organisms. When an artificial habitat is exposed in a given site for 2 to 3 weeks, it tends to become populated by all available species partial to that type of habit. These devices can then be collected and taken to the laboratory for evaluation. They consist of such items as cement plates and panels, wood (especially for burrowing forms), glass, microscope slides (Catherwood diatometer), the Hester-Dendy Sampler, baskets holding natural bottom material, ropes suspended in the water, and sticks thrust into the bottom. The Hester-Dendy Sampler is easily made and lends itself well to student use; therefore, it is described in detail below.

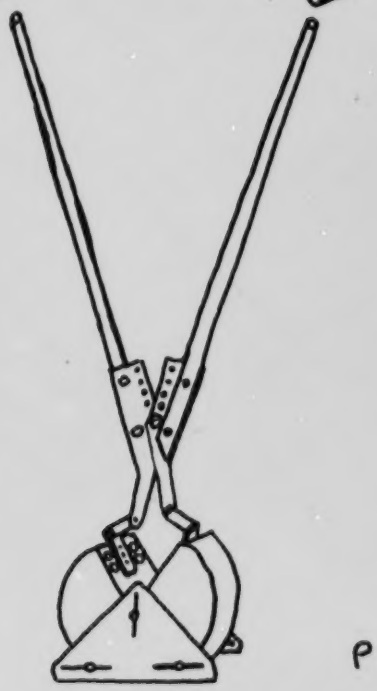
The Hester-Dendy Sampler is used to collect benthic (bottom-dwelling) macroinvertebrates. It can also be used to collect attached algae and some types of diatoms. This sampler has .0929 square meter (1 square foot) of exposed surface.

Bottom Grabs

Ekman



Petersen



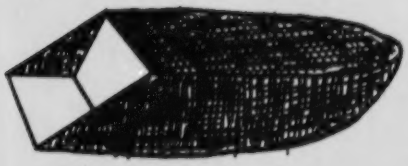
Jackson

Plate I

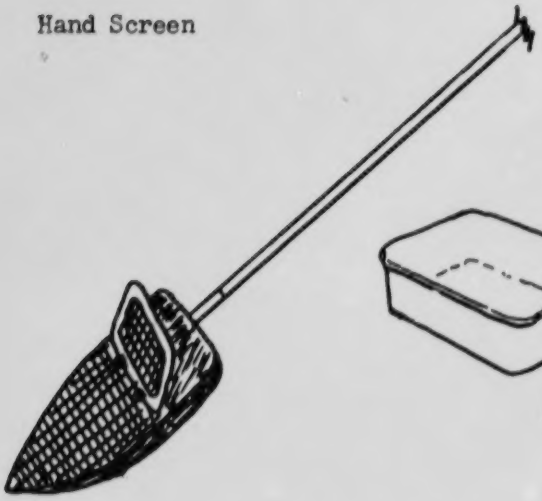
Appendix I

Limnological Equipment

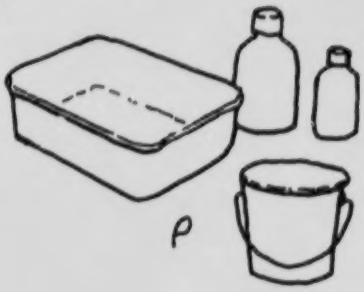
Hand Screen



Surber Sampler



Apron net



Sorting pan

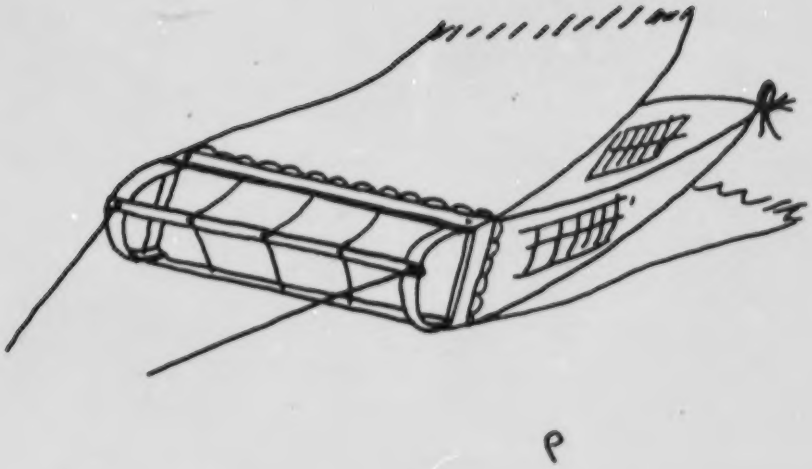
Specimen or reagent bottles

Slurrey bucket

Pail

Plate II

Deep Water Equipment



Biological dredge

Plate III

The materials needed are 1/4 inch and 3/16 inch hardboard, threaded 1/4 inch steel rod, and nuts. Cut the 1/4 inch hardboard into 1 inch squares and the 3/16 inch hardboard into 3 inch squares. Drill 3/8 inch holes in the centers of all the squares.

Assemble the sampler by sliding one of the 3 inch squares on the steel rod, and add one of the 1 inch squares. Continue this procedure until you have added nine more of the 3 inch squares, and eight more of the 1 inch squares. Now add a nut to each end of the steel rod and tighten. A nylon cord may be used in place of the steel rod.

Tighten the nuts until no space remains between the 1 inch and the 3 inch squares and until the squares will stay in place. (An extra 3 inch square may be added without a spacer if you wish to determine which microorganisms might attach themselves to the nonexposed surfaces.)

For any investigation, either place all samplers in flowing water or place all samplers in still waters. (Still waters and flowing waters usually have different benthic populations.)

The samplers may be placed on the bottom if it is composed of sand, gravel, or rock. If the bottom is made of mud, suspend the sampler just off the bottom. (If this is not done, the sampler may become covered with mud and the collected benthic sample will not be representative.)

If the samplers are placed in highly populated or well used areas, they should be hidden so that they will not be disturbed. In most locations, the samplers should be tied to an overhanging branch, to a tree root, or to the bank. Heavy (30 pound test or higher) monofilament fishing line will be less visible than most kinds of string. In very swift water or in locations where attachment is difficult, the sampler may be attached to a metal rod which has been driven into the bottom of the stream or lake.

To show the effects of an effluent on the benthic macroinvertebrates, place samplers upstream and downstream from the point at which the effluent enters. Samplers should be placed on both sides of the stream; for the larger streams and rivers, they should also be placed in the middle.

After the samplers have been in the water for 2 weeks or more, they should be collected. Immediately after removing each sampler from the water, place it in a plastic bag and add some surface water from which the sampler came. This will prevent the loss and drying out of the organisms.

If more than an hour will elapse before you begin to identify the organisms, the plastic bag containing the sampler should be cooled with ice or should be refrigerated. This will prevent the organisms from decomposing, which can happen very rapidly, especially in hot weather.

Open the plastic bag over a white porcelain tray and remove the water and the sampler. Disassemble the sampler and scrape off any macroinvertebrates which are still attached. (A laboratory spatula works well for the scraping.) If large numbers of organisms are present, remove and collect them from one 3 inch square at a time. This will make them easier to count and to identify. (This writer has collected one sampler which had more than 1,300 organisms on it.) The organisms may be preserved in alcohol or formalin for future reference.

The results should be used to compute diversity. The biomass, mass of the life in a specified unit of the environment (1 square foot, in this study), can also be computed. This would give an indication of the productivity of the water.

Benthic collections often consist of large amounts of debris. Various procedures may be followed to separate the organisms from the debris. This separation may be done by hand picking, which is best done on a white enameled tray using light touch limnological forceps. Screening is one of the most practical means of separation. The sample may be dumped onto the screens, and then separated by pouring water over it to wash away the mud and debris. Another method is to place the sample in a bucket or tub and then add water. The mixture is swirled vigorously, and the supernatant is poured through the screen. The residue should be examined for heavier forms which did not float to the top. A variation of this method is to pour a salt or sugar solution into the bucket. The mixture is stirred well, and the supernatant is poured through the screen (save it for reuse). The denser-than-water solution effects the separation of organisms from the debris. A solution of 2-1/2 pounds of table sugar per gallon of water is considered to be optimum for most samples.

Preservation of samples may be achieved by placing them in 80% ethyl alcohol in the field. For prolonged storage, they should be placed in a fresh solution of 70% ethanol. Formalin is also effective in 3% to 10% solutions of the commercial form. Odor and shrinkage problems exist with this preservative. Neutralized formalin eliminates some of the undesirable effects. For short-term preservation, refrigeration and icing are adequate.

b. Periphyton or Aufwuchs

Periphyton is the collection of organisms attached or clinging to stems and leaves of rooted plants or other surfaces projecting above the bottom of an aquatic system. It consists of algae, fungi, small animals, and protists. Periphyton is sometimes referred to as the slime forming organisms.

One qualitative method of collection is to scrape the periphyton from surrounding surfaces, and to place the scrapings in a 4% formaldehyde solution. This can be quantified somewhat by scraping all surface material from a measured area. A more effective quantitative procedure would be to collect the periphyton on an artificial substrate such as glass microscope slides suspended in the water as described above.

By using a microscope and the appropriate identification keys, one can identify the periphyton in the sample.

c. Plankton

Plankton (plancton) is defined as all the microscopic plants, animals, and protists normally swimming or suspended in open water.

A comprehensive plankton sampling program would involve sampling at weekly or more frequent intervals. A year-long study of this type would provide valuable data which could be used to predict conditions in following years.

Phytoplankton (algae) can be collected at the surface in half-liter bottles. For deeper samples, a Kemmerer, Nansen, or other specialized collector may be used. A plankton net is also useful. Sizes number 20 or number 25 are commonly used for collecting phytoplankton. Nets concentrate the organisms in the process of collecting; however, the smaller forms will be lost through any net.

Zooplankton (animals and protists) have the ability to swim away from a collection bottle; so they are best captured with nets which are towed at moderately fast speeds. Number 12 nets (operative size 0.119 mm, 125 meshes per inch) or smaller numbered net sizes are commonly used. The mesh size of the net determines the size of the plankton to be collected.

Both shallow and deep samples are suggested. Shallow samples are taken at a depth of 6 inches to 1 foot. Surface film is also often significant. Deep samples should be

taken at as many locations between the surface and the bottom as the study demands. The most complete study would sample the entire water column and would record the kinds of plankton found at each level.

Estuarine plankton should be sampled at different stages of the tide. Since plankton is affected by the forces of winds and currents, a tow is often best made at right angles to the direction of wind or current.

Zooplankton tend to collect near the bottom in daylight and to distribute more evenly at night. One method commonly used to get a representative sample is to take an oblique tow from the bottom to the top of the water column.

Field conditions greatly affect plankton, and they should be carefully noted on the field data card.

Unless the samples will be analyzed within an hour after collection, they should be stabilized in the field. Refrigeration or icing is very helpful, but do not put the ice in the sample. A 5% formalin solution is often used, but it shrinks animals and makes all forms brittle. Lugol's solution is a good preservative. Ultra-violet sterilization is sometimes used to retard the decomposition of plankton. A good methiolate preservative has been developed by the FWQA; it has been described by Weber (1968).

d. Nekton

The larger, free swimming animals such as fish, shrimp, and eels are called nekton. To insure a representative sample, they must be collected from the obscure and unlikely areas as well as the obvious. A check should be made with the local authorities before the sampling is done because many of the standard techniques that are used are not legal for the layman. Professionally trained workers are very important in this area of investigation than perhaps in any other area.

The various devices include haul seines, gillnets, trap nets, traps, trawls, and electrofishing apparatus.

Personal observations by competent personnel and informal inquiries with local residents often yield valuable information. The organized creel census yields data on what kind and how many fish are being caught.

Fish and other nekton are sometimes tagged or branded to trace their movements during migration and at other times.

Miniature radio transmitters can be fed to or attached to them and the nekton can be tracked over considerable distances. Physiological information can be obtained in this manner, also. This is known as telemetry.

e. Sample Data Sheets

Examples of data sheets appear on the following pages. These can be reproduced easily; if desired, they can be punched or stapled into notebooks.

LAKE, IMPOUNDMENT, OR ESTUARY SURVEY

Location and General Characteristics

Reporter: _____

1. Name: _____
   County: _____ Township: _____
   Nearest Town: _____
   Map agency: _____ Name _____ No. _____
2. Observed nearby land use: _____
   _____
3. Maximum drawdown or tidal range _____
4. Depth: Average _____ Maximum _____
5. Area: _____ Shoreline Length _____
6. Shoreline development*: _____
7. Watershed size: _____
8. Nature and extent of erosion observed: _____
   _____
9. Possible pollution sources: _____
   _____
10. Study Station No.: _____ Description: _____
    _____
    _____
    _____
    _____
    _____
    _____

$$* \frac{S}{2\sqrt{a\pi}}$$

S = Shoreline length
a = area

L-1

Appendix I

GENERAL MAP

Showing station locations

LAKE, IMPOUNDMENT, OR ESTUARY
SURVEY

Present Conditions

Station: _____ Date: _____ Time: _____

1. Weather

   a. Cloud cover: _____
   b. Wind direction: _____ Velocity: _____
   c. Air Temp: _____ Precip: _____
   d. Other: _____

2. Waves

   a. Height: _____ Length: _____ Fetch: _____
   b. Other: _____

3. Ice, thickness: _____ Condition: _____

   _____

4. Floating materials: _____

   _____

5. Water Color: _____

6. Nature and origin of color: _____

   _____

7. Odor, if distinctive: _____

8. Secchi disc: _____
   or
   Turbidity rod: _____

9. Notes:

   _____
   _____
   _____
   _____
   _____
   _____

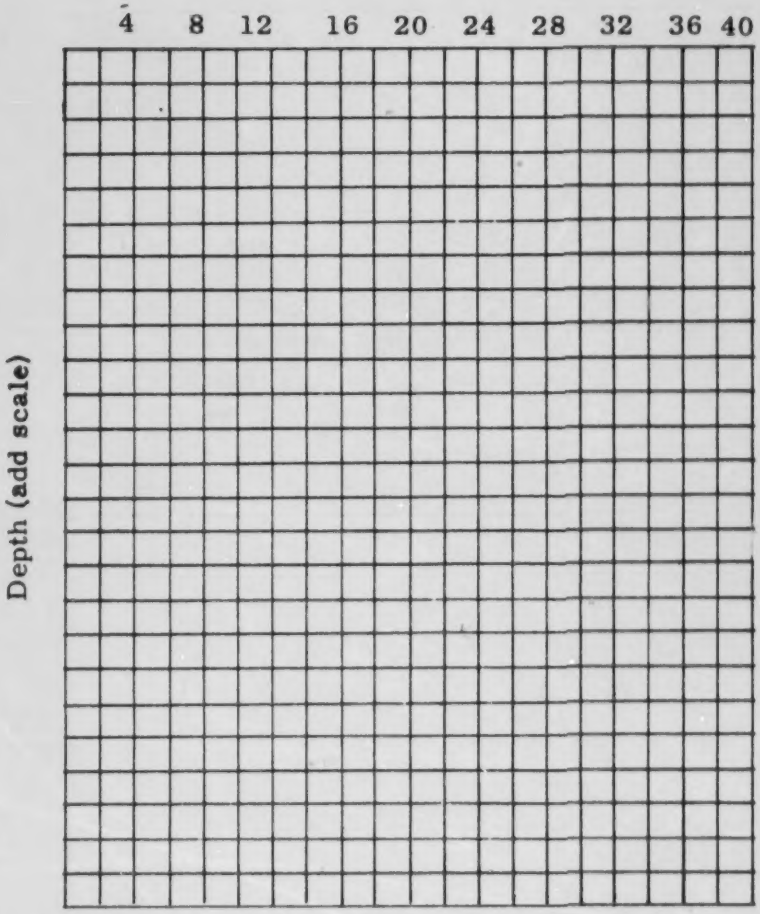
L-2

LAKE, IMPOUNDMENT, OR ESTUARY SURVEY

Temperature Profile

Station: _____ Date: _____ Time: _____

Temperature



LAKE, IMPOUNDMENT, OR ESTUARY SURVEY

Physical and Chemical

Station: _____ Date: _____ Time: _____

	Depth	DO mg/l	Other Determinations (note method used)								
a.											
b.											
c.											
d.											
e.											
f.											
g.											
h.											
i.											
j.											
k.											
l.											
m.											
n.											
o.											
p.											

L-3b

LAKE, IMPOUNDMENT, OR ESTUARY SURVEY

Physical and Chemical

Station: _____ Date: _____ Time: _____

a.	b.	c.	d.	e.	f.	g.	h.	i.	j.	k.	l.	m.	n.	o.	p.

Other Determinations (note method used)

L-

LAKE, IMPOUNDMENT, OR ESTUARY
SURVEY

Biological Data - Plankton

Station: _____ Date: _____ Time: _____

Survey Counts

Sample No.: _____ Type: _____ Depth: _____

Procedure: _____

Results: _____

_____

_____

_____

_____

Sample No.: _____ Type: _____ Depth: _____

Procedure: _____

Results: _____

_____

_____

_____

_____

L-4a

LAKE, IMPOUNDMENT, OR ESTUARY
SURVEY

Biological Data - Plankton

Station: _____ Date: _____ Time: _____

Qualitative, Differential, or Proportional Counts

L-4b

LAKE, IMPOUNDMENT, OR ESTUARY
SURVEY

Biological Data - Fish

Station: _____ Date: _____ Time: _____

How collected: _____

Sample No.	Σ Weight	No. of fish
_____	_____	_____

Dominant Kinds

_____ _____
_____ _____
_____ _____
_____ _____

Other: _____
_____

Sample No.	Σ Weight	No. of fish
_____	_____	_____

Dominant Kinds

_____ _____
_____ _____
_____ _____
_____ _____

Other: _____
_____

L-5

Appendix I

AQUATIC VEGETATION MAP

LAKE, IMPOUNDMENT, OR ESTUARY
SURVEY

Biological Data - Bottom Forms
(Benthos and Periphyton)

Station: _____ Date: _____

1. Aquatic Vegetation

Kinds of Plants	Extent of Coverage

How collected: _____

Nature of bottom: _____

2. Periphyton

Kinds	Extent of Coverage

Description:

_____

_____

How collected: _____

Nature of bottom: _____

3. Attached Algae

Kinds	Extent of Coverage

How collected: _____

Nature of bottom: _____

L-6

BOTTOM TYPES MAP

LAKE, IMPOUNDMENT, OR ESTUARY SURVEY

Biological Data - Bottom Forms (Benthos and Periphyton)

Station: _____ Date: _____ Time: _____

Sample No.	Unit	No. Spp.	No. Ind.

1. Insects		2. Other Invertebrates	
Kinds	No. or Rel. Abundance*	Kinds	No. or Rel. Abundance*

How collected: _____

Nature of bottom: _____

* + = present a = abundant

c = common d = dominating

L-7

LAKE, IMPOUNDMENT OR ESTUARY
SURVEY

Bacteriological Data

Station: _____ Date: _____ Time: _____

How and where collected: _____

_____

_____ _____

Time collected: _____ a.m. / p.m. Temp: _____ °C

Collected by: _____

Tests started _____ a.m. / p.m. By: _____

Tests requested: (check)
Coliform: _____
Fecal Coliform: _____
Fecal Streptococcus: _____

Remarks: _____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

Test results:
Coliforms: _____ 100 ml.
Fecal Coliforms: _____ 100 ml.
Fecal Streptococci: _____ 100 ml.

Method: Membrane Filter ( )

L-8

NOTES

4. Biological Laboratory Methods

Living specimens are the most desirable for laboratory analysis. Unfortunately, the investigator must often work with preserved specimens. When conducting a comprehensive investigation, a biologist usually collects samples faster than he can analyze them.

After the laboratory data have been recorded, they should be interpreted with reference to the field notes which were taken at the time of sample collection.

a. Benthos

Although some fish (i.e., flounders) are listed as benthic organisms, the usual bottom sample is analyzed for the macroinvertebrates which it contains. After the foreign material has been removed from the sample (see Section 3), the investigator counts, identifies, and determines the mass of the organisms.

A technique commonly used is to pour the sample into a white porcelain tray which has some tap water in it. Laboratory forceps are usually used to remove the organisms. If the sample contains large numbers of organisms, the investigator will find a mechanical hand counter very useful. The organisms should be placed on blotting paper for 1 minute before the mass determination is made.

If the investigator does not wish to "key out" the organisms, he may simply sort and group on the basis of like appearance. He might sketch and/or describe the different kinds and report something like "75 individuals of taxon (or type) 1."

b. Periphyton or Aufwuchs

Direct analysis of the growths attached to the substrate can be carried out but must be restricted to the larger organisms. This is due to the difficulty of keeping the material in an acceptable condition under the short working distances of the objective lenses of compound microscopes and due to the fact that transmitted light is not adequate when the colonial growths are thick or the substrate is opaque.

More often the periphyton is scraped from the substrate and then processed. An aliquot part of the sample may be counted using methods frequently employed in plankton analysis. The number of organisms per unit of volume can then be determined.

The total dry weight of the scrapings and the ash-free dry weight (which eliminates inorganic sediments) can be determined and compared. A packed biomass and volume could be determined by centrifugation of the scrapings. Nutrient analyses serve as indices of the biomass by measuring the quantity of nutrient incorporated. Total organic carbon, carbon equivalents (COD), and organic nitrogen determination would be helpful. Phosphorus has limitations because cells can store excess above immediate needs. Chlorophyll and other bio-pigment extractions might be carried out to determine the amount of these which are present. Other investigations might measure carbon-14 uptake, oxygen production, or respiratory oxygen demand.

Qualitative studies would produce such results as the kinds found, ratios for number of individuals per kind found, and a frequency distribution of varieties found.

Quantitative investigations could yield amounts per unit area, milligrams per square centimeter. Rate studies could determine such things as milligrams per day of biomass accumulation or milligrams of oxygen produced per milligram of growth per hour.

c. Plankton

Microscopic examination is most frequently done in the laboratory to determine the number and kinds of organisms present. Optical equipment need not be elaborate for qualitative studies. If more precision is required, such items as a Whipple counting eyepiece, a mechanical stage, and a stage micrometer may be used.

Precision-made counting chambers such as Sedgewick-Rafter counting cells, Palmer-Maloney counting cells, or haemocytometers are required for quantitative work with liquid mounts. Qualitative "counts" are lists of the kinds of organisms found and the numbers of each per unit of volume or area.

The organisms are observed and, by means of a suitable series of multiplier factors, projected to a number or mass per unit volume. Counting of an unconcentrated sample eliminates manipulation. If the density of organisms is low, more area can be examined or the sample can be concentrated. The concentration of the sample provides more organisms for observation, but this introduces additional errors and takes more time.

Several methods of counting are in general use. The numerical or clump count is regarded as the simplest. The

areal standard unit method (See Standard Methods) provides more information. The cubic standard unit method is a logical extension of the areal method, but it has not achieved wide acceptance due to its difficulty.

The field count is done by counting and tallying all individuals of each type present in a field of view. A good way to do this is to list the most common types separately, record their counts, and enumerate the other forms present. This is done for five or ten randomly chosen fields. Finally, the results are tallied and the percentage of each type is computed.

The Five Hundred Count is done by moving the slide at random and counting and tallying all the types until a total of 500 cells or clumps have been counted. Then the investigator should tally the results and compute the percentage of each type as before.

Sometimes, measurements are made by means other than microscopic counts. Settled volume of killed plankton may be measured in an Imhoff cone or a graduated cylinder after a standard period of time. This will evaluate only larger forms. A gravimetric method involves drying at 60° C for 24 hours followed by ashing at 600° C for 30 minutes. This is particularly useful for chemical and radiological analyses.

Chlorophyll can be extracted by filtering, drying for 24 hours, and extraction with methyl alcohol. Evaluation can be made by using a colorimeter or by using chromatographic methods. A membrane filter may be used. The filter can be cleared with immersion oil and organisms can be observed directly after 24 hours, or the collected material can be washed off and observed immediately.

d. Nekton

Population studies are often done with the larger animals. The individuals should be checked for general condition and for the presence of parasites.

As mentioned before, the collection of fish is best done by professionals.

e. Bioassays and Biomonitoring

The bioassay technique may be used on any appropriate organisms from protozoa to fish. In the lab, two types of apparatus, the static jar and the continuous flow, may be employed to provide the various dilutions of the toxicant used.

Static jar tests are containers with a known concentration of substance and organisms. These tests are seldom run for more than 1 week and are read only in terms of percent survival or kill. This is usually termed acute toxicity.

The continuous flow apparatus may also be used to measure acute toxicity. This setup allows a solution to flow into the containers at certain time intervals. Continuous flow apparatus is virtually essential for long-term tests at sub-lethal concentrations. Parameters other than lethal thresholds can then be measured, such as the effect on growth rate and breeding success of a species of fish.

Biomonitoring permits continuous surveillance over the toxicity of an effluent. This technique involves the placing of living organisms in test waters. A normal length of time to run the test in water pollution studies is 96 hours. For the results to be significant, a 50% or greater kill must occur during the 96 hours.

In the laboratory, place ten middle-sized Daphnia in each of several 4 ounce bottles. Daphnia magna, commonly called water fleas, are small crustaceans. If they cannot be obtained locally, they can be ordered live from a biological supply house. Middle-sized ones are used so that natural mortality due to age, will not lead to incorrect results.

Cover each bottle with nylon cloth having at least 80 threads to the inch. If this kind of cloth is not available, two thicknesses of a piece of nylon stocking will probably be acceptable. The cloth must detain the Daphnia and permit the dissolved substances to diffuse into the bottle. Use rubber bands to fasten the cloth over the opening of the bottle. Place five of these bottles in a 6 inch square wire container (which can be made from 1/4 inch hardware cloth) and place it in the stream. After 96 hours, count and record the number of living adults and offspring.

Small (2 to 3 inch) bluegills (Lepomis macrochirus) and/or largemouth basses (Micropterus salmoides) can also be used. These should be fed and acclimated to laboratory conditions for 2 to 4 days before being placed in the stream.

The fishes can be transported to the bioassay stations in 10-gallon milk containers lined with large plastic bags. If aeration is necessary, use an aquarium pump which can be run off an inverter. The inverter changes 12 volts into 110 volts.

At each station place, 10 bluegills or 10 largemouth basses in a Gee's galvanized, quarter-inch-square wire minnow trap (manufactured by Cuba Specialty Manufacturing Company,

Houghton, New York). Close the hole in each end of the minnow trap with a cork or a rubber stopper. This will prevent predators, such as eels, from getting into the trap.

Slowly acclimate the fish to the temperature of the stream. This can be done by putting the fish into a plastic bag (with water from the milk can) and then placing the plastic bag into the stream or else by adding stream water--small amounts at a time--to the plastic bag.

After adding the fish to the trap, place it in 1 or 2 feet of water of very low velocity. If slow-moving water cannot be found, place it on the downstream side of a large rock or other obstruction.

Transfer the living fish from the trap to a plastic bag (after 96 hours). Note the conditions of the surviving fish. Look for vitality or a lack of it. Observe the fins. Some chemical effluents cause them to deteriorate. Record the number of dead fish and the number and conditions of each of the surviving fish.

If these tests are done in highly populated or well used areas you must carefully hide the bottles and traps. If this is not done, they will be disturbed or taken.

Be sure that you do not subject the Daphnia or the fish to temperature shock when placing them in the stream. Daphnia can stand a rapid temperature change of only one to 2° F and the fish can stand a rapid change of only 2° F to 4° F.

f. Diversity Indices

The statistical analysis of some kinds of biological data may be done by computing the diversity index. Generally speaking, the greater the diversity, the healthier the biotic community. There is presently no one method of computing this index, which is universally accepted by the professionals. The methods range from simple ones to others that are best calculated by computers.

The sequential diversity index is explained below. An exercise is included to show the use of this index in the activities section (Chapter 3) of this guide. Others may be found in some of the references listed at the end of this section.

The sequential diversity index is calculated by dividing the number of runs by the number of specimens as show below:

$$\text{Diversity index} = \frac{\text{number of runs}}{\text{number of specimens}}$$

A run is a set of like individuals picked up or observed respectively. A run ends when an individual of another kind is found. Therefore, a run can consist of only one individual. The specimen being observed need only be compared with the previous one. If it appears to be similar, it is part of the same run; if not, it is part of a new run. The more runs for a given number of specimens, the greater the diversity.

Suppose that an investigator is observing cellular algae on a haemocytometer. As he scans the field of view from left to right, he observes the following: 1st, five cells of the same kind which he calls type S; 2nd, ten cells of another kind which he calls type I; 3rd, five cells of type S; and, finally, one cell of type U. At this point, the investigator has four runs and 21 specimens. The usual procedure would be to continue in a like manner until 200 specimens have been counted; then the diversity index would be computed.

Macroinvertebrates may be poured out onto a grid of some sort and treated in the same manner. Alternatively, they may be sorted according to kind. For example, there might have been 80 green, worm-like specimens, 40 snails, and 80 leeches. The green, worm-like specimens would be represented by numbers 1-80, the snails would be 81-120, and the leeches 121-200. Numbered slips of paper would then be randomly drawn to determine the number of runs.

If more than 200 macroinvertebrates are in a sample, randomly pick and sort until 200 specimens have been removed. The remaining organisms can be discarded. (If results from different locations are to be meaningfully compared, the diversity indices should be computed for the same number of specimens.)

5. The Significance and Interpretation of Biological Data

The interpretation of data is a time-consuming process. Biological variability often confuses the beginner. One of the commonest examples of this is that a few individuals of the same species will respond differently than the others to apparently the same environmental conditions. One should be aware of exceptions, but he should not be disturbed if he cannot explain them.

In order to get the most complete picture of an aquatic system, data from as many parameters as possible should be studied. As a matter of fact, data from a single parameter may mean nothing by themselves. Finding interrelationships among the various parameters and relating these to the whole are extremely important.

Care should be exercised to be sure that the data were collected from a representative sample. Following are a series of tables which should aid in the interpretation of data. The information contained in them is not absolute; it should be used only as a guide.

Warning

If the relationships do not seem to apply to your investigation, other factors (perhaps requiring equipment not available to you) may be involved. Rather than risk publicizing an unwarranted conclusion, seek the advice of a professional.

Cross-check related observations in different tables.

For example, if low DO is detected under chemical testing, check turbidity under physical observations and severe organic pollution under biological observations.

The interpretation of phrases such as "great variety," "less variety," and "high coliform count" may pose a problem for beginners. Most states have developed water quality standards which will be helpful in the interpretation of bacterial and some chemical data. If professional macro-invertebrate data (or assistance) are not available to the beginning investigator, he will have to collect extensive data himself; then make his own interpretations.

Table 1 - C - 1 Biological Observations

In Case of:	Look for or Expect:
1. Using Sequential Diversity Index (SDI)	
Great variety with few of each kind	Clean water
Less variety with great abundance	Overly enriched (Moderate organic pollution)
One or two kinds only, with very great abundance	Severe organic pollution

In Case of:	Look for or Expect:
2. The Qualitative Interpretation of Freshwater Macroinvertebrates	
May fly, caddis fly, and stone fly larvae, plus a considerable variety of other macroinvertebrates	Clean water
Pollution tolerant types predominate, although a few less tolerant or unknown forms may be present	Moderate organic pollution Suggestion: Confirm with coliform and other tests.
One or two pollution tolerant types only, often present in overwhelming abundance	Severe organic pollution Suggestion: Same as above.
No macroinvertebrates at all, little or no plant life	Toxic pollution Suggestion: Same as above.
3. Quantitative Interpretation of Freshwater Invertebrates from Riffle Areas	
Note: Carefully review weather records for the preceding few weeks. A severe flood could invalidate the following interpretations.	
0 - 2 grams per ft.^{2} (blotted live weight)	Unproductive, probably clean stream. Suggestion: Check for toxicity.
3 - 5 grams per ft.^{2}	Normally productive. Probably well balanced stream community.
Over 6 grams per ft.^{2}	A. Highly productive stream, probably organically enriched (polluted).

In Case of:	Look for or Expect:
	B. Note: These relative values will differ in different parts of the country. C. Check the SDI.
4. Productivity Measurements	
Water at sampling site seems to be unproductive or overproductive	Suggestion: Measure plankton productivity using standing crop, oxygen, pH, or carbon-14 method (or combination).
5. Fish Behavior	
Many fish observed to be "topping" (gulping air and/or splashing on surface)	Suggestion: 1. Check DO, IDOD, and BOD. 2. Check for toxic or oxygen demanding chemicals. 3. Determine organic content of water and bottom debris and/or sediments. 4. Check temperature.

Table 1 - C - 2 Bacteriological Observations

In Case of:	Look for or Expect:
High coliform count	A. Raw or unchlorinated sewage discharge. B. Pasture or feed lot drainage.

In Case of:	Look for or Expect:
	C. Storm sewer drainage immediately after a rain storm.
Low coliform count	A. Clean water.
	B. Heavily chlorinated sewage effluent.
	C. Toxic discharge as from pharmaceutical company manufacturing antibiotics, or toxic chemicals.
	D. Other source of toxicity such as acid mine drainage.

Table 1 - C - 3 Chemical Observations

In Case of:	Look for or Expect:
High DO's (12-30 mg/l) during daylight hours (supersaturation)	A. High biological productivity, especially producers (plants).
	B. Relatively quiet waters.
	C. Chemical interference in oxygen determination.
	Suggestion:
	1. Check DO between 2 and 3 a.m.
	2. Check DO at 1 or 2 hour intervals around the clock and graph results.
	3. Search for source of excessive fertility.
	4. Examine bottom muds for black anaerobic foul smelling (H_2S) deposits that are overgown by plants.

In Case of	Look for or Expect:
	5. Compare DO above and below a dam or rapids area. Deaeration may be detected.
Low DO's (0-4 mg/l) during daylight hours	A. High organic content, both dissolved and suspended solids. B. High total bacteria and fungus count. C. If clear water, look for anaerobic spring (groundwater). D. Chemical interference in oxygen determination. E. Note water temperature. Suggestion: 1. Check for coliform bacteria. 2. See "Physical, Low Velocity" (Suggestion #1).
Toxic chemicals in general	Reduced biological productivity may be selective or complete.
Toxic or smothering chemicals which sink to bottom	No living organisms on or in bottom materials, but overlying water may have rich plankton and/or nekton population.
Floating oil slick	A. Low DO near surface. B. Oil coated wharf pilings, floats, and shore. C. Dead or dying oil soaked birds and aquatic mammals. D. Few or no living organisms on oil covered surfaces. If in an estuary or open ocean front shore, this includes the entire intertidal zone.

In Case of:	Look for or Expect:
High pH (8-11), high alkalinity (200 or more), high hardness (300 or more)	A. High turbidity. B. High biological productivity. C. If low biological production, look for toxicity or biologically intolerable combination of chemicals. D. May be of natural origin.
Low pH (2-5)	A. Acid mine drainage or industrial discharge. B. Low biological productivity. C. Low turbidity.
Specific chemical effects	See Table 1-D of Appendix I

Table 1 - C - 4 Physical Observations

In Case of:	Look for or Expect:
High velocity and turbulence	A. DO approximately at saturation for temperature. B. Hard bottom, little sediment. C. Biological organisms adapted to swift water. D. Particulate materials kept in suspension. E. Bank and bottom scouring (erosion).

Appendix I

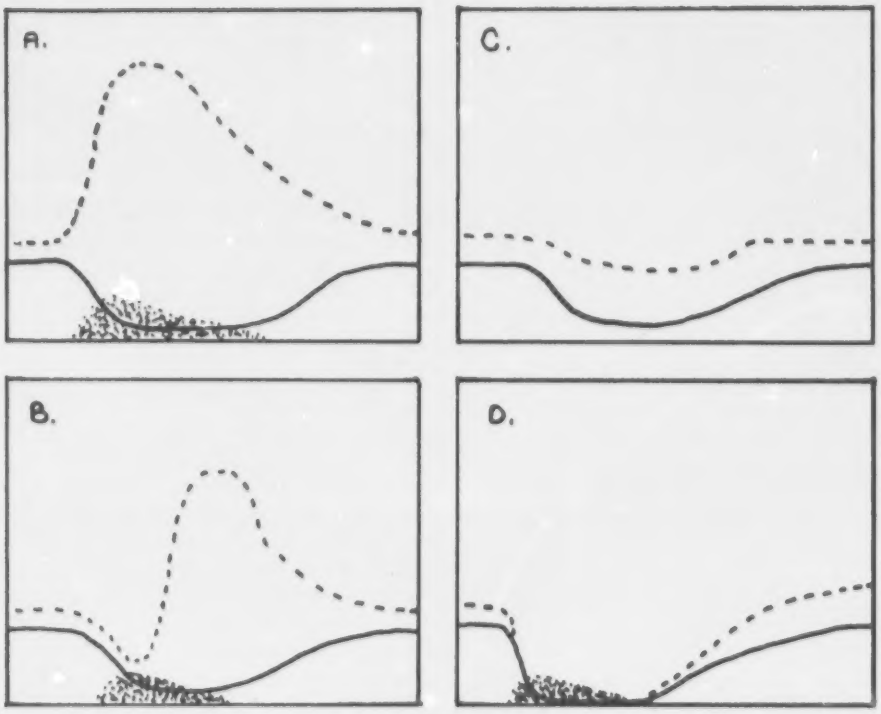
In Case of:	Look for or Expect:
Low velocity	A. DO may be above or below saturation. B. Coarse particulates may settle to bottom. C. Bottom may be soft. D. Organisms, if present, may be burrowers or may crawl freely on surface. Suggestions: 1. If turbidity is high, see High Velocity, Item D. 2. Check for kinds and amounts of plankton.
High volume of flow: normal, non-flood conditions (over 1,000 c.f.s.)	A. Note: This is probably a "big" river. B. These are difficult and expensive to study, even for professional groups. Suggestions: 1. Examine the water for plankton. 2. Place artificial substrates for both periphyton and macroinvertebrates. 3. Carry out chemical and physical analyses of water.
Flood conditions (any stream)	A. High coliforms count in first few hours, diminishing as time goes on. B. "Dumping" of waste holding ponds by industry. C. "By-passing" of sewage treatment plants.

In Case of:	Look for or Expect:
	D. See also "physical" High Velocity, Item D, and Low Velocity, Item B.
Low volume of flow (up to 1,000 c.f.s.)	A. Note: Smaller streams from 0 up to 200 - 300 c.f.s. are generally most satisfactory for group studies but much depends on local circumstances, resources, and objectives. B. Most of the analyses described can be carried out on such a stream.
Heated water discharge (no chemical pollution assumed although heated discharges often contain chlorine or other chemicals used to kill biological growths in the plant. In this case, see also "Toxic Chemical" section.)	A. Differences between the biota in or near the discharge canal or pipe and that in or around the intake. B. Artificial substrates may be used. Suggestions: 1. Make the above comparison winter and summer, or even better, each season. 2. Chart the dispersal of the heated water on the receiving water at different times of the year, different wind directions, different tidal phases, etc. If available, use depth recording thermometer and include depth as well as surface temperature. Graph your results.
Lakes, reservoirs, and estuaries	A. Thermal (or other density caused) stratification. B. Changes in water level, either natural or man made. Suggestions: 1. Practically every suggestion offered elsewhere for stream or

In Case of:	Look for or Expect:
	river pollution studies can be applied to lakes, reservoirs, or estuaries, making due allowance for differences in the basic nature of the waters.
	2. Stratification, seiches, density currents, tidal currents, and salinity are additional physical factors to be considered.
	3. Biological procedures are virtually identical, but while DO is the same, most of the chemical methods cited apply to fresh-water only.

Appendix 1

Figure 1 - C - 1 Benthos Responses to Pollution



_____, Number of Kinds

-----, Number of Organisms

, Sludge Deposits

Appendix I

Figure 1 - C - 1

Four Basic Responses of Bottom Animals to Pollution

A. Organic wastes eliminate the sensitive bottom animals and provide food in the form of sludges for the surviving tolerant forms.

B. Large quantities of decomposing organic wastes eliminate sensitive bottom animals and the excessive quantities of by-products of organic decomposition inhibit the tolerant forms; in time, with natural stream purification, water quality improves so that the tolerant forms can flourish, utilizing the sludges as food.

C. Toxic materials eliminate the sensitive bottom animals; sludge is absent and food is restricted to that naturally occurring in the stream, which limits the number of tolerant surviving forms. Very toxic materials may eliminate all organisms below a waste source.

D. Organic sludges with toxic materials reduce the number of kinds by eliminating sensitive forms. Tolerant survivors do not utilize the organic sludges because the toxicity restricts their growth.

6. Bibliography

Cairns, J., Jr., et al, "The Sequential Comparison Index--A Simplified Method for Nonbiologists to Estimate Relative Differences in Biological Diversity in Stream Pollution Studies," Journal, Water Pollution Control Federation, 1968, pp. 1607-1613. This is an excellent article and is highly recommended.

Clark, W. J., and W. F. Sigler, "Method for Concentrating Phytoplankton Samples Using Membrane Filters," Journal of Limnology and Oceanography, 1963, 8 (1): 127-129.

Eddy, S., How to Know the Fresh-Water Fishes, Wm. C. Brown Co., Dubuque, Ia., 1957. It is a fairly good reference which can easily be carried into the field.

Edmondson, W. T., Fresh-Water Biology, (2nd ed.), John Wiley and Sons, Inc., New York City, 1959. Considered by many to be the aquatic biologists' "Bible," it is excellent but very technical reference.

Foerster, J. W., "A Phyco-Periphyton Collector," Turtox News, 1969, 47-3: 82-84. This article describes a simple, easy-to-make periphyton collector. Collection is made on glass microscope slides.

Gardiner, A. C., "Measurement of Phytoplankton Population by the Pigment Extraction Method," Journal of the Marine Biological Association, 1943, 25 (4): 739-744.

Leech, T. H. E., The Complete Life History of Grossus Disgustus, The Annelid Press, Franklin, N. H., 1969. It is a highly recommended book. The author uses this hardy hirudinean to explain the sequential biological distention of parameters.

A List of Common and Scientific Names of Fishes from the United States and Canada, American Fisheries Society, Publication #2, Washington, D. C., 1960.

Pennak, R. W., Fresh-Water Invertebrates of the United States, Ronald Press, New York City, 1953. This is a good general reference but very technical.

Pollison, D. P., and W. M. Craighead, Lehigh River Biological Investigation, Delaware River Basin Commission, Trenton, N. J., 1968, pp. 24-25. This is a comprehensive report on a river study. A biomonitoring technique is described; the report calls it a bioassay.

Needham, J. G., and P. R. Needham, A Guide to the Study of Fresh-Water Biology, Holden-Day, Inc., San Francisco, Calif., 1962. It is a good reference book with excellent drawings of organisms.

Sources of Limnological and Oceanographic Apparatus and Supplies, American Society of Limnology and Oceanography, Publication #2, Washington, D. C., 1961. Many specialized items of biological collecting equipment are not available from the usual supply houses. This publication lists the suppliers.

Standard Methods for the Examination of Water and Wastewater, (13th ed.), American Public Health Association, Inc., New York City, 1971. This book discusses the physical, chemical, and biological analytical techniques, bioassays, and chemical analysis. It has good drawings and keys of organisms. Every school should have at least one copy.

Wilhm, J. L., "Patterns of Numerical Abundance of Animal Populations," The American Biology Teacher, March 1969, pp. 147-150. A diversity index is presented as well as other means of statistically analyzing biological data.

Wilhm, J. L., and T. C. Dorris, "Biological Parameters for Water Quality Criteria," Biological Science, June 1968, 18-6: 477-481. A comprehensive discussion of the diversity index is given.

D. Engineering and Physics

A number of useful tools which relate to the previously discussed chemical, bacteriological, and biological parameters are used in water studies. In the Engineering and Physics Section, mapping, flow measurements and computer use are discussed as they apply to water pollution and water surveys.

Map reading can facilitate water survey planning and provide a better understanding of the body of water being studied. Flow measurement provides valuable data in interpreting variations in results from chemical, bacteriological, and biological samplings. The computer is a valuable tool in compiling sampling data. A working knowledge in these three areas will aid in water studies and the interpretation of collected data.

1. Mapping

In water surveys, maps provide an invaluable tool for the recording of sampling sites and for providing information on water sources and posssible points of pollution. For example, in the initial planning of a river study a topgraphic map is useful for indicating incoming streams and whether those streams pass through populated areas. Local sewage pipe line maps, obtained through the city engineer or department of public works, will pinpoint sources. Thus, before any field work is done, a fairly good idea of possible sources of pollution may be obtained through the use of maps.

When a small area is being studied, such as a pond, a map can be easily drawn using the plane-table survey method. This method may be used in grade levels 6-12.

Plane-Table Survey Method

a. Equipment

1) Tape measure

2) Wooden stakes

3) A light weight table or head board with some type of support (i.e., legs)

4) Paper, pencil, ruler

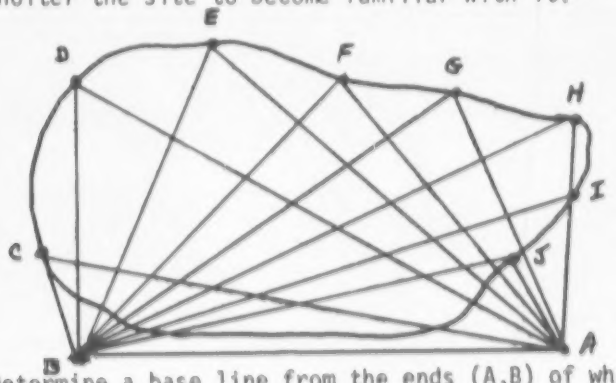
5) Plumb line or carpenter's level

b. Procedure

Although the following procedure is given for mapping a small

pond, the same procedure may be used to map a parking lot, a school playground, a woodlot, etc. In mapping areas such as these, sightings would be taken to existing objects (i.e., trees, parked cars, swings) rather than driving stakes.

Before the following procedure is started, the mappers should reconnoiter the site to become familiar with it.



1) Determine a base line from the ends (A,B) of which almost all points on the shore line (C-J) are visible. Place stakes at point A and B.

2) Place stakes along the shoreline (C-J) so that they are visible from points A and B.

3) Place the table or head board at point A. Using the plumb line or carpenter's level, make sure the table is horizontal.

4) Tape a piece of paper to the table. At eye level to the table, line up stake B with a ruler and draw a line toward the sighting. This line is called the base line.

5) From point A line up the other stakes (C-J) with a ruler and draw a line along the line of sight.

6) Measure the distance between point A and point B with a tape measure.

7) On the base line sketched in step 4) place point B according to the scale desired. For instance, if the distance between point A and B is 100 feet, point B could be placed 10 inches from point A on the sketched base line. This would give a scale of "1 inch equals 10 feet."

8) Move the table to point B and again make sure the table is horizontal.

9) Align the map so that point A may be seen by placing a ruler along the base line and sighting along the top of the ruler.

10) As soon as the base line is aligned, sight points C-J and draw the lines toward the sightings.

11) The lines drawn from point B should intersect those lines drawn from point A. Darken those points and erase the construction lines.

12) Connect all the points with a continuous line. The map is now to scale as determined in step 7.

13) Fill the map in with whatever information is pertinent (e.g., north-bearing direction, stream inlets, houses, etc.).

c. References and Resources

Phillips, E.A., Field Ecology, D. C. Heath Co., Boston, 1964.

Welch, P. S., Limnological Methods, McGraw-Hill Book Co., New York City, 1948.

Topographic maps of any area in the United States may be obtained through the Geological Survey, Department of the Interior, Distribution Section, Washington, D. C. State index circulars and a folder describing topographic maps may be obtained free from the above address.

2. Flow

Flow measurements, the velocity and volume of water in a stream, are among the more important data collected in a water survey.

The velocity of water movement will determine the types of organisms living in a particular segment of a stream. Likewise, the velocity will affect the transport of nutrients and organic food past those organisms attached to stationary surfaces; the transport of plankton and benthos as drift, which in turn serve as food for higher organisms; the transport of silts and sediments; and the addition of dissolved oxygen through surface aeration.

The volume of water in a stream determines to what extent toxic substances and bacteria are diluted and, therefore, the immediate effects of an effluent on a stream's condition. Flow measurements should be determined whenever chemical, bacteriological, or biological samplings are taken. Variations in chemical, bacteriological, or biological results can often be attributed to flow variations.

Appendix 1

Elaborate apparatus is usually used in flow gauging studies, such as current meters and weirs. The floatation method of estimating flow, however, can be achieved with simple equipment by students in the 7th - 12th grades.

a. Velocity

1) Equipment

a) A floating object (float) (This float is to be carried along by the water and should be as immune as possible to air flow and should be as visible as possible. In deep water, an orange will satisfy the needs. For smaller streams, smaller floats such as corks or rubber balls have been found very useful.)

b) Measuring tape or calibrated rope in feet

c) Stopwatch or watch with second hand

d) Boots

2) Procedure

a) It is most difficult to measure flow in slowly moving waters that are over 4 feet deep. This would mean that a stream with rapids would be best to use for the float.

b) Locate two points (parallel to flow) in center of stream, any measurable distance apart.

c) Measure and record the distance between the two points, making sure that the area is free of any obstructions (rocks, garbage, etc.).

d) The moment you place the float at the upstream point, start timing.

e) Mark the time at the instance the float passes the downstream point.

f) Using the formula, V(Velocity) = $\frac{D(\text{Distance})}{T\ (\text{Time})}$, compute the value.

Note: Average velocity should be calculated to determine the true velocity of the stream. It can be concluded that the water of a stream or river will flow fastest on the surface at the center, and that the average velocity of a stream will, therefore, be less than the surface velocity.

g) To obtain the average velocity, multiply the surface velocity by the constant bottom type factor, 0.9 for smooth bottomed streams or rivers (sand, clay, etc.) and 0.8 for rough bottomed streams or rivers (rocks, debris, etc.).

b. Volume

1) Equipment

a) A meter, yard stick or measuring tape for measuring the depth and width

b) A slide rule, if desired, for calculating the results

2) Procedure

a) Find the average width in feet of the stream between the same two points used in velocity measurements by finding the width at regular intervals between the points and taking the average of the widths.

b) Determine the average depth in feet of the streams between the points, a certain number of depths from one side of the stream to the other. Take the average of these depths at each interval, and then take the average of the average depths for the entire distance between the two points.

c) Compute the average cross section of the stream in square feet between the two points by multiplying the average width by the average depth.

d) Compute the volume of flow in second-feet (sec./ft.) by multiplying the average cross section by the average velocity in feet per second, obtained from the velocity calculations. The breakdown of units of measurement in the calculations is as follows:

$$(\text{feet})^2 \times \frac{\text{feet}}{\text{sec.}} = \frac{(\text{feet})^3}{\text{sec.}} \text{ or ft.}^3/\text{sec.}$$

When flow measurements are being taken from a stream or river in which wading would be dangerous or impossible, a boat may be used or measurements may be taken from a bridge.

c. References

Mackenthun, Kenneth M., The Practice of Water Pollution Biology, U. S. Department of the Interior, Washington, D. C., 1969. This paperback contains only half a page on flow but it is a good text for aquatic biology.

Manual on Water, (3rd ed.), American Society for Testing and Materials, Philadelphia, Pa., 1969. This text has a chapter on flow measurement but deals with the equipment of interest to industries.

Grover, N. C., and Harrington, A. R., Stream Flow, Dover Publications, New York City, 1966. This is a good paperback dealing, among other things, with methods and instruments for measuring stream flow.

E. Computer Applications

The volumes of data generated from the activities in this text can be handled most efficiently by a digital computer. The computer's speed and accuracy is readily adapted to the field of pollution studies as a tool for the ecologist. Though not everyone is an accomplished programmer, programs can be generated in the timeshare "BASIC" language that can be run by almost everyone.

The following programs are written with the nonprogrammer in mind. By using the Dartmouth College computer, through a remote teletype terminal, anyone who can type can access the system, call up the appropriate program (title known from an annotated catalog), and run that program to obtain the necessary results from his experiment. The conversational nature of the Dartmouth "BASIC"[1] langugage permits the programmer to write a "prompting" type of program, so that the user gets the feeling that he is having a "conversation."

These programs are not restricted to the Dartmouth system alone. With minor changes, they can be accepted by most timeshare systems, or can be rewritten in Fortran for nontimeshare systems (although they will lose their conversational nature). Local conditions will dictate how the computer can be adapted as a tool for the ecologist.

1. STREAM

STREAM calculates the cross section, velocity and volume of flow of a stream. Input the site information (site number and location), the distance in feet from one depth reading to the next, the depth at each reading in feet and inches, the number of velocity trials, the distance in feet and inches of each trial, and the travel time in seconds for each trial. The method of calculating cross section uses a series of triangular and rectangular areas, where field accuracy dictates volumetric accuracy. The output is a summary of cross sectional area in ft.^{2}, stream velocity in ft./sec. and volume of flow in ft.^{3}/sec. A question is then asked as to whether or not you want a plot. A "yes" will produce a plot of the cross section of the stream at the site of study. A "RUN" and "LIST" follow.

---

[1] BASIC Programming, (Preliminary 5th ed.), Kemeny and Kurtz, Dartmouth Press, Hanover, N. H., 1969.

```
RUN

STREAM    09 AUG 70  20:39


THIS PROGRAM CALCULATES CROSSECTION,VELOCITY,FLOW VOLUME
AND PLOTS THE CROSSECTIONAL PROFILE.

DIRECTIONS: ANSWER COMPUTER QUESTIONS.

                STREAM CROSSECTION CALCULATION.

SITE NO.: 3
LOCATION? WINNESQUAM RIVER
WIDTH OF STREAM (F,I)? 50,0
HOW MANY DEPTH READINGS WERE TAKEN? 13
DISTANCE FROM SHORE TO FIRST MEASUREMENT(FT.) AND DEPTH (F,I)? 5,2,0
DISTANCE(F),DEPTH(F,I)? 3,3,0
DISTANCE(F),DEPTH(F,I)? 2,4,0
DISTANCE(F),DEPTH(F,I)? 2,4,0
DISTANCE(F),DEPTH(F,I)? 3,5,0
DISTANCE(F),DEPTH(F,I)? 2,6,0
DISTANCE(F),DEPTH(F,I)? 3,7,0
DISTANCE(F),DEPTH(F,I)? 4,5,0
DISTANCE(F),DEPTH(F,I)? 3,4,0
DISTANCE(F),DEPTH(F,I)? 3,3,0
DISTANCE(F),DEPTH(F,I)? 5,2,0
DISTANCE(F),DEPTH(F,I)? 5,1,0
DISTANCE(F),DEPTH(F,I)? 5,1,0
DISTANCE FROM LAST DEPTH TO SHORE? 5

                AVERAGE VELOCITY CALCULATION.

HOW MANY TRIALS WERE CONDUCTED? 2
DISTANCE BETWEEN POINTS(FT.,IN.)? 48,0
TIME OF FLOAT(SEC.)? 16.2
DISTANCE BETWEEN POINTS(FT.,IN.)? 50,0
TIME OF FLOAT(SEC.)? 17.5
WAS THE STREAM 1)SMOOTH OR 2) ROUGH BOTTOMED? 1

DATA FOR:WINNESQUAM RIVER

THE AVERAGE VELOCITY OF STREAM AT SITE 3  IS  2.62 FT./SEC.

THE CROSSECTION IS  147  SQ.FT.

THE VOLUME OF FLOW IS  385.1  FT.↑3/SEC.

DO YOU WISH A PLOT? YES
```

CROSSECTION AT SITE 3 ON WINNESQUAM RIVER

```
MEASUREMENT                    WATER LEVEL

BANK                                  *
                                      .
                                      .
                                      .
                                      .
 5   ( 2 )                          * .
                                      .
                                      .
 8   ( 3 )                        *   .
                                      .
 10  ( 4 )                      *     .
                                      .
 12  ( 4 )                      *     .
                                      .
                                      .
 15  ( 5 )                    *       .
                                      .
 17  ( 6 )                  *         .
                                      .
                                      .
 20  ( 7 )                *           .
                                      .
                                      .
                                      .
 24  ( 5 )                    *       .
                                      .
                                      .
 27  ( 4 )                      *     .
                                      .
                                      .
 30  ( 3 )                        *   .
                                      .
                                      .
                                      .
 35  ( 2 )                          * .
                                      .
                                      .
                                      .
                                      .
 40  ( 1 )                           *.
                                      .
                                      .
                                      .
                                      .
 45  ( 1 )                           *.
                                      .
                                      .
                                      .
                                      .
BANK ( 50 )                           *
```

DO YOU HAVE ANOTHER SITE TO CALCULATE? NO

STREAM

```
100'
110' CALCULATES CROSSECTION,VELOCITY,FLOW VOLUME AND PLOTS SITE PROFILE.
120'
130 PRINT
140 PRINT
150 PRINT "THIS PROGRAM CALCULATES CROSSECTION,VELOCITY,FLOW VOLUME "
155 PRINT "AND PLOTS THE CROSSECTIONAL PROFILE."
170 PRINT
180 PRINT "DIRECTIONS: ANSWER COMPUTER QUESTIONS."
190 PRINT
200 PRINT TAB(15);"STREAM CROSSECTION CALCULATION."
210 PRINT
220 PRINT "SITE NO.";
230 INPUT S1
240 PRINT "LOCATION";
250 INPUT L$
260 PRINT "WIDTH OF STREAM (F,I)";
270 INPUT W,W5
280 LET W=W+W5/12
290 PRINT "HOW MANY DEPTH READINGS WERE TAKEN";
300 INPUT R
310 PRINT"DISTANCE FROM SHORE TO FIRST MEASUREMENT(FT.) AND";
320 PRINT " DEPTH (F,I)";
330 INPUT D(1),H(1),I(1)
340 LET H(1)=H(1)+I(1)/12
350 LET W1=D(1)
360 FOR J=2 TO R
370 PRINT "DISTANCE(F),DEPTH(F,I)";
380 DIM D(20),H(20), I(20)
390 INPUT D(J),H(J),I(J)
400 LET H(J)=H(J)+I(J)/12
410 LET W1=W1+D(J)
420 NEXT J
430 PRINT "DISTANCE FROM LAST DEPTH TO SHORE";
440 INPUT D(R+1)
450 LET W1=W1+D(R+1)
460 IF W1=W THEN 540
470 PRINT
480 PRINT "ERROR IN WIDTH MEASUREMENT."
490 PRINT
500 PRINT "DO YOU WISH TO CONTINUE";
510 INPUT R$
520 IF R$="YES" THEN 540
530 STOP
540 LET T=.5*D(1)*H(1)
550 LET W=W1
560 FOR I=1 TO R-1
570 IF H(I+1)>H(I) THEN 610
580 LET T=T+.5*(H(I)-H(I+1))*D(I+1)+D(I+1)*H(I+1)
590 NEXT I
```

STREAM (CONTINUED)

```
600 GO TO 630
610 LET T=T+.5*(H(I+1)-H(I))*D(I+1)+H(I)*D(I+1)
620 GO TO 590
630 LET T=T+.5*D(R+1)*H(R)
640'VELOCITY
650 PRINT
660 PRINT TAB(15);"AVERAGE VELOCITY CALCULATION."
670 PRINT
680 PRINT "HOW MANY TRIALS WERE CONDUCTED";
690 INPUT K
700 LET V=0
710 FOR J=1 TO K
720 PRINT "DISTANCE BETWEEN POINTS(FT.,IN.)";
730 INPUT F(J),I(J)
740 LET F(J)=F(J)+I(J)/12
750 PRINT "TIME OF FLOAT(SEC.)";
760 INPUT S(J)
770 LET V=F(J)/S(J)+V
780 NEXT J
790 LET V=V/K
800 PRINT "WAS THE STREAM 1)SMOOTH OR 2) ROUGH BOTTOMED";
810 INPUT A
820 IF A=2 THEN 850
830 LET V=V*.9
840 GO TO 860
850 LET V=V*.8
860 PRINT
870 PRINT "DATA FOR:";L$
880 PRINT
885 LET V=INT(100*V+.5)/100
890 PRINT "THE AVERAGE VELOCITY OF STREAM AT SITE";S1;" IS ";
900 PRINT V;"FT./SEC."
910 PRINT
915 LET T=INT(100*T+.5)/100
920 PRINT "THE CROSSECTION IS ";T;" SQ.FT."
930 PRINT
935 LET F=INT(10*T*V+.5)/10
940 PRINT "THE VOLUME OF FLOW IS ";F;" FT.↑3/SEC."
950 PRINT
960 PRINT " DO YOU WISH A PLOT";
970 INPUT R$
980 IF R$="YES" THEN 1000
990 STOP
1000 GOSUB 1060
1010 PRINT
1020 PRINT"DO YOU HAVE ANOTHER SITE TO CALCULATE";
1030 INPUT R$
1040 IF R$="YES" THEN 190
1050 STOP
1060'PLOT
```

STREAM (CONTINUED)

```
1070 PRINT
1080 PRINT
1090 PRINT
1100 PRINT TAB(10);"CROSSECTION AT SITE ";S1;" ON ";L$
1110 PRINT
1120 PRINT "MEASUREMENT";TAB(29);"WATER LEVEL"
1130 PRINT
1140 PRINT "BANK";TAB(34);"*"
1150 LET J=1
1160 LET D9=D(J)
1170 FOR X=1 TO W-1
1180 IF X=D9 THEN 1210
1190 PRINT TAB(34);"."
1200 GO TO 1250
1210 IF H(J)<1 THEN 1270
1220 PRINT X;TAB(5);"(";H(J);")";TAB(34-INT(H(J)+.5));"*";TAB(34);"."
1230 LET J=J+1
1240 LET D9=D9+D(J)
1250 NEXT X
1260 GO TO 1290
1270 PRINT X;TAB(33);"*."
1280 GO TO 1230
1290 PRINT "BANK (";W;")";TAB(34);"*"
1300 RETURN
1310 END
```

2. DIV

DIV calculates the diversity index of a sample in a biotic community using the information and formulas presented in the article "Biological Parameters for Water Quality Criteria" by Jerry L. Wilhm and Troy C. Dorris presented in Bioscience, Vol. 18, No. 6. The diversity index is an indication of pollution levels, for "values less than 1 have been obtained in areas of heavy pollution, values from 1 to 3 in areas of moderate pollution, and values exceeding 3 in clean water areas."[1] Refer to Activity E, Chapter 3.

This program is not conversational in nature. Data must be inserted as "DATA" statements beginning with line 720. These "DATA" statements must be of the following form: 146, 5, 131, 7, 4, 1, 3, 1, 1.86, etc., where 146 is the total number of individuals, 5 the number of individual types, 131 through 3 the numbers per individual population, 1 the site number, and 1.86 the biomass of that sample.

The output is a table listing the individual diversity, diversity index, theoretical maximum and minimum diversity, and a redundancy factor. Redundancy expresses the dominance of a type, while diversity shows the compositional richness of a mixed population aggregation of organisms.

A "RUN" and "LIST" follows.

---

[1] "Biological Parameters for Water Quality Criteria," Wilhm and Dorris, Bioscience, Vol. 18, No. 6, 1968.

RUN

DIV 09 AUG 70 19:50

LOCATION	INDIVIDUAL DIVERSITY	DIVERSITY	MAXIMUM DIVERSITY	MINIMUM DIVERSITY	BIOMASS	R
1	3.94323	0.657052	2.26021	0.196572	1.86	0.776861
2	4.15551	1.34916	2.27043	0.165477	1.05	0.437667
3	4.3029	0.777571	2.44827	0.184772	1.5	0.738105
4	3.74413	0.49188	1.87177	0.173511	0.2	0.812532
5	4.96296	1.01232	2.51868	0.107735	0	0.624798
6	5.38642	5.36488 E-2	1.97682	4.63947 E-2	6.1	0.996242
9	4.2596	1.59888	2.94719	0.30109	2.3	0.509546
10	3.07844	1.27176	2.25769	0.465142	0.15	0.550017
11	3.93598	0.583135	2.19182	0.198744	0.64	0.807137
12	3.22023	1.01045	2.38556	0.425624	0.67	0.70161
13	4.79031	0.730937	1.94339	7.50793 E-2	0.91	0.648957
14	2.79423	1.11113	1.82516	0.347148	2.36	0.483105
15	4.92	0.711892	2.50029	0.112172	5.48	0.748873
16	3.15433	0.820883	1.86566	0.267617	0.85	0.653786
17	5.21978	0.259188	2.73366	0.105908	5.4	0.941639
18	2.05037	1.80127	1.8543	0.748345	1.8	0.04795
19	5.24932	0.20262	2.55626	8.62842 E-2	6.01	0.9529
20	3.46477	1.45072	2.3364	0.346989	1.5	0.445195
21	4.53496	0.830485	2.49195	0.152622	1.8	0.710232
22	3.31442	1.62428	2.46072	0.466243	1.5	0.419378

R IS A REDUNANCY EXPRESSION WHICH IS THE DOMINANCE OF ONE OR MORE SPECIES AND IS THE INVERSE PROPORTION TO THE WEALTH OF THE SPECIES.

DIV

```
100 REM    SOURCE:BIOLOGICAL PARAMETERS FOR WATER QUALITY CRITERIA
110 REM    BY WILHM AND DORRIS   FROM BIOSCIENCE VOL.18 NO.6
120 REM
130 REM    PREPARED BY WPP - TILTON   SUMMER '70
140 REM
150 PRINT TAB(10);"INDIVIDUAL";TAB(32);"MAXIMUM";TAB(43);"MINIMUM"
160 PRINT "LOCATION";TAB(10);"DIVERSITY";TAB(21);"DIVERSITY";TAB(32);
170 PRINT "DIVERSITY";TAB(43);"DIVERSITY";TAB(54);"BIOMASS    R"
180 PRINT
190 PRINT
200 PRINT
210 GOSUB 310
220 GOSUB 460
230 GOSUB 530
240 GOSUB 620
250 READ O,R
260 IF O<10 THEN 700
270 PRINT TAB(2);O;
280 PRINT TAB(10);Q;TAB(21);E;TAB(32);M(1);TAB(43);
290 PRINT M(2);TAB(54);R;(M(1) -E)/(M(1)-M(2))
300 GOTO 200
310 DIM N(72),A(50)
320 READ Z
330 IF Z=0 THEN 840
340 LET N=LOG(Z)
350 FOR T=Z-1 TO 1 STEP -1
360 LET N=LOG(Z-T)+N
370 NEXT T
380 READ S
390 LET B=0
400 FOR C=1 TO S
410 READ A (C)
420 LET B=LOG(A(C))+B
430 NEXT C
440 LET Q=(1/Z)*(N-B)
450 RETURN
460 DIM E(72)
470 LET D=0
480 FOR I=1 TO S
490 LET D=(A(I)/Z)*LOG(A(I)/Z)/LOG(2)+D
500 NEXT I
510 LET E=-D
520 RETURN
530 LET F=N/LOG(2)
540 LET G=INT(Z/S+.5)
550 LET H=LOG(G)
560 FOR C=G-1 TO 1 STEP -1
570 LET H=LOG (C)+H
580 NEXT C
590 LET G=H/LOG(2)
```

DIV (CONTINUED)

```
600 LET M(1)=(F-S*G)/Z
610 RETURN
620 LET J=Z-(S-1)
630 LET K=LOG(J)
640 FOR C=J-1 TO 1 STEP -1
650 LET K=LOG(C)+K
660 NEXT C
670 LET K=K/LOG(2)
680 LET M(2)=(F-K)/Z
690 RETURN
700 PRINT TAB(3);0;
710 GO TO 280
720 DATA 146,5,131,7,4,1,3,1,1.86,181,5,99,68,1,1,12,8,1.05,208
730 DATA 6,180,1,18,3,1,5,3,1.5,119,4,110,4,1,4,4,.2,401,6,326
740 DATA 17,9,1,6,42,5,0,596,4,593,1,1,1,6,6.1,203,9,118,2,61
750 DATA 11,2,1,1,6,1,9,2.3,64,6,48,2,9,2,2,1,10,.15,144,5,131
760 DATA 6,5,1,1,11,.64,72,6,59,7,1,1
770 DATA 3,1,12,.67,335,4,288,15,31,1,13,.91,48,4,35,1,2,10
780 DATA 14,2.36,382,6,336,5,30,1,8,2,15,5.48,68,4,58,2,3,5
790 DATA 16,0.85,509,7,494,3,2,1,2,6,1,17,5.40,24,5,8,1,3
800 DATA 1,11,18,1.8
810 DATA 523,6,511,1,6,1,2,2,19,6.01,94,6,62,3,21,1,2,5,20,1.5
820 DATA 263,6,228,9,13,9,3,1,21,1.8,81,7,3,2,30,41,1,2,1,22,1.5
830 DATA 0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0
840 PRINT
850 PRINT
860 PRINT
870 PRINT
880 PRINT
890 PRINT
900 PRINT "R IS A REDUNANCY EXPRESSION WHICH IS THE"
910 PRINT "DOMINANCE OF ONE OR MORE SPECIES AND IS THE"
920 PRINT "INVERSE PROPORTION TO THE WEALTH OF THE SPECIES."
930 END
```

3. DIVERS

DIVERS is similar to DIV, except it incorporates Stirling's formula, $H = -E\ (Ni/N)\ \log_2\ (Ni/N)$[1], to indicate population diversity where N indicates total population count and Ni indicates count per individual type. The run time of this program is far less than DIV, and the printout also gives a comment as to pollution level as noted under the comment for DIV.

This program is also nonconversational in nature and you must replace the data using "DATA" statements after line 370. The form is as follows: 1, 146, 5, 131, 7, 4, 1, 3, etc. Where 1 is the site number, 146 the total population, 5 the number of individual types, and 131-3 the number of each individual type.

A "RUN" and "LIST" follows.

---

[1] "Biological Parameters for Water Quality Criteria," Wilhm and Dorris, Bioscience, Vol. 18, No. 6, 1968.

RUN

DIVERS 09 AUG 70 19:57

LOCATION	DIVERSITY	COMMENT
1	0.657052	HEAVY POLLUTION.
2	1.34916	MODERATE POLLUTION.
3	0.777571	HEAVY POLLUTION.
4	0.49188	HEAVY POLLUTION.
5	1.01232	MODERATE POLLUTION.
6	5.36488 E-2	HEAVY POLLUTION.
9	1.59888	MODERATE POLLUTION.
10	1.27176	MODERATE POLLUTION.
11	0.583135	HEAVY POLLUTION.
12	1.01045	MODERATE POLLUTION.
13	0.730937	HEAVY POLLUTION.
14	1.11113	MODERATE POLLUTION.
15	0.709969	HEAVY POLLUTION.
16	0.820833	HEAVY POLLUTION.
17	0.259188	HEAVY POLLUTION.
18	1.80127	MODERATE POLLUTION.
19	0.20262	HEAVY POLLUTION.
20	1.45072	MODERATE POLLUTION.
21	0.830485	HEAVY POLLUTION.
22	1.62666	MODERATE POLLUTION.

TIME: 0.168 SEC.
READY

DIVERS

```
100'
110'  SOURCE:BIOLOGICAL PARAMETERS FOR WATER QUALITY CRITERIA
120'  WILHM AND DORRIS - BIOSCIENCE VOL. 18 NO. 6
130'
140'  DIVERSITY USING STIRLING'S FORMULA
150'
160 PRINT
170 PRINT "LOCATION"; TAB(10); "DIVERSITY"; TAB(30); "COMMENT"
180 PRINT
190 PRINT
200 READ L,N,S
210 IF N=0.0 THEN 490
220 LET H=0.0
230 FOR I=1 TO S
240 READ N(I)
250 LET H=(N(I)/N) * (LOG(N(I)/N)/LOG(2)) + H
260 NEXT I
270 LET H=-H
280 PRINT TAB(2); L; TAB(10); H; TAB(26);
290 IF H<1 THEN 350
300 IF H<3 THEN 330
310 PRINT "CLEAN WATER."
320 GO TO 200
330 PRINT "MODERATE POLLUTION."
340 GO TO 200
350 PRINT  "HEAVY POLLUTION."
360 GO TO 200
370 DATA 1,146,5,131,7,4,1,3,2,181,5,99,68,1,1,12
380 DATA 3,208,6,180,1,18,3,1,5,4,119,4,110,4,1,4
390 DATA 5,401,6,326,17,9,1,6,42,6,596,4,593,1,1,1
400 DATA 9,203,9,118,2,61,11,2,1,1,6,1
410 DATA 10,64,6,48,2,9,2,1,2
420 DATA 11,144,5,131,5,6,1,1,12,72,6,59,7,1,1,3,1
430 DATA 13,335,4,288,15,31,1,14,48,4,35,1,2,10
440 DATA 15,381,6,336,5,30,1,8,2,16,68,4,58,2,3,5
450 DATA 17,509,7,494,3,2,1,2,6,1,18,24,5,8,1,3,1,11
460 DATA 19,523,6,511,1,6,1,2,2,20,94,6,62,3,21,1,2,5
470 DATA 21,263,6,228,9,13,9,3,1,22,80,7,3,2,30,41,1,2,1
480 DATA 0,0,0
490 END
```

4. DPLOT

DPLOT is a teletype plotting program for data. Some programming changes are necessary to alter the scale (at present, the program is set from 0 to 3). Since 60 is a reasonable teletype size (70 is maximum), a factor must be devised by which to multiply the result in line 270 so as to equal 60 (i.e., for a high scale of 3, multiply by 20). It is necessary to change line 390 to indicate the new scale and to divide the result (namely R(I)) by the appropriate multiple in lines 510 and 560.

Input location, name of test, date, remarks (if any), site number, and result at that site. The output will be a scaled graph on which the site numbers and results at each site will be printed.

A "RUN" and "LIST" follows.

```
OLD DPLOT
READY

RUN

DPLOT      09 AUG 70  19:58

LOCATION ? NESHEMINY
TEST RESULTS FOR ? DIVERSITY
DATE TAKEN ? 6-24-69
REMARKS? COMPLETE WATERSHED
NO. OF SITES TESTED ? 20
SITE NO. AND RESULTS? 1,0.6571
SITE NO. AND RESULTS? 2,1.3492
SITE NO. AND RESULTS? 3,0.7776
SITE NO. AND RESULTS? 4,0.4919
SITE NO. AND RESULTS? 5,1.0123
SITE NO. AND RESULTS? 6,0.05365
SITE NO. AND RESULTS? 9,1.5988
SITE NO. AND RESULTS? 10,1.2718
SITE NO. AND RESULTS? 11,0.5831
SITE NO. AND RESULTS? 12,1.0105
SITE NO. AND RESULTS? 13,0.7309
SITE NO. AND RESULTS? 14,1.1111
SITE NO. AND RESULTS? 15,0.7099
SITE NO. AND RESULTS? 16,0.8209
SITE NO. AND RESULTS? 17,0.2592
SITE NO. AND RESULTS? 18,1.8013
SITE NO. AND RESULTS? 19,0.2026
SITE NO. AND RESULTS? 20,1.4507
SITE NO. AND RESULTS? 21,0.8305
SITE NO. AND RESULTS? 22,1.6266
```

TEST RESULTS FOR DIVERSITY TAKEN ON 6-24-69 ON NESHEMINY

REMARKS: COMPLETE WATERSHED

SCALE FROM 0 TO 3.

```
     ....................+....................+....................
     .
 1   .            *( 0.6571 )
     .
 2   .                        *( 1.3492 )
     .
 3   .              *( 0.7776 )
     .
 4   .        *( 0.4919 )
     .
 5   .                  *( 1.0123 )
     .
 6   .*( 0.05365 )
     .
 9   .                            *( 1.5988 )
     .
 10  .                       *( 1.2718 )
     .
 11  .         *( 0.5831 )
     .
 12  .                  *( 1.0105 )
     .
 13  .             *( 0.7309 )
     .
 14  .                    *( 1.1111 )
     .
 15  .             *( 0.7099 )
     .
 16  .               *( 0.8209 )
     .
 17  .    *( 0.2592 )
     .
 18  .                                  *( 1.8013 )
     .
 19  .   *( 0.2026 )
     .
 20  .                           *( 1.4507 )
     .
 21  .               *( 0.8305 )
     .
 22  .                             *( 1.6266 )
```

TIME: 0.330 SEC.
READY

401

DPLOT

```
110' PLOT ROUTINE FOR DATA
120'
130 DIM S(30),R(30)
140 PRINT "LOCATION ";
150 INPUT L$
160 PRINT "TEST RESULTS FOR ";
170 INPUT T$
180 PRINT "DATE TAKEN ";
190 INPUT D$
200 PRINT "REMARKS";
210 INPUT R$
220 PRINT "NO. OF SITES TESTED ";
230 INPUT N
240 FOR I=1 TO N
250 PRINT "SITE NO. AND RESULTS";
260 INPUT S(I),R(I)
270 LET R(I)=R(I)*20
280 NEXT I
290 PRINT
300 PRINT
310 PRINT
320 PRINT
330 PRINT "TEST RESULTS FOR ";T$;" TAKEN ON ";D$;" ON ";L$
340 PRINT
350 PRINT "REMARKS: ";R$
360 PRINT
370 PRINT
380 PRINT TAB(5);
390 PRINT "SCALE FROM 0 TO 3."
400 PRINT
410 PRINT TAB(5);
420 FOR I=1 TO 61
430 IF I=21 THEN 580
440 IF I=41 THEN 580
450 PRINT ".";
460 NEXT I
470 PRINT
480 FOR I=1 TO N
490 PRINT TAB(5);"."
500 IF R(I)=0 THEN 560
510 PRINT S(I);TAB(5);".";TAB(R(I)+5);"*";"(";R(I)/20;")"
520 NEXT I
530 PRINT
540 PRINT
550 GO TO 600
560 PRINT S(I);TAB(5);"*";TAB(9);"(";R(I)/20;")"
570 GO TO 520
580 PRINT "+";
590 GO TO 460
600 END
```

402

5. ANALYZE

ANALYZE is programmed to help analyze a sample of water quickly and accurately. It uses as its parameters: pH, $CØ_2$, DØ, IDØD, BØD, CØLIFØRM, FECAL CØLIFØRM, FECAL STREP, and PHØSPHATE.

Input location, site number, date, and the above parametric readings obtained from your tests. The output consists of general comments about each parametric result and, in some cases, suggests other tests that might be done to obtain a more complete analysis.

A "RUN" and "LIST" follows.

```
RUN

ANALYZE   09 AUG 70  20:57

THIS PROGRAM IS DESIGNED TO HELP YOU ANALYZE YOUR SAMPLE.

LOCATION? WINNESQUAM RIVER
SITE #? 3
DATE? 3-24-70


DO YOU HAVE A PH READING? YES
READING? 6.2

DO YOU HAVE A CO2 READING? YES
READING? 18

DO YOU HAVE A DISSOLVED OXYGEN (D.O.) READING? YES
READING? 4
TEMP IN C? 13

DO YOU HAVE A READING OF IMMEDIATE DISSOLVED OXYGEN
DEMAND (I.D.O.D.)? YES
READING? 2

DO YOU HAVE A READING OF BIOLOGICAL OXYGEN DEMAND (B.O.D.)? YES
READING? 10

DO YOU HAVE A COLIFORM COUNT PER 100 ML.? YES
READING? 33766

DO YOU HAVE A READING OF FECAL COLIFORM PER 100 ML.? YES
READING? 250

DO YOU HAVE A FECAL STREP READING? YES
READING? 100

DO YOU HAVE A PHOSPHATES READING IN PPM.? YES
READING? 0.02
```

RESULTS FROM WINNESQUAM RIVER TAKEN ON 3-24-70 AT SITE 3 .

THE WATER IS NEUTRAL.

CO2 COULD BE A LIMITING FACTOR IF D.O. IS LOW AND
PH IS NOT 'NATURAL'.

D.O. IS LOW FOR CLASS 'A' WATERS.

AT 13 DEGREES C.,THE THEORETICAL D.O. SATURATION LEVEL IS
10.6 .
THE PERCENT OF D.O. IN RELATION TO THE THEORETICAL
D.O. SATURATION IS 27 %.

THE O2 BALANCE IN THIS WATER IS POOR. CHECK I.D.O.D.,
B.O.D.,COLIFORM COUNT FOR POSSIBLE CLUES AS TO THE REASON.

NOTE: DISSO=D.O.-I.D.O.D.

DISSO OF 2 SHOWS OXYGEN DEMANDING MATERIAL IN THE WATER.

THE READING OF 10 FOR B.O.D. HAS NO DISTINCT
RELATIONSHIP TO D.O. BECAUSE OF A VOLUMETRIC DIFFERENCE.

TOTAL COLIFORMS ARE CONSIDERED 'RELIABLE' INDICATORS
AS TO THE POSSIBLE PRESENCE OF BACTERIAL PATHOGENS...
SINCE THE TOTAL COUNT IS 33766 PER 100ML. ,THIS BODY
OF WATER IS UNFIT FOR HUMAN CONTACT.

THE PRESENCE OF FECAL COLIFORMS IN WATER INDICATES
RECENT FECAL CONTAMINATION. SINCE THE FECAL COUNT WAS
REPORTED AS 250 PER 100 ML., THIS BODY OF WATER IS
UNFIT FOR PUBLIC WATER SUPPLY.

SINCE FECAL STREP EQUALS 100 THE CONTAMINATION
IS LIKELY HUMAN WASTE.

PHOSPHATES ARE PRESENT IN SUFFICIENT AMOUNTS, 0.02
PPM, THAT COULD 'TRIGGER' AN ALGAL BLOOM,IF OTHER
CONDITIONS ARE RIGHT.

TIME: 0.998 SEC.
READY

ANALYZE

```
100'
110' WATER ANALYSIS PROGRAM
120'
130 PRINT
140 PRINT "THIS PROGRAM IS DESIGNED TO HELP YOU ANALYZE YOUR SAMPLE."
150 PRINT
160 PRINT "LOCATION";
170 INPUT L$
180 PRINT "SITE #";
190 INPUT S1
200 PRINT "DATE";
210 INPUT D$
220 MARGIN 65
230 PRINT
240 PRINT
250 PRINT
260 LET I=0
270 DIM A(20),B(60)
280 PRINT "DO YOU HAVE A PH READING";
290 GOSUB 1490
300 PRINT "DO YOU HAVE A CO2 READING";
310 GOSUB 1490
320 PRINT"DO YOU HAVE A DISSOLVED OXYGEN (D.O.) READING";
330 GOSUB 1490
340 PRINT "DO YOU HAVE A READING OF IMMEDIATE DISSOLVED OXYGEN"
350 PRINT "DEMAND (I.D.O.D.)";
360 GOSUB 1490
370 PRINT "DO YOU HAVE A READING OF BIOLOGICAL OXYGEN DEMAND (B.O.D.)";
380 GOSUB 1490
390 PRINT "DO YOU HAVE A COLIFORM COUNT PER 100 ML.";
400 GOSUB 1490
410 PRINT "DO YOU HAVE A READING OF FECAL COLIFORM PER 100 ML.";
420 GOSUB 1490
430 PRINT "DO YOU HAVE A FECAL STREP READING";
440 GOSUB 1490
450 PRINT "DO YOU HAVE A PHOSPHATE  READING IN PPM.";
460 GOSUB 1490
470 REM PH=A(1)  CO2=A(2)  O2=A(3)  IDOD=A(4)  BOD=A(5)  COLIFORM=A(6)
480 REM FECAL COLIFORM=A(7) FECAL STREP=A(8) PHOSPHATES=A(9)
490 PRINT
500 PRINT
510 PRINT "RESULTS FROM ";L$;" TAKEN ON ";D$;" AT SITE ";S1;"."
520 PRINT
530 PRINT
540 IF A(1)=-1 THEN 650
550 IF A(1)>8.6 THEN 640
560 IF A(1)>8.2 THEN 620
570 IF A(1)>5.999  THEN 600
580 PRINT "THE WATER IS ACIDIC."
590 GO TO 650
```

ANALYZE (CONTINUED)

```
600 PRINT "THE WATER IS NEUTRAL."
610 GO TO 650
620 PRINT "THE WATER IS SLIGHTLY ALKALINE."
630 GO TO 650
640 PRINT "THE WATER IS ALKALINE."
650 PRINT
660 IF A(2)=-1 THEN 770
670 IF A(2)>25 THEN 740
680 IF A(2)>15 THEN 710
690 PRINT "CO2 IS NOT A LIMITING FACTOR."
700 GO TO 770
710 PRINT "CO2 COULD BE A LIMITING FACTOR IF D.O. IS LOW AND ";
720 PRINT "PH IS NOT 'NATURAL'."
730 GO TO 770
740 PRINT "CO2 IS PROBABLY A LIMITING FACTOR.EXAMINE THE ";
750 PRINT "AREA WITH A DI-URNAL STUDY FOR POSSIBLE ALGAL ";
760 PRINT "BLOOM.  EXAMINE, ALSO, PH AND D.O. READINGS."
770 PRINT
780 IF A(3)=-1 THEN 1290
790 IF A(3)>8.2 THEN 830
800 IF A(3)>5 THEN 880
810 PRINT "D.O. IS LOW FOR CLASS 'A' WATERS."
820 GO TO 900
830 PRINT "THE D.O. IS HIGHER THAN IS 'NATURAL'.IF THE D.O. IS ";
840 PRINT "GREATER THAN 10, IT MAY INDICATE AN ALGAL BLOOM OR SOME ";
850 PRINT "'UNNATURAL' CONDITION.IT IS RECOMMENDED THAT A ";
860 PRINT "COMPLETE O2 ANALYSIS BE DONE AT THIS SITE."
870 GO TO 900
880 PRINT "D.O. IS PROBABLY NOT A LIMITING FACTOR AND WILL SUPPORT ";
890 PRINT "MOST FISH LIFE."
900 PRINT
910 PRINT
920 LET I=0
930 LET B(I)=14.6
940 FOR I=1 TO 50
950 READ B(I)
960 NEXT I
970 LET P=(A(3)/B(Q))*100
980 PRINT "AT ";T;" DEGREES C.,THE THEORETICAL D.O. SATURATION";
990 PRINT " LEVEL IS ";B(T);"."
1000 PRINT "THE PERCENT OF D.O. IN RELATION TO THE THEORETICAL ";
1010 LET P=INT(P+.5)
1020 PRINT "D.O. SATURATION IS";P;"%."
1030 DATA 14.2,13.8,13.5,13.1,12.8,12.5,12.2,11.9,11.6,11.3,11.1
1040 DATA 10.8,10.6,10.4,10.2,10.0,9.7,9.5,9.4,9.2,9.0,8.8,8.7,8.5
1050 DATA 8.4,8.2,8.1,7.9,7.8,7.6,7.5,7.4,7.3,7.2,7.1,7.0,6.9
1060 DATA 6.8,6.7,6.6,6.5,6.4,6.3,6.2,6.1,6.0,5.9,5.8,5.7,5.6
1070 IF P>=75 THEN 1170
1080 IF P>=50 THEN 1130
1090 PRINT
```

ANALYZE (CONTINUED)

```
1100 PRINT "THE O2 BALANCE IN THIS WATER IS POOR. CHECK I.D.O.D.,";
1110 PRINT "B.O.D.,COLIFORM COUNT FOR POSSIBLE CLUES AS TO THE REASON."
1120 GO TO 1290
1130 PRINT
1140 PRINT " THE O2 BALANCE IS FAIR. IT PROBABLY DOES NOT ACT AS A ";
1150 PRINT "LIMITING FACTOR,ESPECIALLY IF THE TEMP IS <15 CENT."
1160 GO TO 1290
1170 PRINT
1180 IF P>100 THEN 1250
1190 PRINT "THE O2 BALANCE IS GOOD,AND SHOULD INDICATE A HEALTHY ";
1200 PRINT "STREAM. NO ANAEROBIC CONDITIONS SHOULD BE PRESENT IF ";
1210 PRINT "A REPRESENTATIVE SAMPLE WAS TAKEN...CAUTION! CHECK ";
1220 PRINT "FLOW READINGS FOR THEY MAY MASK ACYUAL CONDITIONS."
1230 GO TO 1290
1240 PRINT
1250 PRINT "O2 FIGURES INDICATE A 'SUPER-SATURATED' CONDITION.";
1260 PRINT "RECHECK O2 READING. A SPECIES DIVERSITY IS RECOMMENDED ";
1270 PRINT "- ALONG WITH A COMPLETE ALGAL COUNT..."
1280 PRINT
1290 IF A(4)=-1 THEN 1440
1300 IF A(4)>A(3) THEN 1430
1310 IF A(4)<.5 THEN 1430
1320 LET D1=A(3)-A(4)
1330 PRINT
1340 PRINT "NOTE: DISSO=D.O.-I.D.O.D."
1350 PRINT
1360 IF D1+3<0 THEN 1400
1370 PRINT "DISSO OF ";D1;" SHOWS OXYGEN DEMANDING MATERIAL IN THE ";
1380 PRINT "WATER."
1390 GO TO 1440
1400 PRINT "DISSO OF ";D1;" SHOWS OXYGEN DEMANDING MATERIALS IN THE ";
1410 PRINT "WATER ARE NOT A FACTOR."
1420 GO TO 1440
1430 GOSUB 1650
1440 IF A(5)=-1 THEN 1710
1450 PRINT
1460 PRINT "THE READING OF ";A(5);" FOR B.O.D. HAS NO DISTINCT ";
1470 PRINT "RELATIONSHIP TO D.O. BECAUSE OF A VOLUMETRIC DIFFERENCE."
1480 GO TO 1710
1490 INPUT R$
1500 LET I=I+1
1510 IF R$="NO" THEN 1620
1520 IF R$="YES" THEN 1580
1530 PRINT "INCORRECT FORMAT, PLEASE TYPE YES OR NO."
1540 PRINT "DO YOU HAVE A READING";
1550 INPUT R$
1560 GO TO 1510
1570 PRINT
1580 PRINT "READING";
1590 INPUT A(I)
```

ANALYZE (CONTINUED)

```
1600 IF I=3 THEN 1650
1610 GO TO 1630
1620 LET A(I)=-1
1630 PRINT
1640 RETURN
1650 PRINT "TEMP IN C";
1660 INPUT T
1670 PRINT
1680 GO TO 1640
1690 PRINT "THESE RESULTS FOR I.D.O.D. ARE IMPOSSIBLE,RECHECK."
1700 RETURN
1710 IF A(6)<=50 THEN 1750
1720 PRINT
1730 IF A(6)<250 THEN 1800
1740 IF A(6)>=250 THEN 1880
1750 IF A(6)=-1 THEN 2310
1760 PRINT "THE TOTAL COLIFORM COUNT IS ";A(6);" PER 100 ML.";
1770 PRINT " THE COUNT IS SUFFICIENT FOR CLASS 'A' WATER."
1780 PRINT
1790 GO TO 1930
1800 PRINT "TOTAL COLIFORM COUNT IS CONSIDERED A 'RELIABLE' INDICATOR ";
1810 PRINT "AS TO THE POSSIBLE PRESENCE OF BACTERIAL PATHOGENS ...";
1820 PRINT "THEIR PRESENCE INDICATES INADEQUATE WASTE TREATMENT.";
1830 PRINT "SINCE THE TOTAL COUNT IS ";A(6);" PER 100 ML., THIS ";
1840 PRINT "BODY OF WATER IS LIMITED TO BATHING AND IS UNACCEPTABLE ";
1850 PRINT "FOR PUBLIC WATER SUPPLY."
1860 PRINT
1870 GO TO 1930
1880 PRINT "TOTAL COLIFORMS ARE CONSIDERED 'RELIABLE' INDICATORS ";
1890 PRINT "AS TO THE POSSIBLE PRESENCE OF BACTERIAL PATHOGENS...";
1900 PRINT "SINCE THE TOTAL COUNT IS ";A(6);" PER 100ML. ,THIS BODY ";
1910 PRINT "OF WATER IS UNFIT FOR HUMAN CONTACT."
1920 PRINT
1930 IF A(7)>0 THEN 2000
1940 IF A(7)=-1 THEN 2060
1950 PRINT "THIS BODY OF WATER PROBABLY HAS NO RECENT FECAL ";
1960 PRINT "CONTAMINATION. HOWEVER, IF THE TOTAL COLIFORM COUNT ";
1970 PRINT "IS >50 PER 100 ML., ANOTHER FECAL COUNT IS ADVISED."
1980 PRINT
1990 GO TO 2060
2000 PRINT "THE PRESENCE OF FECAL COLIFORMS IN WATER INDICATES ";
2010 PRINT "RECENT FECAL CONTAMINATION. SINCE THE FECAL COUNT WAS ";
2020 PRINT "REPORTED AS ";A(7);" PER 100 ML., THIS BODY OF WATER IS ";
2030 PRINT "UNFIT FOR PUBLIC WATER SUPPLY."
2040 PRINT
2050 GOTO 2210
2060 IF A(9)<0.015 THEN 2120
2070 PRINT "PHOSPHATES ARE PRESENT IN SUFFICIENT AMOUNTS,";A(9);
2080 PRINT " PPM, THAT COULD 'TRIGGER' AN ALGAL BLOOM,IF OTHER ";
2090 PRINT "CONDITIONS ARE RIGHT."
```

ANALYZE (CONTINUED)

```
2100 PRINT
2110 GO TO 2310
2120 PRINT "PHOSPHATES,REPORTED TO BE PRESENT IN QUANTITIES OF ";A(9);
2130 PRINT " PPM, SEEM SUFFICIENTLY LOW TO PARTIALLY INHIBIT ";
2140 PRINT "THE PRODIGIOUS GROWTHS OF ALGAE. IF ALGAE DOES PERSIST ";
2150 PRINT "IN LARGE NUMBERS, CHECK THE FOLLOWING:"
2160 PRINT TAB(13);"NITRATE-NITROGEN"
2170 PRINT TAB(13);"NITRITE-NITROGEN"
2180 PRINT TAB(13);"AMMONIA COMPOUNDS"
2190 PRINT
2200 GO TO 2310
2210 IF A(8)=-1 THEN 2060
2220 IF A(7)/A(8)>1 THEN 2270
2230 PRINT "SINCE FECAL STREP EQUALS ";A(8);" THE CONTAMINATION ";
2240 PRINT "IS LIKELY ANIMAL WASTE."
2250 PRINT
2260 GO TO 2060
2270 PRINT "SINCE FECAL STREP EQUALS ";A(8);" THE CONTAMINATION ";
2280 PRINT "IS LIKELY HUMAN WASTE."
2290 PRINT
2300 GO TO 2060
2310 END
```

6. STR-CLAS

STR-CLAS is a stream classification program using New Hampshire standards established January 1, 1970.* See Table 1 at end of this appendix. The parameters for the classification are: pH, DØ, TURBIDITY, HYDRØCARBON (ØIL), CØLIFØRM, FECAL CØLIFØRM, AND FECAL STREP. By inputting the above parameters from any site study, the output will consist of a classification (A,B,C,D) per parameter. The lowest classification being the stream classification at that site.

A subprogram, "STREAM 1," calculates volume of flow and another subprogram, "SATTABLE," provides a table of DO saturations from 0° to 50° C for checking your results. A basic description of the final classification is also available.

A "RUN" and "LIST" follows.

* This program will be revised to use Federal Standards.

```
RUN

STR-CLAS  09 AUG 70  20:46

 THIS PROGRAM CLASSIFIES WATER PER SITE BY N.H.STANDARDS.

LOCATION ? WINNESQUAM RIVER
DATE OF TEST ? 7-24-70
SITE # ? 3

DO YOU HAVE A PH READING? YES
READING? 6.2

DO YOU HAVE A DISSOLVED OXYGEN (D.O.) READING? YES
READING? 4
WATER TEMP IN C? 13

DO YOU HAVE A TURBIDITY READING? YES
READING? 22

DO YOU HAVE A HYDROCARBON (OIL) FACTOR? NO

DO YOU HAVE A COLIFORM COUNT PER ML.? YES
READING? 33766

DO YOU HAVE A FECAL COLIFORM READING? YES
READING? 250

DO YOU HAVE A FECAL STREP READING? YES
READING? 100

DO YOU HAVE A FLOW CALCULATION TO MAKE? NO
DO YOU HAVE THE VOLUMETRIC VALUE ALREADY? YES
VALUE? 385.1
```

****

SOURCE: NEW HAMPSHIRE WATER SUPPLY AND POLLUTION CONTROL
COMMISSION. JAN.1,1970.

NOTE: THE FINAL CLASSIFICATION IS THE LOWEST CLASS NOTED BELOW!

RESULTS OF WATER CLASSIFICATION FOR SITE 3 ON WINNESQUAM RIVER FOR
7-24-70

A PH OF 6.2 INDICATES CLASS C WATER.

A D.O. OF 4 INDICATES CLASS D WATER.

A TURBIDITY READING OF 22 INDICATES CLASS B OR C WATER.

COMMENT:NON-TROUT STREAM ACCEPTABILITY.

A TOTAL COLIFORM READING OF 33766 PER 100 ML.
INDICATES CLASS C OR D WATER.

COMMENT:
ANY FECAL COLIFORM OR FECAL STREP READINGS (YOURS
ARE 250 AND 100) INDICATES RECENT
CONTAMINATION BY WARM BLOODED ANIMALS.
THIS CONTAMINATION IS LIKELY HUMAN WASTE.

ALL OF THIS IS BEING CARRIED ALONG AT 385.1 FT↑3/SEC.

DO YOU WISH AN EXPLAINATION OF THE WATER CLASSES (YES/NO)? YES

WHICH CLASS OF WATER (A,B,C,D)? C

CLASS C: ACCEPTABLE FOR RECREATIONAL BOATING,FISHING,
AND INDUSTRIAL WATER SUPPLY WITH OR WITHOUT TREATMENT,
DEPENDING ON INDIVIDUAL REQUIREMENTS. (THIRD HIGHEST
QUALITY).

WOULD YOU LIKE ANOTHER CLASS EXPLAINED (YES/NO)? YES
WHICH CLASS OF WATER (A,B,C,D)? D

CLASS D: AESTHETICALLY ACCEPTABLE. SUITABLE FOR CERTAIN
INDUSTRIAL PURPOSES, POWER AND NAVIGATION. (LOWEST ALL-
OWABALE QUALITY NOW LESS THAN 1/2 MILE IN ENTIRE STATE).

WOULD YOU LIKE ANOTHER CLASS EXPLAINED (YES/NO)? NO

DO YOU WISH A TABLE OF THEORETICAL D.O.SATURATION FROM 0 TO 50 CENT.? YE

THEORETICAL D.O.SATURATION TABLE FROM 0 TO 50 CENT.

TEMP (°C)	THEORETICAL D.O. (ppm)
0	14.6
1	14.2
2	13.8
3	13.5
4	13.1
5	12.8
6	12.5
7	12.2
8	11.9
9	11.6
10	11.3
11	11.1
12	10.8
13	10.6
14	10.4
15	10.2
16	10
17	9.7
18	9.5
19	9.4
20	9.2
21	9
22	8.8
23	8.7
24	8.5
25	8.4
26	8.2
27	8.1
28	7.9
29	7.8
30	7.6
31	7.5
32	7.4
33	7.3
34	7.2
35	7.1
36	7
37	6.9
38	6.8
39	6.7
40	6.6
41	6.5
42	6.4
43	6.3
44	6.2
45	6.1
46	6
47	5.9
48	5.8
49	5.7
50	5.6

STR-CLAS

```
100 PRINT
110 SUB STREAM1;SATTABLE
120 MARGIN 70
130 '
140 ' WATER CLASSIFICATION PROGRAM FOR NEW HAMPSHIRE.
150 '
160 ' WRITTEN DURING WATER POLLUTION PROGRAM - SUMMER '70
170 PRINT " THIS PROGRAM CLASSIFIES WATER PER SITE BY N.H.STANDARDS."
180 PRINT
190 PRINT
200 PRINT "LOCATION ";
210 INPUT L$
220 PRINT "DATE OF TEST ";
230 INPUT D$
240 PRINT "SITE # ";
250 INPUT S1
260 LET I=0
270 PRINT
280 PRINT "DO YOU HAVE A PH READING";
290 GOSUB 2510
300 PRINT "DO YOU HAVE A DISSOLVED OXYGEN (D.O.) READING";
310 GOSUB 2510
320 PRINT "DO YOU HAVE A TURBIDITY READING";
330 GOSUB 2510
340 PRINT"DO YOU HAVE A HYDROCARBON (OIL) FACTOR";
350 GOSUB 2510
360 PRINT "DO YOU HAVE A COLIFORM COUNT PER ML.";
370 GOSUB 2510
380 PRINT "DO YOU HAVE A FECAL COLIFORM READING";
390 GOSUB 2510
400 PRINT "DO YOU HAVE A FECAL STREP READING";
410 GOSUB 2510
420 PRINT "DO YOU HAVE A FLOW CALCULATION TO MAKE";
430 INPUT R$
440 IF R$="YES" THEN 510
450 PRINT "DO YOU HAVE THE VOLUMETRIC VALUE ALREADY";
460 INPUT A$
470 IF A$="NO" THEN 530
480 PRINT "VALUE";
490 INPUT F
500 GO TO 530
510 GOSUB #1
520 '
530 ' A(1)=PH   A(2)=D.O.   A(3)=TURBIDITY   A(4)=OIL   A(5)=COLIFORM
540 ' A(6)=FECAL COLIFORM   A(7)=FECAL STREP
550 '
560 LET I=1
570 IF A(I)=-1 THEN 710
580 IF A(I)>8.5 THEN 640
590 IF A(I)>8 THEN 660
```

STR-CLAS (CONTINUED)

```
600 IF A(I)>6.5 THEN 680
610 IF A(I)>6 THEN 700
620 GOSUB 2200
630 GO TO 710
640 GOSUB 2200
650 GO TO 710
660 GOSUB 2180
670 GO TO 710
680 GOSUB 2220
690 GO TO 710
700 GOSUB 2180
710 LET I=2
720 IF A(I)=-1 THEN 870
730 FOR J=0 TO 50
740 READ S(J)
750 NEXT J
760 DATA 14.6,14.2,13.8,13.5,13.1,12.8,12.5,12.2,11.9,11.6,11.3,11.1
770 DATA 10.8,10.6,10.4,10.2,10.0,9.7,9.5,9.4,9.2,9.0,8.8,8.7,8.5
780 DATA 8.4,8.2,8.1,7.9,7.8,7.6,7.5,7.4,7.3,7.2,7.1,7.0,6.9
790 DATA 6.8,6.7,6.6,6.5,6.4,6.3,6.2,6.1,6.0,5.9,5.8,5.7,5.6,5.5
800 IF A(I)>.75*S(T) THEN 840
810 IF A(I)> 5 THEN 860
820 GOSUB 2200
830 GO TO 870
840 GOSUB 2220
850 GO TO 870
860 GOSUB 2180
870 LET I=3
880 IF A(I)=-1 THEN 1010
890 IF A(I)<5 THEN 940
900 IF A(I)<10 THEN 960
910 IF A(I)<25 THEN 990
920 GOSUB 2200
930 GO TO 1010
940 GOSUB 2140
950 GO TO 1010
960 GOSUB 2240
970 GOSUB 2280
980 GO TO 1010
990 GOSUB 2240
1000 GOSUB 2300
1010 LET I=4
1020 IF A(I)=-1 THEN 1110
1030 IF A(I)=1 THEN 1080
1040 IF A(I)=2 THEN 1100
1050 PRINT "INPUT EITHER 1 OR 2 FOR THE OIL FACTOR";
1060 INPUT A(I)
1070 GO TO 1030
1080 GOSUB 2180
1090 GO TO 1110
```

STR-CLAS (CONTINUED)

```
1100 GOSUB 2200
1110 LET I=5
1120 IF A(I)=-1 THEN 1200
1130 IF A(I)<50 THEN 1170
1140 IF A(I)<240 THEN 1190
1150 GOSUB 2260
1160 GO TO 1200
1170 GOSUB 2140
1180 GO TO 1200
1190 GOSUB 2160
1200 PRINT
1210 PRINT TAB(25);
1220 FOR I=1 TO 10
1230 PRINT "*";
1240 NEXT I
1250 FOR I=1 TO 4
1260 PRINT
1270 NEXT I
1280 PRINT "SOURCE: NEW HAMPSHIRE WATER SUPPLY AND POLLUTION CONTROL"
1290 PRINT "COMMISSION.          JAN.1,1970."
1300 PRINT
1310 PRINT "NOTE: THE FINAL CLASSIFICATION IS THE LOWEST CLASS NOTED";
1320 PRINT " BELOW!"
1330 PRINT
1340 PRINT "RESULTS OF WATER CLASSIFICATION FOR SITE ";S1;" ON ";
1350 PRINT L$; " FOR ";D$
1360 PRINT
1370 PRINT
1380 IF A(1)=-1 THEN 1410
1390 PRINT "A PH OF ";A(1);" INDICATES CLASS ";A$(1);" WATER."
1400 PRINT
1410 IF A(2)=-1 THEN 1440
1420 PRINT "A D.O. OF ";A(2);" INDICATES CLASS ";A$(2);" WATER."
1430 PRINT
1440 IF A(3)=-1 THEN 1500
1450 PRINT "A TURBIDITY READING OF ";A(3);" INDICATES CLASS ";A$(3);
1460 PRINT " WATER."
1470 IF A(3)<10 THEN 2110
1480 IF A(3)<25 THEN 2110
1490 PRINT
1500 IF A(4)=-1 THEN 1590
1510 IF A(4)=1 THEN 1560
1520 PRINT "A DEFINITE HYDROCARBON (OIL) OBSERVATION INDICATES CLASS";
1530 PRINT " D WATER."
1540 PRINT
1550 GO TO 1590
1560 PRINT "A SLIGHT HYDROCARBON (OIL) FILM INDICATES AT BEST CLASS";
1570 PRINT " C WATER."
1580 PRINT
1590 IF A(5)=-1 THEN 1630
```

STR-CLAS (CONTINUED)

```
1600 PRINT "A TOTAL COLIFORM READING OF ";A(5);" PER 100 ML."
1610 PRINT "INDICATES CLASS ";A$(5);" WATER."
1620 PRINT
1630 IF A(6)=-1 THEN 1740
1640 PRINT
1650 PRINT TAB(15);"COMMENT:"
1660 PRINT TAB(5);"ANY FECAL COLIFORM OR FECAL STREP READINGS ( YOURS"
1670 PRINT TAB(5);"ARE ";A(6);" AND ";A(7);") INDICATES RECENT"
1680 PRINT TAB(5);"CONTAMINATION BY WARM BLOODED ANIMALS."
1690 IF A(7)=-1 THEN 1740
1700 IF A(6)/A(7)>1 THEN 1730
1710 PRINT TAB(5);"THIS CONTAMINATION IS LIKELY ANIMAL WASTE."
1720 GO TO 1740
1730 PRINT TAB(5);"THIS CONTAMINATION IS LIKELY HUMAN WASTE."
1740 PRINT
1750 PRINT "ALL OF THIS IS BEING CARRIED ALONG AT ";F;" FT↑3/SEC."
1760 FOR J=1 TO 5
1770 PRINT
1780 NEXT J
1790 PRINT "DO YOU WISH AN EXPLAINATION OF THE WATER CLASSES (YES/NO)";
1800 INPUT R$
1810 IF R$="YES" THEN 1830
1820 GO TO 2030
1830 PRINT
1840 PRINT "WHICH CLASS OF WATER (A,B,C,D)";
1850 INPUT L$
1860 IF L$="A" THEN 1910
1870 IF L$="B" THEN 1940
1880 IF L$="C" THEN 1970
1890 GOSUB 2320
1900 GO TO 1990
1910 PRINT
1920 GOSUB 2370
1930 GO TO 1990
1940 PRINT
1950 GOSUB 2410
1960 GO TO 1990
1970 PRINT
1980 GOSUB 2460
1990 PRINT
2000 PRINT "WOULD YOU LIKE ANOTHER CLASS EXPLAINED (YES/NO)";
2010 INPUT R$
2020 IF R$="YES" THEN 1840
2030 PRINT
2040 PRINT "DO YOU WISH A TABLE OF THEORETICAL D.O.SATURATION FROM";
2050 PRINT " 0 TO 50 CENT.";
2060 INPUT A$
2070 IF A$="YES" THEN 2090
2080 STOP
2090 GOSUB #2
```

418

STR-CLAS (CONTINUED)

```
2100 STOP
2110 PRINT
2120 PRINT TAB(5);"COMMENT:";B$(3)
2130 GO TO 1490
2140 LET A$(I)="A"
2150 RETURN
2160 LET A$(I)="B"
2170 RETURN
2180 LET A$(I)="C"
2190 RETURN
2200 LET A$(I)="D"
2210 RETURN
2220 LET A$(I)="A OR B"
2230 RETURN
2240 LET A$(I)="B OR C"
2250 RETURN
2260 LET A$(I)="C OR D"
2270 RETURN
2280 LET B$(I)="TROUT STREAM ACCEPTABILITY."
2290 RETURN
2300 LET B$(I)="NON-TROUT STREAM ACCEPTABILITY."
2310 RETURN
2320 PRINT
2330 PRINT " CLASS D: AESTHETICALLY ACCEPTABLE. SUITABLE FOR CERTAIN"
2340 PRINT " INDUSTRIAL PURPOSES, POWER AND NAVIGATION. (LOWEST ALL-"
2350 PRINT " OWABALE QUALITY NOW LESS THAN 1/2 MILE IN ENTIRE STATE)."
2360 RETURN
2370 PRINT " CLASS A: POTENTIALLY ACCEPTABLE FOR PUBLIC WATER SUPPLY"
2380 PRINT " AFTER DISINFECTION. NO DISCHARGE OF SEWAGE OR OTHER"
2390 PRINT " WASTES. (QUALITY UNIFORMLY EXCELLENT)."
2400 RETURN
2410 PRINT "CLASS B: ACCEPTABLE FOR BATHING AND RECREATION,FISH"
2420 PRINT "HABITAT AND PUBLIC WATER SUPPLY AFTER ADEQUATE TREATMENT."
2430 PRINT " NO DISPOSAL OF SEWAGE OR WASTES UNLESS ADEQUATELY TREATED."
2440 PRINT " (HIGH AESTHETIC VALUE.)"
2450 RETURN
2460 PRINT " CLASS C: ACCEPTABLE FOR RECREATIONAL BOATING,FISHING,"
2470 PRINT " AND INDUSTRIAL WATER SUPPLY WITH OR WITHOUT TREATMENT,"
2480 PRINT " DEPENDING ON INDIVIDUAL REQUIREMENTS. ( THIRD HIGHEST"
2490 PRINT " QUALITY)."
2500 RETURN
2510 LET I=I+1
2520 INPUT R$
2530 IF R$="NO " THEN 2640
2540 IF R$="YES" THEN 2590
2550 PRINT "INCORRECT FORMAT. PLEASE TYPE YES OR NO."
2560 PRINT " DO YOU HAVE A READING";
2570 INPUT R$
2580 GO TO 2530
2590 IF I=4 THEN 2700
```

STR-CLAS (CONTINUED)

```
2600 PRINT "READING";
2610 INPUT A(I)
2620 IF I=2 THEN 2670
2630 GO TO 2650
2640 LET A(I)=-1
2650 PRINT
2660 RETURN
2670 PRINT "WATER TEMP IN C";
2680 INPUT T
2690 GO TO 2650
2700 PRINT "(1) SLIGHT OIL FILM OR (2) OIL SLICK";
2710 INPUT A(I)
2720 GO TO 2650
2730 END
```

STREAM1

```
100 DIM D(20),H(20),I(20)
110 PRINT
120 PRINT
130 PRINT TAB(15);"STREAM CROSSECTION CALCULATION."
140 PRINT
150 PRINT
160 PRINT "WIDTH OF STREAM (F,I)";
170 INPUT W,W5
180 LET W=W+W5/12
190 PRINT "HOW MANY DEPTH READINGS WERE TAKEN";
200 INPUT R
210 PRINT"DISTANCE FROM SHORE TO FIRST MEASUREMENT(FT.) AND";
220 PRINT " DEPTH (F,I)";
230 INPUT D(1),H(1),I(1)
240 LET H(1)=H(1)+I(1)/12
250 LET W1=D(1)
260 FOR J=2 TO R
270 PRINT "DISTANCE(F),DEPTH(F,I)";
280 INPUT D(J),H(J),I(J)
290 LET H(J)=H(J)+I(J)/12
300 LET W1=W1+D(J)
310 NEXT J
320 PRINT "DISTANCE FROM LAST DEPTH TO SHORE";
330 INPUT D(R+1)
340 LET W1=W1+D(R+1)
350 IF W1=W THEN 430
360 PRINT
370 PRINT "ERROR IN WIDTH MEASUREMENT."
380 PRINT
390 PRINT "DO YOU WISH TO CONTINUE";
400 INPUT R$
410 IF R$="YES" THEN 430
420 STOP
430 LET T=.5*D(1)*H(1)
440 LET W=W1
450 FOR I=1 TO R-1
460 IF H(I+1)>H(I) THEN 500
470 LET T=T+.5*(H(I)-H(I+1))*D(I+1)+D(I+1)*H(I+1)
480 NEXT I
490 GO TO 520
500 LET T=T+.5*(H(I+1)-H(I))*D(I+1)+H(I)*D(I+1)
510 GO TO 480
520 LET T=T+.5*D(R+1)*H(R)
530'VELOCITY
540 PRINT
550 PRINT TAB(15);"AVERAGE VELOCITY CALCULATION."
560 PRINT
570 PRINT "HOW MANY TRIALS WERE CONDUCTED";
580 INPUT K
590 LET V=0
```

STREAM1 (CONTINUED)

```
600 FOR J=1 TO K
610 PRINT "DISTANCE BETWEEN POINTS(FT.,IN.)";
620 INPUT F(J),I(J)
630 LET F(J)=F(J)+I(J)/12
640 PRINT "TIME OF FLOAT(SEC.)";
650 INPUT S(J)
660 LET V=F(J)/S(J)+V
670 NEXT J
680 LET V=V/K
690 PRINT "WAS THE STREAM 1)SMOOTH OR 2) ROUGH BOTTOMED";
700 INPUT A
710 IF A=2 THEN 740
720 LET V=V*.9
730 GO TO 750
740 LET V=V*.8
750 LET F=T*V
760 LET F=INT(F+.5)
770 PRINT
780 PRINT "FOR A MORE COMPLETE ANALYSIS,USE THIS DATA IN 'STREAM'."
790 PRINT
800 RETURN
810 END
```

SATTABLE

```
100 DIM S(51)
110 ' THEORETICAL D.O. SATURATION TABLE.
120 PRINT
130 PRINT
140 PRINT "THEORETICAL D.O.SATURATION TABLE FROM 0 TO 50 CENT."
150 PRINT
160 PRINT TAB(26);"THEORETICAL"
170 PRINT TAB(5);"TEMP";TAB(30);"D.O."
180 PRINT
190 FOR I=0 TO 50
200 IF I>9 THEN 260
210 PRINT TAB(6);I;
220 IF S(I)<10 THEN 280
230 PRINT TAB(28);S(I)
240 NEXT I
250 RETURN
260 PRINT TAB(5);I;
270 GO TO 220
280 PRINT TAB(29);S(I)
290 GO TO 240
300 END
```

Appendix 2

Implementation

The implementation of the activities depend on the school's ability to handle several problems, namely: cost, scheduling, and motivation. These problems are interrelated at most schools; therefore, they must be resolved as the program proceeds. Beginning with a small group of interested administrators, teachers, and students seems to be a good approach. A club or single course offering may be as far as a school can proceed in the first year. The schools listed in the preface have programs underway or are beginning programs. Furthermore, they are grouped into clusters which meet monthly, carry on interschool activities, and support the implementation of the program in their region. The organized regions are: Central New Hampshire, Southern New Hampshire-Vermont, Eastern Massachusetts, Central Massachusetts, Northern Massachusetts, New York-Pennsylvania-New Jersey, Washington (D.C.), and South Carolina-Georgia. Any school listed in the preface may be contacted to obtain the cluster coordinator's name. The sections below deal with the various problems of implementation.

A. Cost

The expense involved in beginning a program can be minimized in several ways; costs are increased by equipment, travel, and books and references. Equipment for all but a few activities is not specialized and probably already exists in the various school laboratories. For example, any of the chemical analyses may be made in the lab. Usually, however, this makes testing slow, inconvenient, and remote for the test site. Field test kits which are modular can be obtained to perform selected tests; an elementary kit which contains tests for DO, temperature, turbidity, pH, chlorine, phosphate, sulphate, and nitrate are sufficient to test. Bacterial studies do require equipment which may not be on hand; consult with the staff of your local hospital, county health department, and sewage treatment plant. Usually an arrangement may be worked out to use their facilities.

If your school is a nonprofit enterprise it qualifies for U. S. government surplus. To obtain information on the location of such surplus depots, contact your state education department. Local industry has been found to be particularly helpful; money may not be too easily obtained, but often slightly used equipment or materials will be made available. If you make your needs known through news media and at community meetings and fairs, almost anything can happen. Students at Germantown Academy have helicopter service available for aerial photography as a result of their activities in mapping and monitoring the Wissahickon Creek.

Much of the equipment listed in the activities may be made by hand. If students and teachers work together on this project, a great deal of equipment may be made in a short time. The making of equipment leads to new and better methods of inquiry.

B. Scheduling

Teachers have noted that informal arrangements with other teachers allow the greatest flexibility when the school is unable to provide adequate scheduled time. The sports department arrangements for team games usually may be duplicated if the importance of academic pursuits can be established. Past experience indicates that as the school gains recognition in the community for its achievements, the difficulty in getting time for activities diminishs rapidly. Activities such as (G) and (H) in Chapter 4 are good beginning places to arouse community interest.

C. Motivation

Helping to build the necessary interest in pollution among teachers, students, administrators, and parents will be an important role which you must perform. The pollution problems which we face today are, in themselves, grave enough to motivate people to action. Therefore, in many cases, all that needs to be supplied is a vehicle for expressing and focusing this action. This can very often be accomplished through a club, the planning and presentation of an assembly program, or a variation of an earth day program.

Any of the above activities may serve to allow the students, faculty, administration, and even the parents to become involved and interested in some particular facet of our pollution problems. Once interest and activity have begun there are several means of aiding in its continuance.

School administrators are particularly fond of anything which gains favorable publicity for the school. Most of the above mentioned activities will produce this in the form of newspaper articles and radio and television newscasts. All that you need do is be sure to advise them of what you are planning.

We have found that one factor which aids in the sustained effort of the students is to make them aware of your belief that they are capable of making significant contributions to the community at large. They do possess the initiative and curiosity to determine problems, conduct research, and translate the information into meaningful conclusions, but it is important that you make your awareness of this known to them. A published statement to this effect on the part of the faculty, the publication of a student journal, or the submission of their data and conclusions to the appropriate public agencies serves to substantiate this in the minds of the students.

Since students enjoy this activity-oriented approach and, at the same time, learn more through it, other teachers will want to know what you are doing. Do not be afraid to explain it to them or even better, invite them to participate in the activities along with the students. Your success should provide the necessary motivation for them to try it also.

It is wise to motivate as many parents as possible. Naturally, they are curious about what their children are doing in school. Invite them to participate or at least arrange for a demonstration for them. They may prove to be an important resource for you in terms of the information, equipment, and transportation which they may be able to provide.

Appendix 3

Limitations

There are a number of possible trouble spots which may pop up during the implementation of these activities. A foreknowledge of these problem areas will, in most cases, be all that is needed to avoid them. In general the problems seem to fall into three categories: time and transportation, methods and equipment, and dealing with other people.

A. Time and Transportation

1. Most activities in thie guide are designed to last an hour and a half; however, many do require more time for completion. For one of the filming activities, for example, students camped overnight on Cardigan Mountain in order to film the sunrise.

2. Some lab experiments required by these activities take a long time to obtain the results. The BOD test, for example, requires 5 days before final results can be obtained. Thus it may become a test of your students' patience.

3. Some people will have difficulty locating suitable streams or lakes for their activities. Streams with the easily monitored depth, rate of flow, width, suitable access points, etc., are not always close to the school.

4. Transporting a large class to and from a site may pose problems in simply obtaining permission to use school busses and to miss lunch, parents' permissions, a driver for the school bus, box lunches, or money for lunches. Methods must be devised to overcome such obstacles. Often making friends with the janitors, cafeteria people, and bus drivers is the key.

B. Methods and Equipment

1. After gaining permission to leave school with your class and having organized all these details, do not forget to advise parents that the students may be required to wade in streams and grovel in the dirt. Students' clothes may become somewhat soiled.

2. Also before leaving the school, be sure you have all the equipment necessary for the activity. This reduces transportation costs and total time required.

3. Students should be well versed in the care of equipment in the field since it is much more difficult to keep it dry and clean.

4. When sterile procedures are required in the field, special care must be taken because the chances of contamination seem to increase in proportion to the distance from the lab.

5. There is some danger involved when students are dealing with sewage wastes. Hip boots and rubber gloves are sometimes a necessity.

6. We have found some keys especially difficult to use. Keep looking for one that is not as vague as the one you are presently using.

7. If the cost of some of the equipment is prohibitive in your case, please use Appendix 2 on Implementation to help remedy these difficulties.

C. Dealing with Others

1. When taking relatively large groups to confined places (a city manager's office, for example) or a privately owned area (such as a farm), it is advisable that the person or persons being contacted understand the size and age level of the group beforehand so that they will be prepared.

2. Always be sure to arrange your appointments well in advance.

3. If you arrange an interview, be sure to list your questions before you arrive. In general, people are willing to cooperate but their time is limited.

4. Always gain permission to use private land, even if you are only using it as access to a lake, river, or stream.

5. Be sure to arrange for the protection of equipment if it must be left in a certain place for any length of time. Many experiments have been disrupted or completely destroyed by curious or unknowing outsiders. Experience has shown that experiments placed in driveways or parking lots are particularly vulnerable.

6. Since these activities are concerned with water pollution, you must be prepared at some point to deal with the polluters themselves. To what extent you are willing to incur their wrath is not only a test of your own moral fortitude but also that of your school.

Appendix 4

Evaluation

Accountability is an essential ingredient in all educational programs. Effective fulfillment of this parameter requires careful planning accompanied by appropriate evaluation. This may seem antagonistic to an approach consisting of activities which are defined only to the point necessary to initiate thinking processes and promulgated through questions which may lead to unexpected outcomes. However, planning and evaluation are "musts" if any success or measure of success is to be obtained.

Organizational and evaluative aids are included in each section of the activity outlines. The introductions state general objectives. The questions provide direction (but not in a dictational manner) and suggest behavioral changes which might be observed for evaluative purposes. Procedures, past examples, and limitations include guidance in organizing the activity.

The foundation for planning and evaluation must begin at the time the activity is selected. This is accomplished by identifying the desired outcomes or objectives on paper in behavioral form. General statements such as the following are of limited use:

a. The student will understand the effects of chemicals on a specific ecosystem.

b. The students will develop an appreciation of the economic factors associated with pollution.

However, behavioral statements which not only designate the desired outcome but also identify a resulting behavior and the conditions under which it is to be observed and evaluated can be extremely useful in planning and evaluative efforts. For example:

When provided alkalinity, iron, and dissolved oxygen data for a body of water, the student correctly describes one or more biological effect which might be observed at the site.

These objectives should include not only cognitive or psychomotor categories but also affective behavior. While the former are significant, the urgency of current pollution justifies emphasis of attitudes, values, and motivation. Other than these remarks, it is not within the scope of this guide to cover thoroughly the philosophy and writing of behavioral objectives. Such information is readily available (see Bibliography) and should be consulted by those who are unfamiliar with behavioral objectives.

As stated earlier, preliminary behavioral objectives should be formulated immediately upon selection of the activity. In addition to serving an evaluative role, they are a source of guidance for planning the unit. However, they must not be allowed to limit innovative approaches to the study.

Once the activity is in progress, the preliminary objectives should be modified. If the activity is allowed to progress creatively, many unexpected, desirable goals will emerge. They must not be ignored because they were not recognized at the start. To the contrary, such goals should be incorporated into the list of objectives. It may be necessary to discard some of the preliminary behavioral objectives if they are found inappropriate. In this way the objectives evolve throughout the entire activity. As such they become representative of the activity rather than a list of idealistic goals developed for a file.

The revised behavioral objectives are used as guides in the formulation of an evaluative tool appropriate to the study. If properly constructed, the criteria and methods of evaluation will be stated within each objective.

In addition to fulfilling immediate planning and evaluative needs, the resulting behavioral objectives and data provide valuable tools for modifying the activity for future students.

References

Eiss, A., Behavioral Objectives in the Affective Domain, National Science Teachers Association, Washington, D. C., 1969. This useful guide for writing behavioral objectives includes specific examples encompassing psychomotor, cognitive and affective domains.

Koran, J., et al, How to Write Behavioral Objectives in Science Instruction, National Science Teachers Association, Washington, D. C., 1969. A discussion of the theory and expression of objectives concerned with affective behavior is presented.

Mager, R. F., Preparing Instructional Objectives, Fearon Publishers, Palo Alto, Calif., 1962. This is a programmed text for instruction in the writing of objectives.

Appendix 5

Bibliography

During this age of the "information explosion," it is imperative that students learn to use many appropriate sources while researching a particular problem. For this reason a listing of those books and pamphlets found particularly useful by teachers and students in the study of water pollution during the 1969 and 1970 summer programs and the 1969-1970 school year are included. It is hoped that most of the publications listed under Core References will be made available to students while studying water pollution. The references listed under Additional References are also excellent, but due to prior consideration on the technical level should probably be added only after the Core References have been secured.

This bibliography is by no means comprehensive. Hopefully, current periodicals, state and federal water surveys, for your area, and local library resources will supplement this reference listing.

Appendix 5

A. Core References

1. The following set of publications will provide a working reference source for any class, upper elementary through 12th grade. It is recommended that multiple copies of the asterisked publications be obtained, depending on class size and grade level. Those references with one asterisk (*) should be purchased in multiple copies for elementary through 8th grade use. The double asterisk (**) indicates that multiple copies could best be used for a 9th through 12th grade situation.

   a. **American Public Health Association, Standard Methods for the Examination of Water and Wastewater, (13th ed.), American Public Health Association, Inc., 1740 Broadway, New York, N. Y., 1971. This is an indispensible technical reference which includes test procedures and explanations of dissolved solids and gases found in water. The biology section includes collection methods and diagrams of organisms.

   b. Billings, W. D., Plants, Man, and the Ecosystem, (2nd ed.), Fundamentals of Botany Series, Wadsworth Publishing Co., Belmont, California, 1970. 160 pp. This paperback can introduce ecological concepts to 9th-12th graders and contains a section concerning man's effects on the environments.

   c. Carvajal, J., and M. E. Munzer, Conservation Education--A Selected Bibliography, The Interstate Printers and Publishers, Danville, Ill., 1968. 98 pp. This is an annotated bibliography dealing with not only water but also air, population, and land conservation.

   d. Frost, T. P., The Galloping Ghost of Eutrophy, Society for the Protection of New Hampshire Forests, 5 South State St., Concord, N. H., 1968. 36 pp. This is a well written pamphlet on the problem of eutrophication.

   e. Leopold, L. B., and K. S. Davis, Water, Life Science Library, Time Inc., New York City, 1966. 200 pp. This is a well illustrated book covering water use and hydrology (particularly useful for lower grade use).

f. **McKee, J. E., and H. W. Wolf, Water Quality Criteria, (2nd ed.), Water Quality Control Board, Sacramento, Calif., 1963. 548 pp. This is an excellent reference, although dated, on chemical, biological, radioactive, and pesticide pollutants. Each pollutant is explained and many toxicity levels are listed. 3827 references are listed.

g. **Needham, J. G., and P. R. Needham, A Guide to the Study of Fresh-Water Biology, Holden-Day, Inc., 500 Sansome St., San Francisco, Calif., 1969. 108 pp. This is an excellent reference book for any fresh-water biology work which is thoroughly illustrated with a good section on collection and equipment.

h. Ward, R. C., Principles of Hydrology, McGraw-Hill Book Co., New York City, 1967. Easily readable for high school level, it contains stimulating ideas for activities.

i. Environmental Education for Everyone--Bibliography of Curriculum Materials for Environmental Studies, National Science Teachers Association, 1201 Sixteenth St., N. W., Washington, D.C., 20036, 1970. 36 pp. The most comprehensive bibliography reviewed to date, it includes programs in environmental education curriculum guides, textbooks, experiments, enrichment readings, periodical listings, film strips, film lists, and other invaluable materials for environmental studies.

j. Simplified Laboratory Procedures for Wastewater Examination, WPCF Publication #18, Water Pollution Control Federation, 3900 Wisconsin Ave., Washington, D.C., 30016, 1969. 62 pp. Simplified Standard Method tests for physical and chemical examination of water and is best for use in grades 9-12.

2. The following publications may be purchased through the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C. 20402.

a. Austin, John H., A Primer on Waste Water Treatment, 1969. 24 pp., $.55. This is a clearly written pamphlet concerning the methods and problems of waste water treatment which is good for 7th-12th grade use.

b. *Baldwin, H. L., and C. L. McGuinnes, A Primer on Ground Water, 1966. 26 pp., $.25. This pamphlet explains ground water and ground-water resources competently for 7th-12th grade use.

c. *Leopold, L. B., and W. B. Langbein, A Primer on Water, 1966. 50 pp., $.35. This is a good introductory pamphlet on hydrology and water use, is good for 7th-12th grade use, and includes a glossary.

d. Ingram, W. M., K. M. MacKenthum and A. F. Bartsch, Biological Field Investigative Data for Water Pollution Surveys, 1966. 139 pp., $.70. This paperback has sections on graphical expression of data and organism response to organic pollution and has both good references and a glossary.

e. Thomas, H. E., The Yearbook of Agriculture, 1955: Water. 751 pp., $2.00. It contains numerous papers on water source and use and is an excellent book for the money... if it is still available from the Superintendent.

f. The Practice of Water Pollution Biology, 1969. 281 pp., $1.50. This paperback covers areas such as aquatic environments, organic wastes, toxic materials, acid mine and radioactive wastes, eutrophication, marine environments, water and waste treatment, and nuisance organisms and has a large reference section.

g. Water Quality Criteria, Federal Water Pollution Control Administration, 1968. 234 pp., $3.00. This book defines the various uses of water in the U.S. and recommends the various parameter limits for the different water uses. Good references and glossaries are included.

3. Individual copies of the following three pamphlets may be obtained free from Millipore Corporation, Bedford, Massachusetts, 01730.

a. Experiments in Microbiology, 1969. 45 pp. An excellent pamphlet for 7th-12th grade use. Procedures and experiments to familiarize students with microorganisms--their occurrence in nature and ways to culture them--are given.

b. Microbiological Analysis of Water, 1969. 25 pp. Good procedures and explanations of coliform indicators and other bacteria are discussed.

c. Microbiology for the Beginning Student, 1969. 12 pp. Basic explanation of the membrane filtration technique and equipment is presented.

4. The following three pamphlets may be purchased for $.50 each through Educational Products Division, LaMotte Chemical Products Company, Chestertown, Md., 21620.

a. *Amos, W. H., Limnology, 1969. 39 pp. This introduction to the fresh water environment is simply written and can be used by 7th-12th graders. Running and still water and the organisms found in each are discussed.

b. Renn, C. E., A Study of Water Quality, 1968. 46 pp. This is a good pamphlet dealing with the general aspects of water pollution (usable in 7th-12th grade).

c. Renn, C. E., Our Environment Battles Water Pollution, 1969. 32 pp. This is a good paperback, usable in elementary through 12th grade, dealing with various dissolved solids and gases and their relationship with organisms.

B. Additional References

The following list of references could be extremely beneficial in the study of water pollution. However, due to the price or technical nature, these texts should probably be purchased after the Core References have been obtained.

a. Chorley, R. J., (ed.), Water, Earth, and Man, Barnes and Noble, Inc., New York City, 1969. This is a good reference on hydrology and water use, capable of being used by 7th-12th graders.

b. Foerster, J. W., "A Phyco-periphyton Collector," Turtox News, 47-3, pp 82-84, 1969. It describes a simple, easy-to-make periphyton collector. The periphyton is collected on glass microscope slides.

c. McHarg, I. L., Design With Nature, Natural History Press, New York City, 1969. This is an excellent book which deals with the need for environmental planning as further development (of land) takes place (best for high school use).

d. Pelczar, M. J.,and R. D. Reid, Microbiology, McGraw-Hill Book Co., New York City, 1965. This is a microbiology text which includes introductions to the taxonomy, biochemistry, cultivation, control, and ecological role of microorganisms.

e. Pennak, R. W., Fresh-Water Invertebrates of the United States, Ronald Press Co., New York City, 1953. 769 pp. This is a thorough, technical text.

f. Sawyer, C. N.,and P. L. McCarty, Chemistry for Sanitary Engineers, (2nd ed.), McGraw-Hill Book Co., New York City, 1968. 518 pp. A thorough presentation of the theory and methods of sanitation chemistry is given. This book might best be used as a teacher's reference because a knowledge of elementary chemistry is assumed.

g. Smith, G. M., Fresh-Water Algae of the United States, McGraw-Hill Book Co., New York City, 1950. 719 pp. This is a comprehensive text on algae--collection, preservation, and methods of study.

h. Ward, H. B.,and G. C. Whipple, Fresh-Water Biology, (2nd ed.), John Wiley and Sons, New York City, 1959. This is the single most comprehensive manual for the identification of aquatic plants and animals.

i. Special Publication Number 1, Sources of Limnological and Oceanographic Apparatus and Supplies, American Society of Limnology and Oceanography. Many specialized items of biological collecting equipment are not available from the usual supply houses. This publication lists the suppliers. It is available from the Secretary of the Society.

C. Periodicals

To keep students aware of environmental news, a number of periodicals should be made available for classroom use. The following periodicals were found useful during the 1969-70 school year:

436

a. The Conservation Foundation Letter, (monthly), The Conservation Letter, 1717 Massachusetts Ave., N. W., Washington, D. C. 20036, $6/yr. This is a three-hole punched newsletter capable of being accumulated for reference in a loose-leaf notebook and deals with current legislation and all types of environmental news. It is probably best for high school use.

b. Environmental Science and Technology, (monthly), American Chemical Society, 20th and Northampton Sts., Easton, Pa. 18042, $7/yr. This is a technical magazine but is good for high school use.

c. Environment, (10 issues/yr.), Environment, Circulation Dept., 438 North Skinker Boulevard, St. Louis, Mo. 63130, $8.50/yr. This is a well written periodical, dealing in depth with current environmental problems (capable of use in grades 7th-12th).

D. Movies

During the 1969-1970 school year, Miss Elizabeth Gage and her students at Northfield School reviewed the following environmental films. The film reviews worked on during the 1970 summer programs at Tilton have not yet been compiled but will be forthcoming in the newsletters.

Title: It's Your Decision: Clean Water

Source: Association Films, Inc.

Regional Film Centers:

600 Grand Avenue, Ridgefield, N. J. 07657

561 Hillgrove Avenue, LaGrange, Ill. 60525

324 Delaware Avenue, Allegheny County, Oakmont, Pa. 15139

Information: Color, 14 minutes, free loan.

Summary: The movie begins by briefly tracing the development of towns and cities along rivers and streams. It shows how rivers were able to handle their pollutional load, but with our rapidly growing population, the pollution crisis has become more acute. Animated figures are used to show the basic characteristics of polluted water and how primary and secondary water treatment plants operate.

Appraisal: Because the movie is easy to understand, it could be shown to several different types of audiences. Clean Water would be effective as an introductory film for a pollution course. The film would be of benefit to elementary school students if seen as an introduction to our nation's pollution problems. The film would also be very effective if shown in a community where a secondary water treatment plant is needed. It could be shown to the general public, too, possibly as a short feature in a movie theatre.

Title: Oops, or How Broad Shoulders Polluted the River

Source: University of Minnesota, Audio-Visual Department, 2037 University Avenue, S. E., Minneapolis, Minn. 55455.

Information: Black and white (Color: $5.85), 22 minutes.

Summary: This movie gives insight into industry's problems in controlling pollution, listing several different aspects such as analyzing wastes, repairing equipment, showing concern for waste treatment plants, and spreading responsibility to everyone. It stresses the importance on competent, well-trained employees. The title refers to a worker, "broad shoulders," who through inattentiveness, poor management, and poor training created a big mess of overflowing tanks of chemicals, petroleum, and suds.

Appraisal: The class felt that this movie was good for our purpose but is best suited for its intended purpose of making industry aware of the problems of pollution and suggesting how these problems can be solved. It was good for our class because we have little opportunity to come into contact with industry, their problems, and their attempts to remedy the situations.

Title: Becket Adventures

Source: Sid Dupont, Becket Academy, East Haddam, Conn.

Information: Color, 30 minutes.

Summary: Mr. Dupont visits schools showing films or slides of the canoe trip that Becket summer students take down the Connecticut River from its source to the sound. The boys

on the trip surveyed points along the river, recording animal and plant life in the area, bottom structure, flow, weather, geology and the condition of the river itself. This information was written in a log which may be obtained from Becket Academy.

Appraisal: Although this film was made by amateurs, we feel it is useful for obtaining a general picture of the condition of the Connecticut. We feel that Mr. Dupont wants others to become aware of the environment in which they live through this movie, just as the boys became aware through their trip. We feel that this is a worthwhile movie for students of pollution to see.

Title: Story of a Lake

Source: Chevron Chemical Company, Advertising and Public Relations, Ortho Division, 200 Bush Street, San Francisco, Calif.

Information: Color, 10-15 minutes, free loan (one day).

Summary: The film describes the conditions in a small lake choked with water weed (Elodea) and includes interviews of homeowners who describe the effect of the lake in this condition on their recreational enjoyment of the lake and on property values of lake sites. The people try to control the growth of water weed by raking it out but find that this offers only temporary control. The lake community calls on the services of a professional herbicide company which sprays the lake with the chemical, Diquat, a product of the Chevron Company. There are scenes showing the lake being sprayed from a small boat. The effects of the chemical are described in rather general terms ("...attacks green matter and breaks down cell structure..."). The herbicide takes effect in 4-5 days and after 10-14 days the water weed has decomposed. Views of the clean lake are shown and community members are interviewed for their impressions.

Appraisal: The film is clearly selling Diquat, a product of the Chevron Chemical Company, and the biological content of the film is minimal. It is, in our opinion, not as useful for water pollution studies as it might be. One wonders if the herbicide is "harmless to water animals," why the men spraying the water are wearing coveralls and masks while they are working. Further, we wonder specifically what effect the chemical has on cells...maybe a letter to the Chevron Company would clear this up for us.

Title: Membrane Microfiltration: A New Tool for Classroom Science

Source: Bernard I. Sohn, Educational Division, Millipore Corporation, Bedford, Mass. 01730.
Also, Tilton School has this film to lend upon request.

Information: Color, 30 minutes, free loan.

Summary: The movie dealt specfically with Millipore apparatus, its uses in the classroom, in the field, in industry, and in medicine. It also stressed the advantage of the Millipore over previous techniques of filtering by using clever photography. Animated figures representing bacteria described the filtering process and its usefulness in detecting the presence of micro-organisms.

Appraisal: Although this film was intended for showing to teachers, we feel it should be used as an introduction for students as well. The film is simple yet comprehensive in its coverage of the subject.

Title: Water: Pattern of Life

Source: Ohio Department of Natural Resources, Administrative Services Section, 1500 Dublin Road, Columbus, Ohio 43212.

Information: Color, free loan.

Summary: This movie told about the sources of, uses of, and problems with natural water in the state of Ohio. It covered many topics such as the hydrologic cycle, transportation, droughts, flood control, underground water supply, growing population, recreational uses of water, industrial uses of water, reservoirs, and quality control of water. It offered suggestions as how to solve problems; for example, surveying, control of flood plains, and long range planning of water use and supply. It also suggested that areas should be divided into watershed basins to control the problems.

Appraisal: This film would be good as an introduction to water pollution or biology because it shows the wide usage of water. It does not, however, deal specifically with pollution or control of it. It also is somewhat outdated because it speaks of Lake Erie as a valuable source of water, which it was at one time!!

Title: What Are We Doing to Our World (in two parts)

Source: University of Minnesota, Audio-Visual Department, 2037 University Avenue, S. E., Minneapolis, Minn. 55455.

Information: Color, 25 minutes each, $7.20 each reel.

Summary: "We are going to have to choose between the advancements of technology. . ." and the necessity of maintaining ecological balances on earth. This film explores some serious consequences of unrestricted growth, pollution, waste, and over-population problems.

What was a question of conservation on earth is becoming a question of survival. Experiments such as the one at Hubbard Brook attempt to understand ecological balances and explore some of the unforeseen consequences of man's attempts to make a better world.

Appraisal: This is an excellent film which provokes very good discussion among students. It is an unbalanced film from the point of view that it stresses what we are doing to pollute and far less is said about what we might do to prevent pollution. In several places, it is brought out that people will have to re-examine their attitudes and values concerning their relation to the earth environment and this serves to balance the views presented. The spokesman for the Agricultural Chemists presents some interesting arguments about continued use of pesticides.

Title: Municipal Sewage Treatment Processes

Source: Communicable Diseases Center, Atlanta, Ga. 30333.

Information: Black and White, 13 minutes, free loan.

Summary: This movie begins with a definition of municipal sewage, where it goes, and the results of its discharge. It goes into great detail with "on location" scenes about the different types of sewage treatment plants. The movie then gives a basic outline of the steps a city or town must follow in planning the design, construction, and maintenance of a plant. A simple basis for choosing the most effective type of treatment is given and summarizes the results that people can expect from their plant. The movie also goes into some detail about the operation of water treatment plants.

Appraisal: Since the movie is clear and easily understood in its description of sewage and its treatment processes it could be an effective way to inform the people of a town of the need for a treatment plant and of the decisions they will have to make. Though the movie is somewhat dated, it could be used early in a water pollution course.

Title: The River Must Live

Source: Shell Film Library, 450 North Meridian Street, Indianapolis, Ind. 46204.

Information: Color, 21 minutes, free loan.

Summary: This film deals with the growth of industry as a cause of the growth in pollution. The fact that one person's effluent is another's supply is mentioned. Processes of decay of life in the river through bacteria and the different forms of life contained within an ecosystem are discussed. The film speaks of how the pollutional imbalance decreases the supply of oxygen. There is a need for time in order to restore the natural balance. When there is too much pollution the river dies. After being dumped in the river, the pollution is carried to and lost in the sea's vastness. From there, through the hydrocycle, the water is purified and returned to the land. Different methods of waste treatment can purify the water before it reaches the sea. The film also treats the different uses of water--industrial, commercial, and domestic.

Appraisal: This film was rated very good to excellent. The narration was easy to follow, the organization was good, and the music was appropriate. There was excellent visual treatment of uses of water and different types of waste water treatment. Also, the Shell Company refrained admirably from pushing its product. They did skim over the possibility of oceanic pollution, ignoring the tertiary treatment factor. The best use of this film would be as an introduction in water pollution.

E. Equipment

Various companies are selling commercial water testing equipment suitable for classroom use. Catalogs and descriptive literature can be obtained from the following addresses.

1. Chemical testing equipment

   a. Hach Chemical Company
      Box 907
      Ames, Ia. 50010

b. Delta Scientific Corporation
120 East Hoffman Ave.
Lindenhurst, N. Y. 11757

c. LaMotte Chemical Products Company
Educational Products Division
Chestertown, Md. 21620

2. Bacteriological equipment

Millipore Corporation
Educational Products Division
Bedford, Mass. 01730

3. Aquatic Biology Equipment

a. Oceanography Unlimited, Inc.
108 Main St.
Lodi, N. J. 07644

b. Wildlife Supply Company
2200 S. Hamilton St.
Saginaw, Mich. 48602

Appendix 6

Water Pollution and Environmental Glossary

This glossary is a compilation of terms from aquatic ecological, hydrologic and chemical fields of endeavor. Of the many persons who contributed, the principle contributor was John E. Mathews of the Department of the Interior (Robert S. Kerr Water Research Center, Ada, Oklahoma).

Terms underscored in a definition are separately defined in this Glossary. When appropriate, closely associated or related terms are cited parenthetically, following the definition. Specific synonyms are noted in parentheses with the listed word.

Appendix 6

A

ABIOTIC FACTOR Physical, meteorological, geological, or chemical aspect of environment.

ABYSSAL ZONE All of a sea or of a very deep lake below the bathyal zone. The primary energy source for this region lies far above in the euphotic zone; density of life depends on the amount of organic material that settles from the euphotic zone. (See Hadal zone.)

ACCLIMATION Physiological and behavioral adjustments of an organism in response to a change in environment. (See Adaptation.)

ACCLIMATIZATION Acclimation of a particular species over several generations in response to marked environmental changes.

ACID A hydrogen ion (H^+) donor.

ACIDITY See Appendix 1: Chemistry.

ACTINOMYCETES Filamentous microorganisms intermediate between the fungi and bacteria, although more closely related to the bacteria. These organisms are widely distributed in soils and are often conspicuous in lake and river muds. They are often associated with taste and odor problems in water supplies.

ACUTE TOXICITY Any toxic effect that is produced within a short period of time, usually 24-96 hours. Although the effect most frequently considered is mortality, the end result of acute toxicity is not necessarily death. Any harmful biological effect may be the result. (See Chronic Toxicity, Direct Toxicity.)

ADAPTATION Change in the structure, form or habits of an organism to be better fit changed or existing environmental conditions. (See Acclimation.)

AEROBIC Refers to life or processes occuring only in the presence of free oxygen; refers to a condition characterized by an excess of free oxygen in the aquatic environment. (See Anaerobic.)

ALGAE (Alga) Simple plants, many microscopic, containing chlorophyll. Algae form the base of the food chain in aquatic environments. Some species may create a nuisance when environmental conditions are suitable for prolific growth.

ALKALINITY Appendix 1: Chemistry.

ALLOCHTHONOUS Pertaining to those substances, materials, or organisms in a waterway which originate outside and are brought into the waterway. (See Autochthonous.)

ALLUVIAL FAN (Delta)

ANABOLISM Synthesis or manufacture of organic compounds within an organism. (See Metabolism.)

ANADROMOUS Pertaining to fishes that spend most of their life in salt water but enter freshwater to spawn (e.g., salmon, shad, striped bass, etc.). (See Catadromous.)

ANAEROBIC Refers to life or processes occurring in the absence of free oxygen; refers to conditions characterized by the absence of free oxygen. (See Aerobic.)

ANTAGONISM Reduction of the effect of one substance because of the introduction or presence of another substance (e.g., one substance may hinder, or counteract, the toxic influence of another). (See Synergism.)

APHOTIC ZONE That portion of a body of water to which light does not penetrate with sufficient intensity to have any biological significance. (See Euphotic Zone.)

ARTIFICIAL SUBSTRATE A device placed in the water (for a specified period of time) that provides living spaces for a multiplicity of organisms (e.g., glass slides, concrete blocks, multiplate samplers, rock baskets, etc.). The primary purpose of artificial substrates is to allow the investigator to collect organisms in areas where the physical habitat is limiting or cannot be adequately sampled using conventional methods.

ASSIMILATION 1. Removal of dissolved or suspended materials from a water mass by biological, chemical, and physical processes; 2. Conversion or incorporation of absorbed nutrients into body substances. (See Synthesis.)

ASSOCIATION All organisms occupying a given habitat.

ATOLL Large, thick, coral mass encircling a lagoon in tropical oceans; sometimes portions of the reef become built up with sand, silt, soil and vegetation to become an island. (See Barrier Reef, Fringing Reef.)

AUFWUCHS (Periphyton)

AUTOCHTHONOUS Pertaining to those substances, materials, or organisms originating within a particular waterway and remaining in that waterway. (See Allochthonous.)

AUTOTROPHIC (Holophytic) Self nourishing; denoting those organisms that do not require an external source of organic material but can utilize light energy and manufacture their own food from inorganic materials (e.g., green plants, pigmented flagellates). (See Heterotrophic.)

B

BARRIER BEACH A ridge of deposits separated from the mainland by an interval of water.

BARRIER REEF Large, thick, coral mass more or less surrounding an island or paralleling the mainland shore in tropical areas and separated from the land mass by a lagoon. (See Atoll, Fringing Reef.)

BASE A hydrogen ion (H^+) acceptor.

BATHYAL ZONE That region of the sea that extends from the euphotic zone to the bottom of the continental slope. Density of life in this zone depends on organic material settling from the euphotic zone and is generally inversely proportional to the depth.

BEACH The zone of demarcation between land and water of lakes, seas, etc., covered by sand, gravel or larger rock fragments.

BENTHIC REGION The bottom of a waterway; the substratum that supports the benthos.

BENTHOS Bottom-dwelling organisms. These include: (1) sessile animals such as sponges, barnacles, mussels, oysters, worms, and attached algae; (2) creeping forms such as snails, worms and insects; (3) burrowing forms, which include clams, worms, and some insects; and (4) fish whose habits are more closely associated with the benthic region than other zones (e.g., flounders).

BIOASSAY A determination of the biological effect of some substance, factor or condition employing living organisms or cells as the indicator.

BIOCHEMICAL OXYGEN DEMAND See Appendix 1: Chemistry.

BIOCOENOSIS The plants and animals comprising a community.

BIOLOGICAL CONTROL 1. Use of natural predators, parasites, or pathogens to reduce or eliminate pest organisms (e.g., use of gambusia to feed on mosquito larvae). 2. Control of organisms by interference with their physiological processes (e.g., sterilization of male flies).

BIOMASS The total amount of living material in a particular habitat or area; an expression dealing with the total weight of a given population of organisms.

BIOMONITORING 1. Continuous surveillance of an effluent (or dilution thereof) by using living organisms to test its suitability for discharge into a receiving water. 2. Use of living organisms to test the quality of a receiving water downstream from a waste discharge. (See Bioassay.)

BIOTA All life of a region.

BIOTIC FACTORS (Biological Factors) In ecology, those environmental factors which are the result of living organisms and their activities; distinct from physical and chemical factors (e.g., competition, predation, etc.). (See Ecological Factor.)

BIOTIC POTENTIAL The inherent capability of an animal to multiply in an unrestricted environment. (See Environmental Resistance.)

BIOTOPE (Habitat)

BLOODWORMS Midge fly larvae. Many of the species have hemoglobin in the blood causing a red color and are often associated with rich organic deposits. Also, the common name for certain of the marine segmented worms (class Polychaeta). (See Sludgeworms.)

BLOOM A readily visible, concentrated growth or aggregation of minute organisms, usually algae, in bodies of water.

BRACKISH WATERS Those areas where there is a mixture of fresh and salt water; the salt content is greater than fresh water but less than sea water; the salt content is greater than in sea water.

BUFFER SOLUTION A solution which, within limits, resists changes in pH.

C

CARNIVOROUS Pertaining to animals that feed on other animals. (See Herbivorous.)

CARRYING CAPACITY The maximum quantity of organisms that any particular habitat can support over an extended period.

CATABOLISM The breakdown of organic compounds within an organism. (See Metabolism.)

CATADROMOUS Pertaining to fish that spend most of their life in freshwaters but migrate to the sea to spawn (e.g., american eel). (See Anadromous.)

CATASTROPHIC DRIFT Massive drift of bottom organisms under conditions of stress such as floods or toxicity. (See Drift Organisms, Incidental Drift, Periodic Drift.)

CHEMICAL STRATIFICATION A layering of water in a lake because of density differences owing to the varying or differential concentrations of dissolved substances with depth. (See Stratification.)

CHLOROPHYLL Green photosynthetic pigment present in many plant and some bacterial cells. There are seven known types of chlorophyll; their presence and abundance vary from one group of photosynthetic organisms to another.

CHRONIC TOXICITY Toxicity, marked by a long duration, that produces an adverse effect on organisms. The end result of chronic toxicity can be death although the usual effects are sublethal (e.g., inhibits reproduction, reduces growth, etc.). These effects are reflected by changes in the productivity and population structure of the community. (See Acute Toxicity.)

CLASSIFICATION The placing of organisms into taxa (or categories) according to established scientific requirements. (See Taxonomy, Taxon.)

CLEAN WATER ASSOCATION An association of organisms found in any natural, unpolluted environment. These associations are characterized by the presence of species that are sensitive to environmental changes caused by introduction of pollutants. In many cases the presence of a wide variety of species with relatively few individuals representing any one of them is also characteristic. (See Sensitive Organisms, Tolerant Association.)

CLINOMETER The standard instrument used by geographers to measure the slope of a hillside.

COASTAL PLAIN A plain between the sea and higher land, usually at a low elevation.

COASTAL WATERS Those waters surrounding the continent which exert a measurable influence on uses of the land and on its ecology. The Great Lakes and the waters to the edge of the continental shelf.

COASTAL ZONE Coastal waters and adjacent lands which exert a measurable influence on the uses of the sea and its ecology. The zone extends onshore to the upper reaches of the tidal zone and adjacent shore areas. (See Estuary.)

COLD-BLOODED ANIMALS Animals that lack an internal temperature regulating mechanism to offset external temperature changes. Their body temperature fluctuates to a large degree with that of their environment. Examples are fish and aquatic invertebrates.

COLONY A distinguishable localized population within a species.

COMMUNITY All forms of life inhabiting a common environment.

COMPENSATION LEVEL The depth of a waterway at which there is a balance between photosynthesis and respiration.

COMPETITION The effort of two or more individuals or species of a community to utilize some of the same environmental resources.

COMPETITION EXCLUSION PRINCIPLE (Gause's Rule) No two species can occupy the same niche at the same time.

CONSUMERS Organisms which feed upon other organisms; often divided into first order consumers (Herbivores), second order (or higher) consumers (Carnivores which eat primary consumers), etc. (See Heterotrophic, Trophic Level.)

CONTINENTAL SHELF The shallow, gently sloping portion of the sea bottom bordering a continent, down to a depth of about 200 meters.

CONTINENTAL SLOPE The steeply sloping portion of the sea bottom extending seaward from the continental shelf.

CORAL A marine member of the phylum Coelenterata which secretes a hard exoskeleton, chiefly of calcium carbonate.

CORAL REEF Large coral mass associated with coastal areas in the tropics. (See Barrier Reef, Fringing Reef, Atoll.)

CRITERIA (Water Quality Criteria)

CRITICAL LEVEL (Threshold)

CRITICAL RANGE In bioassays, the value range of any factor between the maximum level or concentration at which no organisms die to the minimum level or concentration at which all organisms die under a given set of conditions in a given period of time.

CULTURAL EUTROPHICATION Acceleration by man of the natural process of enrichment (aging) of bodies of water.

CULTURE Cultivation of organisms in a medium containing necessary nutrients.

D

DECOMPOSERS (Reducers)

DELTA (Alluvial Fan) A fan-shaped deposition of silt, sand, gravel or other materials from a stream which occur when the hydraulic gradient lessens abruptly, as in the discharge of a stream into a lake or of a river into an ocean.

DENSITY (Population, Species) The number of individuals in relation to the space in which they occur; refers to the closeness of individuals to one another.

DENSITY STRATIFICATION (Stratification)

DEPOSITING SUBSTRATES Bottom areas where solids are being actively deposited. These often occur in the vicinity of effluent discharges. (See Sludge Deposits.)

DETRITUS Fragments of detached or broken down material.

DIFFUSION The even mixing of one compound throughout another.

DIRECT TOXICITY Toxicity that has an effect on organisms themselves instead of having an effect by actual alteration of their habitat or interference with their food supply. (See Acute Toxicity, Chronic Toxicity, Indirect Toxicity.)

DISSOCIATION The separation of preexisting ions during the process of solution.

DISSOLVED OXYGEN See Appendix 1: Chemistry.

DISSOLVED SOLID Any substance which existed primarily as a solid prior to the solution process.

DIURNAL 1. Refers to an event, process, or specific change that occurs every day; usually associated with changes from day to night. 2. Pertaining to those organisms that are active during day time. (See Nocturnal.)

DIVERSITY Pertaining to the variety of species within a given association of organisms. Areas of high diversity are characterized by a great variety of species; usually relatively few individuals represent any one species. Areas with low diversity are characterized by a few species; often relatively large numbers of individuals represent each species.

DOMINANT Species which by their activity, behavior, or number, have considerable influence or control upon the conditions of existence of associated species; species which "controls" its habitat and food web. (See Predominant.)

DRIFT ORGANISMS Benthic organisms temporarily suspended in the water and carried downstream by the current. (See Incidental Drift, Periodic Drift, Catastrophic Drift.)

DYSTROPHIC LAKES Shallow lakes with brown water, high organic matter content, low nutrient availability, poor bottom fauna, and high oxygen demand; oxygen is continually depleted and pH is usually low. In lake aging the "age" between a eutrophic lake and a swamp.

E

EBB TIDE That period of tide between a high water and the succeeding low water; falling tide. (See Flood Tide.)

ECOLOGICAL FACTOR Any part or condition of the environment that influences the life of one or more organisms. (See Biotic Factor.)

ECOLOGICAL NICHE The role of an organism in the environment, its activities and relationships to the living and nonliving environment; food and nutrition relationships are of primary importance. (See Habitat Niche.)

ECOLOGY Interrelationships between organisms and their environment, abiotic and biotic.

ECOSYSTEM A community, including all the component organisms, together with the environment, forming an interacting system.

ECOTYPE (Habitat Form) The growth form or appearance of an organism which is characteristic of a specific habitat. (Individuals of the same species may appear different in various habitats.)

EMERSED (Emergent) AQUATIC PLANTS Plants that are rooted at the bottom of a body of water, but project above the surface (e.g., cattails, bulrushes, etc.). (See Floating Aquatic Plants, Submersed Aquatic Plants.)

END-POINT The point at which a titration is to be terminated, sometimes signifying the presence of equivalent amounts of reactants.

ENRICHMENT An increase in the quantity of nutrients available to aquatic organisms for their growth and development. (See Eutrophication.)

ENVIRONMENT All external influences and conditions affecting the life and development of an organism.

ENVIRONMENTAL RESISTANCE Restriction imposed on the numerical increase of a population by environmental factors. (See Biotic Potential.)

EPILIMNION The water mass extending from the surface to the thermocline in a stratified body of water; the epilimnion is less dense than the lower waters and is wind-circulated and essentially homothermous. (See Hypolimnion.)

EQUILIBRIUM 1. The condition in which a population or community is maintained with only minor fluctuations in composition over an extended period of time. Sometimes called Dynamic equilibrium. 2. A dynamic interaction of two opposing chemical or physical processes occurring at equal rates.

ESTUARY That portion of a coastal stream influenced by the tide of the body of water into which it flows; a bay, at the mouth of a river, where the tide meets the river current; an area where fresh and marine waters mix. (See Positive Estuary, Inverse Estuary, Neutral Estuary, Coastal Zone.)

EULITTORAL ZONE (Tidal Zone)

EUPHOTIC ZONE The lighted region of a body of water that extends vertically from the water surface to the depth at which photosynthesis fails to occur because of insufficient light penetration.

EURY- Prefix meaning wide (e.g., euryhaline refers to a wide range of salinity tolerance; eurythermal refers to a wide range of temperature tolerance). (See Steno-.)

EUTROPHIC LAKES Lakes which are rich in nutrients and organic materials, therefore, highly productive. These lakes are often shallow and seasonally deficient of oxygen in the hypolimnion. (See Oligotrophic Lakes.)

EUTROPHICATION The natural process of the maturing (aging) of a lake; the process of enrichment with nutrients, especially nitrogen and phosphorus, leading to increased production of organic matter. (See Cultural Eutrophication, Oligotrophic Lakes, Eutrophic Lakes.)

EVAPOTRANSPIRATION The total of the transpiration of the plants of an area plus the evaporation of water from the area equals the total loss in the form of vapor.

F

FALCULTATIVE Refers to the capability of an organism to live under varying conditions (e.g., a falcultative anaerobe is an organism that although usually living in the presence of free oxygen can live in the absence of free oxygen). (See Obligate.)

FALL OVERTURN A physical phenomenon that may take place in a body of water during early autumn. The sequence of events leading to fall overturn include: (1) cooling of surface waters, (2) density change in surface waters producing convection currents from top to bottom, (3) circulation of the total water volume by wind action, and (4) vertical temperature equality. The overturn results in a uniformity of the physical and chemical properties of the entire water mass. (See Spring Overturn.)

FATHOM A unit of measurement equal to 6 feet (1.83 meters).

FAUNA Animal life.

FECAL COLIFORM See Appendix 1: Bacteriology.

FECAL STREPTOCOCCUS See Appendix 1: Bacteriology.

FIRTH A narrow arm of the sea; also the opening of a river into the sea. (See Estuary.)

FJORD (Fiord) A narrow arm of the sea between highlands. (See Firth, Estuary.)

FLOATING AQUATIC PLANTS Rooted plants that wholly or in part float on the surface of the water (e.g., water lillies, water hyacinth and duckweed). (See Emersed Aquatic Plants, Submersed Aquatic Plants.)

FLOOD TIDE That period of tide between low water and the succeeding high water; a rising tide. (See Ebb Tide.)

FLORA Plant life.

FOOD CHAIN Dependence of a series of organisms, one upon the other, for food. The chain begins with plants and ends with the largest carnivores (e.g., phytoplankton, zooplankton, forage fish, game fish). Food chains usually do not exist in nature; they are parts of food webs.

FOOD CYCLE (Food Web) All the interconnecting food chains in a community.

FORAGE FISH Fish, usually smaller species, that are important as food for other species.

FREE-SWIMMING (Motile) Actively moving about in water or capable of moving about in water. (See Sessile.)

FRINGING REEF Large coral mass at the edge of any land mass in tropical seas; it begins at the water's edge and may extend out to a quarter mile. (See Barrier Reef, Atoll.)

G

GAME FISH (Sport Fish) Those species of fish considered to possess sporting qualities on fishing tackle (e.g., salmon, trout, black bass, striped bass, etc.). Game fish are usually more sensitive to environmental changes than rough fish.

GAUSE'S RULE (Competition-Exclusion Principle)

GROUND WATER The body of water derived from percolation; contained in the soil, sub-soil and underlying rocks of an area.

H

HABITAT (Biotype) A specific type of place that is occupied by an organism, a population, or a community.

HABITAT FORM (Ecotype)

HABITAT NICHE The specific part or smallest unit of a habitat occupied by an organism. (See Ecological Niche.)

HADAL ZONE Pertaining to that part of the ocean at depths exceeding 6,000 meters, including both water and floor or bottom. (See Abyssal Zone.)

HERBIVORE An organism that feeds on plant material; a first order consumer. (See Carnivore.)

HETEROGENEOUS Consisting of dissimilar elements or constituents. (See Homogeneous.)

HETEROTROPHIC (Holozoic) Pertaining to organisms that are dependent on organic material for food. (See Autotrophic.)

HIGHER AQUATIC PLANTS (Pond Weeds) Those plants whose seeds germinate in the water phase or substrate of a body of water and which must spend part of their life cycle in water. This grouping includes plants which grow completely submersed as well as a variety of emersed and floating leaf types.

HOLOPHYTIC (Autotrophic)

HOLOZOIC (Heterotrophic)

HOMOGENEOUS Of uniform composition throughout.

HOMOTHERMOUS Having the same temperature throughout.

HYDROLYSIS The reaction of a salt with water to produce a basic or acidic solution.

HYPOLIMNION The region of a body of water that extends from the thermocline to the bottom and is essentially removed from major surface influences. (See Epilimnion.)

I

IDENTIFICATION The use of a taxonomic key or the equivalent to determine the scientific name of an organism.

INCIDENTAL DRIFT The casual, random drift of organisms. (See Drift Organisms, Catastrophic Drift, Periodic Drift.)

INDICATOR 1. A substance which, by means of a color change, identifies the end-point of a titration. 2. A substance which, by means of a color change, qualitatively and/or quantitatively evaluates the presence of an unknown substance.

INDIRECT TOXICITY Toxicity that affects organisms by interfering with their food supply or modifying their habitat instead of directly acting on the organisms themselves. (See Direct Toxicity.)

INFILTRATION The term used by hydrologists to describe the gradual downward flow of water from the surface through soil to ground water and water table reservoirs.

INLET A short, narrow waterway connecting a bay, lagoon, or similar body of water with a large parent body of water; a stream which flows into a lake; an arm of the sea, or other body of water, that is long compared to its width and that may extend a considerable distance inland.

INSTAR A stage in the life cycle of an insect or other arthropod between two successive molts.

INTERACTION Mutual or reciprocal action or influence between organisms, between organisms and environment, or between environmental factors.

INTERSPECIFIC Refers to relations or conditions between species. (See Intraspecific.)

INTERTIDAL ZONE (Tidal Zone)

INTOLERANT ORGANISMS (Sensitive Organisms)

INTRASPECIFIC Refers to relations or conditions between individuals within a species. (See Interspecific.)

INVERSE ESTUARY Type of estuary in which evaporation exceeds the supply of freshwater; evaporation freshwater inflow + precipitation. (See Positive Estuary, Neutral Estuary.)

INVERTEBRATES Animals without an internal skeletal structure (e.g., insects, mollusks, crayfish). (See Vertebrate.)

ION An atom or group of atoms which has become charged either by loss or by gain of one or more electrons.

L

LAGOON 1. A shallow sound, pond, or channel near or communicating with a larger body of water. 2. A settling pond for treatment of wastewater.

LARVA The immature form of an animal which is unlike its parents. Larvae are usually self-feeding but must pass through some sort of metamorphosis before assuming the characteristics of the adult; in insects, the wormlike stage between the egg and the pupa.

LAW OF THE MINIMUM, LIEBIG'S "The growth and reproduction of an organism is dependent on the nutrient substance, such as oxygen, carbon dioxide, calcium, etc., that is available in minimum quantity." (See Limiting Factor.)

LAW OF TOLERANCE, SHELFORD'S "When one environmental factor or condition is near the limits of toleration, either minimum or maximum, that one factor or condition will be the controlling one and will determine whether or not a species will be able to maintain itself." (See Limiting Factor.)

LEACHING The process by which nutrients in the soil are dissolved and carried away by water flowing through it by processes such as percolation.

LENTIC Pertaining to standing (nonflowing) waters such as lakes, ponds, and swamps. (See Lotic.)

LIFE CYCLE The various phases, changes, or stages through which an individual passes from the fertilized egg to death of the mature organism. Briefly stated it is birth-maturation-reproduction-death.

LIMITING FACTOR A factor whose absence, or excessive concentration, exerts some restraining influence upon a population through incompatibility with species requirements or tolerance. (See Law of the Minimum, Law of Tolerance.)

LIMNETIC ZONE The open-water region of a lake, especially in areas too deep to support rooted aquatic plants. This region supports plankton and fish as the principal plants and animals. (See Littoral Zone.)

LIMNOLOGY The ecology of fresh waters.

LITTORAL ZONE The shallow area that extends from shore to the lakeward limit of rooted aquatic plants; the shoreward region of a body of water; in marine ecology, the tidal zone. (See Limnetic Zone.)

LOTIC Pertaining to flowing waters such as streams and rivers. (See Lentic.)

M

MACROORGANISMS Those organisms retained on a U.S. standard sieve No. 30 (openings of 0.589 mm); those organisms visible to the unaided eye. (See Microorganisms.)

MACROPHYTE Any plant that can be seen with the naked, unaided eye (e.g., aquatic mosses, ferns, liverworts, rooted plants, etc.).

MEDIAN TOLERANCE LIMIT (TL_m) The concentration of tested substance in water at which just 50% of the test organisms survive for a specified period of exposure. (See Tolerance Limit.)

MEROMICTIC LAKES Lakes in which dissolved substances create a gradient of density differences with depth; this prevents complete mixing or circulation of water masses. (See Chemical Stratification.)

MEROMIXIS A condition of permanent stratification of water masses in lakes.

MESOLIMNION (Thermocline)

METABOLISM The sum of all chemical processes occuring within an organism; includes both synthesis (anabolism) and breakdown (catabolism) of organic compounds.

METALIMNION (Thermocline)

METAMORPHOSIS Distinct transformation of an animal from one distinctive life history stage to another in its postembryonic development (e.g., larva of an insect to a pupa). (See Life Cycle.)

MICROORGANISMS Those organisms retained on a U.S. standard sieve No. 100 (openings of 0.149mm); those minute organisms invisible or only barely visible to the unaided eye. (See Macroorganisms.)

MOLARITY A concentration unit which denotes the number of moles of particles (molecules or ions) present in 1 liter of solution.

MOLE A collective unit which signifies 6×10^{23} of anything but is used primarily when dealing with molecules or ions.

Appendix 6

MOLT To cast or shed periodically the outer body covering which permits an increase in size. This is especially characteristic of invertebrates. (See Instar.)

MOTILE (Free swimming)

N

NANOPLANKTON Very minute plankton not retained in a plankton net equipped with No. 25 silk bolting cloth (mesh, 0.03 to 0.04 mm).

NATURAL SELECTION Processes occurring in nature which result in selective survival and elimination of individuals less well adapted to their environment.

NAUPLIUS Free-swimming microscopic larval stage characteristic of many crustaceans, barnacles, etc.

NEAP TIDES Exceptionally low tides which occur twice each month when the earth, sun and moon are at right angles to each other; these usually occur during the moon's first and third quarters. (See Spring Tides.)

NEKTON Macroscopic organisms swimming actively in water (e.g., fish). (See Plankton.)

NERITIC ZONE Relatively shallow water zone which extends from the high-tide mark to the edge of the continental shelf.

NET PLANKTON Plankton retained in a plankton net equipped with No. 25 silk bolting cloth (mesh, 0.03 to 0.04 mm).

NEUSTON Organisms associated with, or dependent upon, the surface film (air-water interface) of bodies of water.

NEUTRAL ESTUARY Type of estuary in which neither the freshwater inflow nor the evaporation predominates; freshwater inflow + precipitation = evaporation. (See Positive Estuary, Inverse Estuary.)

NEUTRALIZATION The process of nullifying the effects of an acid (base) through the addition of a base (acid), usually accompanied by the formation of salt, water, and heat.

NICHE See Ecological Niche, Habitat Niche.

NOCTURNAL Pertaining to those organisms that are active at night. (See Diurnal.)

NUISANCE ORGANISMS (Pests) Those organisms capable of interfering with the use or treatment of water.

NUTRIENTS 1. Elements, or compounds, essential as raw materials for organism growth and development (e.g., carbon, oxygen, nitrogen, phosphorus, etc.). 2. The dissolved solids and gasses of the water of an area.

NYMPH An immature developmental form characteristic of the pre-adult stage in insects that do not have a pupal stage (e.g., May flies and stone flies). (See Larva.)

O

OBLIGATE Limited to one mode of life or action. (See Facultative.)

OCEANIC ZONE The region of open ocean beyond the continental shelf.

OLIGOTROPHIC LAKES Deep lakes which have a low supply of nutrients, thus they support very little organic production. Dissolved oxygen is present at or near saturation throughout the lake during all seasons of the year. (See Eutrophic Lakes.)

OMBROTROPHY Air induced changes in water quality.

OMNIVOROUS Animal which is a first order consumer at some times and a second or higher order consumer at others. (See Herbivorous, Carnivorous.)

OPTIMUM LEVEL The most suitable degree of an environmental factor for the full development of the organism concerned. (See Tolerance Range.)

ORGANISM Any living individual.

OSMOREGULATION The adjustment in the osmotic concentration of solutes in body fluids in organisms to environmental conditions (e.g., when salmon migrate from salt to freshwater).

OVERTURN The period of mixing (turnover) by top to bottom circulation of previously stratified water masses. This phenomenon may occur in spring and/or fall; the result is a uniformity of physical and chemical properties of the water at all depths. (See Thermal Stratification, Chemical Stratification, Spring Overturn, Fall Overturn.)

OXIDATION The loss of electrons by an atom or ion.

OXIDIZING AGENT A substance capable of accepting electrons from another substance and, thereby, being reduced.

OXYGEN DEBT A temporary phenomenon that occurs in an organism when available oxygen is inadequate to supply the respiratory demand. During such a period the metabolic processes result in the accumulation of breakdown products that are not oxidized until sufficient oxygen becomes available.

OXYGEN DEFICIT The difference between observed oxygen concentration and the amount that would theoretically be present at 100% saturation for existing conditions of temperature and pressure.

P

PARASITE An organism that lives on or in a host organism during all or part of its existence. Nourishment is obtained at the expense of the host.

PATHOGEN An organism or virus that causes a disease.

PELAGIC ZONE The open sea, away from the shore. Comparable with the limnetic zone of lakes.

PERCOLATION Infiltration.

PERIODIC DRIFT Drift of bottom organisms at regular or predictable intervals such as diurnal, seasonal, etc. (See Drift Organisms, Catastrophic Drift, Incidental Drift.)

PERIPHYTON (Aufwuchs) Attached microscopic organisms growing on the bottom, or other submersed substrates, in a waterway.

PESTICIDE Any chemical preparation used to kill pests. Include insecticides, herbicides, fungicides, etc.

PESTS (Nuisance Organisms)

pH See Appendix 1: Chemistry.

PHOTOSYNTHESIS The metabolic process by which simple sugars are manufactured from carbon dioxide and water by plant cells using light as an energy source. (See Chlorophyll.)

PHOTIC ZONE (Euphotic Zone)

PHYTOPLANKTON The plants of the plankton. Unattached microscopic plants subject to movement by wave or current action. (See Zooplankton.)

PLANKTON Suspended microorganisms that have relatively low powers of locomotion or that drift in the water subject to the action of waves and currents. (See Benthos, Periphyton, Nekton.)

POND WEEDS (Higher Aquatic Plants)

POOLS Areas of a stream, where the velocity of current is reduced. The reduced velocity provides a favorable habitat for plankton. Silts and other loose materials that settle to the bottom of pools are favorable for burrowing forms of benthos. (See Riffle.)

POPULATION A group of interacting individuals of the same species, area, or community.

POSITIVE ESTUARY Coastal indentures in which there is a measurable dilution of sea water by land drainage; freshwater inflow + precipitation evaporation. (See Inverse Estuary, Neutral Estuary.)

POTAMON ZONE Stream reach at lower elevations characterized by reduced flow, higher temperature, and lower dissolved oxygen levels. (See Rithron Zone.)

ppm (parts per million) A unit of concentration equivalent to the number of milligrams of solute in 1 liter of solution.

PRECIPITATE 1. (noun) A solid which separates from a solution because of some chemical or physical change. 2. (verb) The formation of such a solid.

PREDATOR An animal that kills and consumes other animals. (See Prey.)

PREDOMINANT Those organisms that are of outstanding abundance in a particular community for a given period of time. (See Dominant.)

PREY An animal that is killed and consumed by another animal. (See Predator.)

PRIMARY PRODUCTIVITY The total quantity of protoplasm produced by autotrophic organisms per unit of time in a specified habitat.

PRODUCERS Organisms that synthesize organic material from inorganic substances (e.g., plants). (See Consumers, Reducers.)

PRODUCTION The process of producing organic material; the quantity produced.

PRODUCTIVITY Rate of protoplasm formation or energy utilization by one or more organisms; total quantity of organic material produced within a given period in a specified habitat.

PROFUNDAL ZONE The deep, bottom-water area beyond the depth of effective light penetration. All of the lake floor beneath the hypolimnion.

PROLIFIC Pertaining to organisms that have a high reproductive potential and normally produce large numbers of young.

PROTOPLASM The living material in cells of plants and animals.

PUPA An intermediate, usually quiescent, form following the larval stage in insects, and maintained until metamorphosis to the adult stage. (See Larva.)

Q

QUALITY A term to describe the composite chemical, physical, and biological characteristics of a water with respect to its suitability for a particular use.

QUIESCENT Refers to the temporary cessation of development, movement or other activity. (See Pupa.)

R

RAPIDS Areas of a stream where velocity of current is great enough to keep the bottom clear of all loose materials, thus providing a firm substrate. The surface of the water is disrupted by turbulent currents. This area is occupied largely by specialized benthic or periphytic organisms that can firmly attach or cling to a firm substrate. (See Pools, Riffles.)

RED TIDE A visible red-to-orange coloration of an area of the sea caused by the presence of a bloom of certain plankton. These blooms are often the cause of major fish kills.

REDD A type of fish spawning area associated with flowing water and clean gravel. Fishes that utilize this type of spawning area include trout, salmon, some minnows, etc.

REDUCERS (Decomposers) Those organisms, usually bacteria or fungi, that break down complex organic material into simpler compounds. (See Producers, Consumers.)

REDUCING AGENT A substance capable of releasing electrons to another substance, thereby, being oxidized.

REDUCTION The gain of electrons by an atom or an ion.

REEF A ridge of rocks, sand, soil, or coral projecting from the bottom to or near the surface of the water.

RESPIRATION The complex series of chemical and physical reactions in all living organisms by which the energy and nutrients in foods are made available for use. Oxygen is used and carbon dioxide released during this process. (See Metabolism.)

RIFFLES Fast sections of a stream where shallow water races over stones and gravel. Riffles usually support a wider variety of bottom organisms than other stream sections. Also called rifts. (See Pools, Rapids.)

RITHRON ZONE Stream reach at higher elevations characterized by rapid flow, low temperature, and high dissolved oxygen levels. (See Potamon Zone.)

Appendix 6

ROUGH FISH Those species of fish considered to be of either poor fighting quality when taken on tackle, or of poor eating quality (e.g., carp, gar, suckers, etc.). These fish are considered undesirable in most situations. Most species in the group are more tolerant of widely changing environmental conditions than game fish.

S

SALT MARSH Low area adjacent to the sea that is covered with salt tolerant vegetation and regularly flooded by the high tide; similar inland areas near saline springs or lakes, though not regularly flooded.

SAPROBIC Living on dead or decaying organic matter. (See Scavenger.)

SAPROBICITY The sum of all metabolic processes which are the direct opposite of primary production; can be measured either by the dynamics of metabolism or analysis of community structure.

SAPROBIENSYSTEM European system of classifying organisms according to their response to organic pollution in slow moving streams: 1. Alpha-Mesosaprobic Zone - Area of active decomposition, partly aerobic, partly anaerobic, in a stream heavily polluted with organic wastes; 2. Beta-Mesosaprobic Zone - That reach of a stream that is moderately polluted with organic wastes; 3. Oligosaprobic Zone - That reach of a stream that is slightly polluted with organic wastes and contains the mineralized products of self-purification from organic pollution; but with none of the organic pollution remaining; 4. Polysaprobic Zone - That area of a grossly polluted stream which contains the complex organic wastes that are decomposing primarily by anaerobic processes.

SCAVENGER An organism that consumes decomposing organic matter.

SECONDARY PRODUCTIVITY Total quantity of animal (and other Heterotrophic) protoplasm produced per unit of time in a specified habitat. (See Primary Productivity, Productivity.)

SEDIMENT The material that settles to the bottom of a waterway.

SEEPAGE Any flow of ground water to the surface of the land. This can be in wells, springs, streams or in trickles of water we see in areas such as roadside cuts.

SEICHE Periodic oscillations in the water level of a lake or inland sea. These oscillations take place when a temporary local depression or elevation of the water level occurs.

SENSITIVE ORGANISMS (Intolerant Organisms) Organisms that exhibit a rapid response to environmental changes and are killed, driven out of the area, or as a group are substantially reduced in numbers when their environment is fouled. (See Tolerant Association.)

SESSILE Pertaining to those organisms that are attached to a substrate and not free to move about (e.g., periphyton). (See Free-swimming.)

SESTON All material, both organic and inorganic, suspended in a waterway.

SLOPE The term used to describe the steepness of a hillside. It is often expressed in degrees (of an angle) or in per cent. A ten per cent slope means an increase in altitude of 10 feet for every 100 horizontal feet traveled.

SLUDGE DEPOSITS Accumulations of settled, usually rapidly decomposing, organic material in the aquatic system.

SLUDGEWORMS Aquatic segmented worms (class Oligochaeta) that exhibit marked population increases in waters polluted with decomposable organic wastes. (See Bloodworms.)

SPAWN 1. In aquatic animals, to produce or deposit eggs or sperm. 2. To produce eggs or young. 3. Eggs of fishes and higher aquatic invertebrates.

SPECIES (Both singular and plural) An organism or organisms forming a natural population, or groups of populations, that transmit specific characteristics from parent to offspring. Each species is reproductively isolated from other populations with which they might breed. Hybrids, the results of interbreeding, usually exhibit a loss of fertility.

SPORT FISH (Game Fish)

SPRING OVERTURN A physical phenomenon that may take place in a body of water during the early spring. The sequence of events leading to spring overturn include: (1) melting of ice cover, (2) warming of surface waters, (3) density changes in surface waters producing convection currents from top to bottom, (4) circulation of the total water volume by wind action, and (5) vertical temperature equality. The overturn results in a uniformity of the physical and chemical properties of the entire water mass. (See Fall Overturn, Overturn.)

SPRING TIDE Exceptionally high tide which occurs twice per lunar month when there is a new or full moon, and the earth, sun, and moon are in a straight line. (See Neap Tides.)

STANDARD (Water Quality Standard)

STANDING CROP The quantity of living organisms present in an environment at a selected point in time.

STENO- Prefix denoting a narrow range of tolerance of an organism to a specific environmental factor (e.g., stenothermal refers to temperature; stenohaline refers to salinity; etc.). (See Eury-.)

STIMULUS An influence that causes a response in an organism. (See Taxis.)

STRATIFICATION (Density Stratification) Arrangement of water masses into separate, distinct, horizontal layers as a result of differences in density; may be caused by differences in temperature, dissolved or suspended solids. (See Thermal Stratification, Chemical Stratification.)

SUBLITTORAL ZONE The part of the shore from the lowest water level to the lower boundary of plant growth; transition zone from the littoral to profundal bottom.

SUBMERSED (Submerged Aquatic Plants) Higher aquatic plants that grow beneath the surface of the water (e.g., pondweed, coontails, etc.).

SUBSTRATE The bottom material of a waterway; the base or substance upon which an organism is growing; a substance undergoing oxidation.

SUMMER KILL Complete or partial kill of a fish population in ponds or lakes during the warm months, variously produced by excessively warm water, by a depletion of dissolved oxygen, and by the release of toxic substances from a decaying algal bloom, or by a combination of these factors. (See Winter Kill.)

SUPERSATURATION A condition in which a solution has more solute dissolved than is normally possible under the existing conditions.

SUPRALITTORAL ZONE (Supratidal Zone) The portion of the seashore adjacent to the tidal or spray zone.

SURFACE AQUATIC PLANTS (Floating Aquatic Plants)

SUSPENDED SOLID Any solid substance present in water in an undissolved state, usually contributing directly to turbidity.

SYMBIOSIS Two organisms of different species living in close association, one or both of which may benefit and neither is harmed.

SYNERGISM The joint action of two or more substances is greater than the sum of the action of each of the individual substances (e.g., action of certain combinations of toxicants). (See Antagonism.)

SYNTHESIS The production of a substance by the union of elements or simpler chemical compounds.

SYSTEMATICS (Taxonomy)

T

TARN Small mountain lake or pond.

TAXIS Directed movement by an organism in response to a stimulus (e.g., phototaxis is directed movement in response to a light stimulus; thermotaxis is directed movement in response to heat or cold as a stimulus; etc.).

TAXON (Taxa) Any taxonomic unit or category of organisms (e.g., species, genus, family, order, etc.).

TAXONOMY (Systematics) Organism classification with reference to its relationship in the plant, animal, or protist kingdoms; includes the bases, principles, procedures and rules of classification.

TERRITORY The area which an animal defends against intruders.

THERMAL STRATIFICATION The layering of water masses owing to different densities in response to temperature. The condition of a body of water in which the successive horizontal layers have different temperatures, each layer more or less sharply differentiated from the adjacent ones, the warmest (or the coldest) at the top. (See Overturn.)

THERMOCLINE (Mesolimnion, Metalimnion) The transition zone between the warm epilimnion and cold hypolimnion of stratified bodies of water; temperature change equals or exceeds 1°C for each meter of depth. (See Thermal Stratification.)

THRESHOLD (Critical Level) The maximum or minimum duration or intensity of a stimulus that is required to produce a response in an organism.

TIDAL FLAT The sea bottom, usually wide, flat, muddy and nonproductive, which is exposed at low tide.

TIDAL MARSH A low, flat marshland that is intersected by channels and tidal sloughs, usually covered by high tides; vegetation consists of rushes, grasses, and other salt tolerant plants. (See Salt Marsh.)

TIDAL ZONE (Eulittoral Zone, Intertidal Zone) The area of a shore between the limits of water level fluctuation; the area between the levels of high and low tides.

TIDE The alternate rising and falling of water levels, twice in each lunar day, due to gravitational attraction of the moon and sun in conjunction with the earth's rotational force.

TITRATION The determination of the volume of a solution needed to react with a known volume of sample, usually involving the progressive addition of the solution to the sample until the sample has reacted fully.

TL_m (Median Tolerance Limit)

TOLERANCE Relative capability of an organism to endure an unfavorable environmental factor.

TOLERANCE LIMIT ($TL_{10 \cdots 100}$) The concentration of a substance which some specified portion of an experimental population can endure for a specified period of time with reference to a specified type of response (e.g., TL_{100} means that all test organisms endured the stress for the specified time; TL_{10} means only 10% of the test organisms could tolerate the imposed stress for the specified time). (See Median Tolerance Limit.)

TOLERANCE RANGE The range of one or more environmental conditions within which an organism can function; range between the highest and lowest value of a particular environmental factor in which an organism can live.

TOLERANT ASSOCIATION An association of organisms capable of withstanding adverse conditions within the habitat. This association is often characterized by a reduction in the number of species (from a clean water association) and, in the case of organic pollution, an increase in individuals representing certain species.

TOXICANT A substance that through its chemical or physical action, kills, injures, or impairs an organism; any environmental factor which, when altered, produces a harmful biological effect. (See Pesticide.)

TOXICITY Quality, state, or degree of the harmful effect resulting from alteration of an environment factor.

TOTAL COLIFORM See Appendix 1: Bacteriology.

TRIPTON The dead suspended particulate matter in aquatic habitats; the nonliving portion of the seston. (See Detritus.)

TROPHIC LEVEL One of the parts in a nutritive series in an ecosystem in which a group of organisms in a certain stage in the food chain secures food in the same general manner. The first or lowest trophic level consists of producers (green plants); the second level of herbivores; the third level of secondary carnivores. Most bacteria and fungi are organisms in the reducer (decomposer) trophic level.

TROPHOGENIC REGION The area of a body of water where organic production from mineral substances takes place on the basis of light energy and photosynthetic activity.

TRANSPIRATION The photosynthetic and physiological process by which plants release water into the air in the form of water vapor.

TURBIDITY See Appendix 1: Chemistry.

TURNOVER (Overturn)

U

UBIQUITOUS ORGANISMS Organisms that can tolerate a wide range of environmental conditions or variation; organisms that are so active or numerous as to seem to be present or existent in all types of environments. (See Tolerant Association, Sensitive Organisms.)

UNICELLULAR Refers to an organism that consists of only one cell (e.g., blue-green algae, protozoa, bacteria). These organisms may, however, be filamentous or colonial in form.

V

VERTEBRATES Animals that have an internal skeletal system. (See Invertebrate.)

W

WATER QUALITY CRITERIA "A scientific requirement on which a decision or judgement may be based concerning the suitability of water quality to support a designated use." (See Water Quality Standard.)

WATER QUALITY STANDARD "A plan that is established by governmental authority as a program for water pollution prevention and abatement." (See Water Quality Criteria.)

WATERSHED The area of land delineated by the line separating areas of land, the water from which drains into separate river or stream systems.

WATER TABLE The level of ground water of an area.

WINTER KILL The death of fishes in a body of water during a prolonged period of ice and snow cover; caused by oxygen exhaustion due to respiration and lack of photosynthesis. (See Summer Kill.)

Z

ZONE An area characterized by similar flora or fauna; a belt or area to which certain species are limited.

ZOOPLANKTON The animals of the plankton. Unattached microscopic animals having minimal capability for locomotion.

Appendix 7

Laboratory and/or Field Safety

The items below are arranged according to areas of application; the general comments apply to most areas.

A. General Comments

1. When heating liquids or when working with acids, bases, or other caustic liquids, wear goggles or some other form of eye protection.

2. Show concern for others by not pointing the opening of a container (which you are heating or to which you are adding chemicals) in the direction of fellow workers or their work.

3. Looking directly into containers which are being heated is very dangerous.

4. When such things as strong acids and strong bases are mixed with water or with each other, large amounts of heat are generated. Therefore, use pyrex containers and do not hold them in your hands. Leaving them unattended while they are still hot may cause injury to others.

5. Always pour acid into water, never water into acid.

6. If spillage occurs, turn off open flames and hot plates. Clean up spills immediately. The following procedure should be followed for cleaning up acids, bases, and other caustic substances.

   a. Get paper towels and a large beaker partially filled with water.

   b. Grasp two or three folded paper towels from one end; daub and swab with the other end.

   c. Place wet towels in the beaker.

   d. When the liquid is cleaned up, wipe the area with a damp sponge or several thicknesses of wet paper towels.

   e. Take beaker, wet paper towels, and sponge to sink and rinse with lots of water.

   f. Squeeze wet paper towels and place in waste basket.

7. Acids, bases, caustic substances, and water samples which might be contaminated should not be pipetted by drawing the liquid into the pipette with your mouth. If a rubber bulb is not available, use a burette or a graduated cylinder.

8. Keep volatile liquids (alcohol, ether, petroleum derivatives, etc.) away from open flames.

9. The laboratory is a place of work. Playing around is wasteful of time, equipment, and supplies.

10. For the safety of yourself and others, label all containers which contain solid chemicals, liquids, etc.

"My uncle was a chemist
He isn't any more,
'Cause what he thought was H_2O,
Was H_2SO_4!"

11. Before leaving the laboratory, check your clothing for spilled substances and thoroughly wash your hands.

B. Bacterial Studies

1. Treat all cultures as if they were pathogenic (disease causing).

2. Plastic and rubber should not be autoclaved.

3. Stay with the autoclave while it is in operation. Turn it off before you leave.

4. Keep work area and equipment sterile. This is necessary from a health standpoint and to prevent contamination of your cultures.

5. Disposal of cultures and resterilization of plastic petri dishes can be accomplished as follows:

a. Using forceps remove the petri dish covers, and then place covers, dishes, and cultures into a large beaker or pan containing undiluted, liquid household bleach.

b. After 10 minutes remove the petri dishes, using tongs or a rubber glove, and rinse them well under running water. The wet pads and filter should be put into a plastic bag and discarded.

c. Immerse the petri dishes and covers in a solution of 70% isopropyl (rubbing) alcohol for 10 minutes.

d. Remove the petri dishes and covers and stack them on a clean surface. Assemble the dishes and covers. (They are now ready for reuse.)

C. Chemistry

1. Tasting chemicals is dangerous and rarely leads to conclusive results.

2. Should the occasion arise for smelling gases given off by chemical reactions, waft the rising gases to your nose with gentle sweeps of the hand.

3. To avoid sudden dangerous situations from occurring, plan your activity in advance.

4. Always read and reread labels. Particularly note cautions on labels.

5. When connecting rubber and glass apparatus, lubricate the glass with water and assemble with a twisting motion.

6. Be careful when heating or cooling chemicals; be sure the container is designed to be heated. Graduated cylinders and bottles usually are not designed to withstand rapid temperature changes.

D. Field Trips

1. Be sure to take a first aid kit on all field trips.

2. Wear appropriate clothing. Use old sneakers when wading in unknown waters and swamps.

3. If you are going to be using boats in deep water, be sure that everyone has a life jacket or other floatation device.

4. Pair off when working in situations where drowning could occur.

5. Plan for emergency services by obtaining phone numbers of appropriate services in the field area.

U.S. GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE: 1972 - 514-146/31 1-3